DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 089 541 FL 004 870

AUTHOR	Lesnin, I. M.; Petrova, Luba
TITLE	Spoken Russian: Book One.
INSTITUTION	American Council of Learned Societies, New York, N.Y.; Linguistic Society of America, Washington, D.C.; Spoken Language Services, Inc., Ithaca, N.Y.
PUB DATE	45
NOTE	404p.
AVAILABLE FROM	Spoken Language Services; Inc., P. O. Box 783, Ithaca, N. Y. 14850 ($7.00; records, $50.50; tapes, $70.00; cassettes, $60.50)
EDRS PRICE	MF-$0.75 HC Not Available from EDRS. PLUS POSTAGE
DESCRIPTORS	*Conversational Language Courses; Cultural Education; *Independent Study; *Language Instruction; Language Skills; Modern Languages; *Russian; Slavic Languages; *Textbooks

ABSTRACT

This course in spoken Russian is intended for use in introductory conversational classes. Book I in the two-volume series is divided into two major parts, each containing five learning units and one unit devoted to review. Each unit contains sections including (1) basic sentences, (2) word study and review of basic sentences, (3) listening comprehension, and (4) conversation exercises. The lessons, based on cultural experiences commonly shared by Russians, are structured for independent study. A Russian-English and an English-Russian word list, and a key to exercises and tests are included. For the companion document, see FL 004 869. (RL)

ED 089547

FL 004 870

Spoken Russian

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH,
EDUCATION & WELFARE
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF
EDUCATION
THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY

by I. M. LESNIN and LUBA PETROVA

Spoken Language Services, Inc.

The Armed Forces edition of this book was published by the Linguistic Society of America and the Intensive Language Program of the American Council of Learned Societies.

Copyright, 1945,

PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL BY MICROFICHE ONLY HAS BEEN GRANTED BY
Spoken Language
Services, Inc.
TO ERIC AND ORGANIZATIONS OPERATING UNDER AGREEMENTS WITH THE NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION FURTHER REPRODUCTION OUTSIDE THE ERIC SYSTEM REQUIRES PERMISSION OF THE COPYRIGHT OWNER

40999–1619

No part of the material covered by this copyright may be reproduced in any form without written permission of the publisher.

INTRODUCTION

1. What We Are Trying to Do. This course in spoken Russian is designed as a general introduction to the Russian language. It contains all the essential grammatical materials for learning to speak everyday Russian, and its vocabulary, though small, is built around a number of the most useful common situations and current topics. It is based on the principle that you must *hear* a language if you are to understand it when spoken, and that you must practice *speaking* it in order to master its sounds and its forms.

A teacher of Russian will not always be available for those for whom this book is written. So the course has been made as nearly self-teaching as possible. This manual covers the course completely and requires the use of no other reference material. It explains in detail, step by step, how the work is to proceed, and sets the stage for the listening and talking which you are to do.

2. The Russian Language is spoken by about 120 million people in the Soviet Union as their native language. In addition, there are about 40 million speakers of Ukrainian and 10 million speakers of White [illegible]. These two languages are closely related to R[illegible] [illegible] people who speak them understand Russian when it is spoken to them, and learn the standard Russian language in school. Furthermore, the remaining 20 million people of the Soviet Union, whose native languages (Estonian, Latvian, Lithuanian, Rumanian, and various Finnish, Caucasian, and Turkic dialects) are very different from Russian, learn Russian as a second language. All together then, about 190 million people use Russian as their only language or as their most useful second language. Russian is also widely used as a commercial language in Mongolia and parts of Afghanistan, Persia, and Sinkiang.

Russian is one of the Slavic languages; the others are Ukrainian, White Russian, Polish, Czech, Slovak, Serbo-Croatian, Slovene, and Bulgarian. These languages are all very much alike, and a knowledge of Russian makes their acquisition relatively easy.

Russian is also distantly related to English and most of the other languages of Europe, and you will find, after you have overcome its first apparent strangeness, that its general structure is not very different from that of English.

Variations in language are perfectly natural and are found in every language in the world. Americans from New England don't speak exactly like Americans from California, and Englishmen and Australians speak differently from all Americans and from each other. In Russian the differences between different regions are much less than in English and to a foreigner are barely noticeable. All the people you meet in Russia will understand the kind of Russian presented in this manual, and a great many of them, especially in the larger towns and cities and among the fairly well educated, will speak it exactly as you find it here. The people in the country areas and even some of the people in the cities may, however, speak a slightly different kind of Russian. So do not be surprised if the pronunciation you hear does not quite match what is given to you in this manual or what you hear in this course. Imitate the person with whom you are speaking. He, in turn, will do his best to pronounce so that he can be understood. Likewise, do not be surprised at the use of gestures; they are a normal accompaniment to the language; use the gestures yourself, if you can imitate them.

3. How to Use This Manual. To help you in learning to speak Russian, this course makes use of two tools: a native speaker of the language, and this book. The two must be used together, as neither one is of any use without the other.

This manual has been so organized that it can be used to study by yourself or in a group. The group may or may not have a regular teacher; if you have no regular teacher choose one of your own number (called the *Group Leader*) to lead the others and to direct their work.

4. A Native Speaker is the only good source of first-hand knowledge of the pronunciation and usage of any language. The method used in this manual requires the use of a native speaker of Russian, preferably a person who can be on hand through the course, or next best the voice of a native speaker recorded on phonograph records which are supplied with this manual. But even when a native speaker is present during the course, the records can always be used for additional study. The native speaker of Russian is referred to as the Guide. The Guide's job is to act as a model for you to imitate, and as a check on your pronunciation; it is *not* his business to be a teacher or to "explain" the language to you. The Guide should be, if possible, a person who speaks more or less the type of Russian found in this manual, not merely the dialect of a particular region; but he should speak this type of Russian naturally and without affectation. He should be neither overeducated nor too uncultured.

5. The Book is divided into two major parts, each containing five *learning units* and one unit devoted to review. Each unit contains several sections, usually the following:

A. Basic Sentences (with Hints on Pronunciation)
B. Word Study and Review of Basic Sentences
C. Review of Basic Sentences (Cont.)

D. Listening In
E. Conversation
F. Conversation (Cont.)

These six sections are followed in each learning unit by a Finder List containing all the new words in the particular unit. At the end of the manual is included a summary of all word study material. All the words in the manual are included in two complete vocabularies, Russian-English and English-Russian.

6. **The Basic Sentences** in each unit are arranged so as to give you a number of new words and a number of new ways of saying things; first broken up into words or short phrases, and then combined in complete sentences. On the printed page, they are presented in parallel columns, which contain on the left the English equivalent, in the center and on the right the Russian material. The Russian material is given both in the *Aids to Listening* in the second column and in the *Conventional Spelling* in the third column.

When you have your book open at whatever unit you are going to study, and when the Guide is ready to begin speaking the words for you, or the Group Leader is ready to start the phonograph records, you can start working on the Basic Sentences for that unit. If the Group Leader is working with the Guide, the Leader will read the English out loud, and the Guide will pronounce the Russian twice, each time allowing enough time for you to repeat the Russian after him. If you are using the phonograph records, two vioces on the records will act as Leader and Guide for you. While you are listening to the Guide, follow with your eyes the Aids to Listening. When you repeat the words and sentences after the Guide or phonograph records, repeat them loud—good and loud. Never mumble. It is absolutely essential that you repeat after the Guide or phonograph record each time, and that you imitate as closely as you can, and learn by heart what you have imitated.

7. **The Aids to Listening** which are given in the first twelve units, present a simplified spelling, which is designed to help you in remembering the Russian words *as they sound*. In the Aids to Listening, each Russian sound is represented by one letter or group of letters. Every letter (or group of letters) always stands for the same sound. Concentrate your attention first on the Aids to Listening, especially through Part I; in Part II you should pay more attention to the Conventual Russian Spelling.

8. **The Hints on Pronunciation** are given you to help you improve your speech in Russian. No language has sounds exactly like those of any other; and in Russian you will find some sounds which are quite absent from English, and others which are somewhat but not exactly like English sounds. After you have been through the Basic Sentences of the unit at least once, read through the Hints on Pronunciation carefully, having the Guide repeat or playing on the phonograph the words and sounds which are being discussed. Then go back and

listen again to the Basic Sentences, always repeating them after the Guide or phonograph as you did before. Try to hear and imitate more precisely the sounds to which your attention has been called.

9. Pronouncing to Be Understood. Pronunciation is important for a number of reasons: if you expect to be understood when you speak a foreign language, you will have to pronounce it more or less the way the people are used to hearing it. If you are too far off from the usual way of talking the language, people won't be able to understand you at all. Furthermore, the nearer you get to pronouncing the precise sounds, the easier it will be for your ear to catch the sound as spoken by a native, and the more rapidly you will pick up new words and phrases and make progress in learning the language.

Learning to pronounce is really not hard, if you go about it in the right way. If you follow the suggestions and instructions given in this manual, and work carefully through all the hints, practices, and drills, you can expect to acquire the kind of pronunciation you need. Many students who are good mimics and who get into the spirit of speaking Russian will learn to talk like natives.

The only way to learn to pronounce like a native is to imitate. You must get a native to pronounce the words, then say them right after him, mimicking everything, even to the tone of his voice. This manual will make it easier for you by pointing out the sounds you need to observe, and by describing their peculiarities.

10. Each Word Study shows you new uses and new combinations of materials studied up to that point; you are taught how to take apart the words and phrases which you hear and how to make new words and phrases on the same model. Read each part of the Word Study carefully, and make sure you understand thoroughly everything which is said in them; then go back over the Basic Sentences with the Guide or phonograph, exactly as you did before. By this time you can start going through the Basic Sentences with your book closed, and you should now be able to understand the sentences without looking at the English equivalent.

11. The Listening In section gives you a number of conversations, anecdotes, or stories, which use the vocabulary and constructions you have learned in each unit and in all those preceding. Its purpose is to give you practice in listening to and understanding the foreign language as you might overhear it in normal conversation among Russian-speaking people, and to furnish you with models for your own conversation practice.

12. The Conversation Practice represents the central aim of the course. In order to converse well, you should know well everything that has been introduced in the unit you are working on, and everything that you have learned in previous units as well. When you take part in a conversation, do so as easily and naturally as you can. Don't try to bring in new words and phrases that you haven't learned in the material you have studied in this course; stick to what you have learned and practice it thoroughly.

13. Talking Russian. In speaking Russian you should not first figure out what you want to say in English and then translate it into Russian, word for word. This will get you nowhere. You should apply, instead, the words and expressions you already know to the given situation. If you cannot immediately rattle off a word or expression to fit a particular situation, go on to another, or ask a question, but under no circumstances attempt to compose. As soon as you do, you lapse into English speech habits and stop learning Russian and Russian speech habits.

When people speak to you, they will frequently use words and expressions you do not know. If you can't guess their meaning, try to find out by asking questions in Russian, or by asking them to repeat slowly, or to explain in simpler terms. If you (and they!) are good natured, and reasonable about it, you won't have any trouble. On the contrary you will constantly learn more and will practice the Russian you already know in the process.

Your learning of the language will not stop, therefore, when you have mastered this material. You will, rather, be able to get around among the people, practice what you know, and steadily pick up more and more words and phrases. Try to learn them thoroughly. Carry along a notebook to jot down what you want to remember; you can then review this material from time to time.

You should not wait until you have finished this manual before you start using the language. Start practicing at once. When you have done the first unit, try out the expressions on as many people as possible. When you try out your Russian at this early stage, make it slide off your tongue as smoothly as possible. Be careful not to slip back into a careless English-like pronunciation. Listen closely to what the person says in response, trying to catch as much as you can. The first few times it may be hard to catch even the words you know, but you will improve rapidly if you keep on practicing every chance you get.

CONTENTS

PART ONE

UNIT Page

1. GETTING AROUND. Greetings and general phrases. Places and directions. Comment on Aids to Listening. Buying things. 1
2. THE FAMILY. Cases. Nominative case. Masculine, Feminine, Neuter. Singular, Plural. 29
3. MEETING PEOPLE. Genitive case. 61
4. WHERE ARE YOU F[illegible]OM? Accusative case. Verb forms. 88
5. THE WEATHER. Locative case. Verbs. 112
6. REVIEW. 137

PART TWO

7. AT THE AIRPORT. Higher numbers. Time by the clock. 144
8. LAUNDRY AND BARBER. More numbers. Imperative form. Reflexive form. Compound verbs. Dative case. 172
9. FINDING A ROOM. Short forms of adjectives. Instrumental case. 201
10. WRITING A LETTER. Regular verbs. Durative and Punctual verbs. 229
11. EATING AND DRINKING. Durative and Punctual verbs. Actual and Iterative verbs. 264
12. REVIEW. 295

PART ONE

UNIT 1

GETTING AROUND

To the Group Leader: Each *Unit* of this course is divided into six *Sections*. It is suggested that the group spend not less than fifty minutes on each Section.

Before you get the group together to work on this first unit, read carefully the following material up to the heading *Useful Words and Phrases* on page 4. When the group meets, read the material aloud to them or have some other member of the group do the reading. The students will follow the reading with their books open. Be sure that your Guide, or the phonograph and records, are ready before the group meets for work on Section A. See that the Guide is supplied with a copy of the manual **Справочник Руководителя**, which tells him just what he is to do and gives him the Russian he is to speak to the group.

You should look through all of the sections of the unit, reading the directions carefully, so that you will have in mind the general plan of the work. Always get clearly in mind the directions for a section before you take that section up in group meeting.

This unit gives you the most immediate and necessary expressions that you will need in meeting people, asking your way, buying things, and counting. The amount of learning and memorizing required for the first unit is considerably greater than that for any later unit. You are given such a large dose at the start because this unit is meant to be a kind of "language first aid" which gives you enough useful expressions to enable you to make ordinary wants known and to carry on a simple conversation in Russian from the very start.

All but a few of these words and phrases are selected from the phonograph records for the *Russian Language Guide* (introductory Series) (TM 30-344). If you have worked with these records, the present unit will serve as a review.

SECTION A—USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES

In the list of *Useful Words and Phrases* which follows, the English equivalent of these words and phrases is given at the left of the page. Opposite, in the middle column, is a simplified spelling of the Russian which will help you in getting the sounds. In the third column is the ordinary or *conventional* Russian spelling. The *Leader* of the group will first read the *English Equivalent* and pause for the *Guide* to speak the Russian. Every member of the group then repeats after the Guide. The Guide will then say the Russian a second time and everybody will repeat after him as before. The Leader will then read the next English equivalent and the Guide and group will follow the procedure indicated.

If no Guide is available, the *phonograph records* provided for the course should be used. When the group is ready, the Leader will begin playing the appropriate record and the group will repeat right after the Russian speaker during the silences on the record. The phonograph records can be used with profit even in cases where a Guide is available because they can be heard between meetings of the group, whenever it is convenient to you; they furnish additional practice in hearing Russian; you may listen only to those portions which you have found difficult; and the records may be played as often as you wish. In case the speaker on the record has a Russian pronunciation different from that of your Guide, use the records only for listening and understanding and not for imitating.

Whether you are working with a Guide or only with the phonograph records, you must repeat each Russian word and phrase in a loud, clear voice, trying at all times to imitate the pronunciation as closely as you can. Keep constantly in mind the meaning of the Russian you are about to hear, glancing at the English equivalent whenever you need to remind yourself. When you are hearing the Russian, keep your eyes on the *Aids to Listening*. But whenever the written form seems to you to differ from the spoken sound, follow the spoken sound always.

Learning to understand and pronounce a language is not really hard. Every one of us learned to do this as a child, and all over the world children learn to speak all kinds of languages without any trouble. The difficulty that an adult faces in learning a foreign language as you are now learning Russian, is that the adult already has a set of habits for pronouncing his own language and this makes it harder for him to learn new ones than for a child who is starting from scratch. That is why it is so important that you should not be afraid of mimicking even when what you hear may sound strange to you. Don't be afraid to let yourself go. You will never learn to speak a language if you don't plunge right in as soon as you can. Never mind if you do make mistakes at first. The important thing is for you to try to say the words and phrases. Imitate your Guide with the same spirit and enthusiasm that you use in mimicking a person whose speech sounds peculiar to you. You will find that if you do this, your Guide will not think you are making fun of him; instead he will probably smile because what you have said to him sounds like Russian.

In the first five units, do not attempt under any circumstances to pronounce the Russian before you have heard it. You will only make trouble for yourself if you try to guess the pronunciation by "reading" the *Aids to Listening*.

If you are working with a Guide who does not understand English, ask the Leader of your group to demonstrate for you and the Guide what hand signals are to be used to let the Guide know when you want him to read more slowly or to repeat. They are as follows:

1. Index finger raised: BEGIN
2. Hand raised, palm toward the Guide: STOP
3. Palm down, hand moved slowly in semi-circle: SLOWER
4. Beckoning with index finger: REPEAT
5. Hand held palm up and moved quickly up and down: LOUDER

Remember that each phrase you say has a real meaning in Russian and hence you should always act as though you were really saying something to someone else. You will learn fastest if, when your book is open, you follow these steps:

1. Keep your eyes on the *Aids to Listening* as you listen to the Russian being spoken.
2. Repeat immediately what you have heard.
3. Keep in mind the meaning of what you are saying.

Begin the words and phrases as soon as your Guide is ready or when the Leader of your group is ready to play the first phonograph record.

To the Group Leader: Give the members of the group a chance to ask questions about the instructions. Make sure that everyone understands just what he is to do. Then have the students go through the list of *Useful Words and Phrases* once with the books open, repeating in unison after the Guide. Following this first practice, read with the group the ***Comment on the Aids to Listening*** on page 7. Make sure that everyone understands it.

Now go through the list a second time, much as you did before. And finally, go through it a third time, but let the students take turns repeating individually after the Guide—a sentence to a student. Indicate the order in which the repetitions are to go, who is first, who next, and so on. Continue this individual repetition as long as the fifty-minute period permits. Then, just before dismissing the group, read with them the paragraph headed ***Check Yourself*** on page 11.

Here are some hints that will make the work of the group more effective.

1. Insist that everyone speak up. Don't allow any mumbling! Each member of the group must be able to hear what is being said at all times.
2. Indicate to the Guide that he is to repeat whenever the pronunciation is bad and to keep on repeating until he gets a pronunciation that sounds like Russian.
3. Urge everyone to mimic to the limit every sound, every inflection, even the mannerisms of the Guide.
4. Keep the work moving. Don't let it drag at any time. See that everyone is listening, not only to the Guide, but to himself and to the others as they repeat after the Guide.
5. Go through all the work yourself. Repeat with the others and take your turn at the individual repetitions.

1. Useful Words and Phrases

Here is a list of useful words and phrases you will need in Russian. *You should learn these by heart.*

Greetings and General Phrases

NOTE: Words enclosed in brackets [ ] are not expressed in the Russian. Words enclosed in parentheses ( ) help to explain the meaning of the Russian but are not necessary in English. Words enclosed in single quotation marks ' ' are literal or word-for-word equivalents.

Unit 1, Record Side 1, beginning. (78 RPM)

(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 1, beginning.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Hello! (How do you do?)	*ZDRAstvuyţi!*	Здравствуйте!
how	*KAK*	как
you	*VI*	вы
(you) are getting along	*pazhiVAyiţi*	поживаете
How are you?	*KAK ví pazhiVAyiţi?*	Как вы поживаете?
Fine *or* all right.	*xaraSHO.*	Хорошо.
Thanks.	*spaŞIba.*	Спасибо.
And you?	*a VI?*	А вы?
also	*TO zhi*	тоже
well	*xaraSHO*	хорошо
[I'm] fine too, thanks.	*TO zhi xaraSHO, spaŞIba.*	Тоже хорошо, спасибо.
Not [so] well.	*ŋi xaraSHO.*	Нехорошо.
comrade *or* friend	*taVAŗishch*	товарищ
Mr. Ivanov.	*taVAŗishch ivaNOF.*	Товарищ Иванов.

Mrs. *or* Miss Ivanov.	***taVAŗishch ivaNOva.***	**Товарищ Иванова.**
Mr. Smith.	*gaspaḐIN SⱮIT.*	Господин Смит.
Mr. Smith.	*grazhdaŊIN SⱮIT.*	Гражданин Смит.
Mrs. *or* Miss Smith.	*graZHDANka SⱮIT.*	Гражданка Смит.
Do you understand?	*paŋiMAyiƫi?*	Понимаете?
Do you understand Russian?	*paŋiMAyiƫi pa RUsķi?*	Понимаете по-русски?
Yes.	*DA.*	Да.
No (*or* There is no.)	*ŊET.*	Нет.
I	YA	я
I understand.	*YA paŋiMAyu.*	Я понимаю.
I don't understand.	*yă ŋi paŋiMAyu.*	Я не понимаю.
[I] don't understand.	*ŋi paŋiMAyu.*	Не понимаю.
Excuse [me].	*izŋiŊIƫi.*	Извините.
what	*SHTO*	что
you	*VI*	вы
(you) said	*skaZAļi*	сказали
What did you say?	*SHTO vɨ skaZAļi?*	Что вы сказали?
please *or* you're welcome	*paZHALsta*	пожалуйста
(you) speak	*gavaŖIƫi*	говорите
slowly	*ⱮEdļina, ⱮEdļinna*	медленно
Please speak slowly.	*paZHALsta, gavaŖIƫi ⱮEdļinna.*	Пожалуйста, говорите медленно.

(you) repeat	*paftaŖIţi*	повторите
Please repeat.	*paZHALsta, paftaŖIţi.*	Пожалуйста, повторите.

Places and Directions

where	*GḐE*	где
restaurant	*ŗistaRAN*	ресторан
Where [is the] restaurant? *or* Where [is a] restaurant?	*GḐE ŗistaRAN?*	Где ресторан?

Unit 1, Record Side 2, beginning. (78 RPM)

here is	*VOT*	вот
hotel	*gaŞŢIŋica*	гостиница
Here's [the] hotel *or* Here's [a] hotel.	*VOT gaŞŢIŋica.*	Вот гостиница.
(railroad) station	*vagZAL*	вокзал
toilet	*uBORnaya*	уборная
To [the] right	*na PRAva.*	Направо.
To [the] left.	*na ĻEva.*	Налево.
Here.	*Z̧ḐEŞ.*	Здесь.
There.	*TAM.*	Там.
The restaurant is to the right.	*ŗistaRAN na PRAva.*	Ресторан направо.
The hotel is to the left.	*gaŞŢIŋica na ĻEva.*	Гостиница налево.
The toilet is here.	*uBORnaya Z̧ḐEŞ.*	Уборная здесь.

what	*SHTO*	что
this	*Eta*	это
What [is] this?	*SHTO Eta?*	Что это?
This [is the] station.	*Eta vagZAL.*	Это вокзал.

After you have gone through the *Useful Words and Phrases* once, read the following:

2. Comment on the Aids to Listening

The best way to learn any language is to listen to a native speaker of it, and then copy exactly what he says. That is why we ask you to listen carefully to your Guide (or the speaker on the records) and imitate him as exactly as you can. It would be ideal if you could remember everything he says simply by listening and repeating. However, most of us need to have something on paper to remind us of what we have heard. This is what the *Aids to Listening* are meant for. They are simply an attempt to put down systematically on paper the sounds that you hear on the records or that your Guide will probably say. (Later on, in Part II, you will learn to read the regular Russian spelling; pay no attention to it now.) Remember, however, that they are only *aids* to listening. The listening itself is still the most important thing; the printed material is just a reminder.

In the *Aids to Listening* capital letters are used to show which syllables in a word or phrase are most strongly accented, that is, spoken the loudest. For example, we would write for English: *mister JONES will conDUCT the SERvice;* or: *his CONduct is VERy BAD.* Notice that words like *MISter, WILL, THE, HIS, IS* are strongly accented if they stand all alone, but they are usually not accented in a sentence.

In the *Aids to Listening* you will sometimes find an accent mark over a small letter; for instance: *á*. This means that the sound is a little louder than the sound indicated by other small letters, but less loud than that which is indicated by capital letters. For example, we would write for English *hánd me the PENcil;* or *MADison stréet* (but MADison AVenue).

Also, in the *Aids to Listening* you will see that a good many letters have commas under them; for instance: *ļ, Ļ*. You have probably noticed that where we place these commas the Russian has a peculiar sound, much as if the sound of *y* in *yes* were mixed in. This will be explained later in this Unit; you will do best if you try to get the sound by listening and imitating before you read the explanation. The sounds which we mark with a comma are called *palatal consonants*. The sounds *ch* and *y*, which are much the same as in English *church* and *yes*, are also called palatal consonants. The remaining consonant sounds are called *plain consonants;* for instance: ***t, sh***.

1. We can begin with the *vowels*. Russian has five vowels. In the *Aids to Listening* we use the five letters ***a, e, i, o, u*** to indicate the Russian vowels. The sounds of the Russian vowels are plainest when they are loudly stressed; this is when the *Aid to Listening* writes them with capital letters: *A, E, I, O, U*.

Notice, first, that the Russian vowels are rather short; they are never drawled the way some vowels are drawled in natural English pronunciation. The Russian vowel sounds are quite different from ours; you will have to listen and imitate carefully. If you have a chance to hear a Russian speak English with an imperfect pronunciation, you may find it helpful to mimic his English; probably his English seems queer in part because he is using Russian vowel sounds instead of English ones.

The Russian vowel sound which we write as *I* or ***i*** has two varieties.

When the Russian ***i***-sound comes at the beginning of a word, or after a palatal consonant (that is, after *ch* or *y* or after a consonant that we mark with a comma underneath), it sounds like the English vowel in ***eat, cheap, deep***, or like English ***i*** in ***machine;*** only the Russian vowel is much shorter than ours.

When the Russian ***i***-sound comes anywhere else (that is, after a plain consonant), it has a sound that sometimes seems very queer to our ears. It is something like our ***i***-vowel in ***bill, hill***, but there is something muffled about it. This is because in the Russian vowel the tongue is drawn back in the mouth. Pull your tongue back, as if you were gagging. Imitate the Guide or the phonograph record and you will soon get the right effect.

The Russian vowel which we write as *E* or ***e*** is much like the English vowel of ***bet***. Before a palatal consonant it is likely to sound more like the vowel of ***bait***, only it is shorter.

The Russian vowel which we write as *A* or ***a*** is like the English vowel in ***father***, except that it is much shorter.

The Russian vowel which we write as *O* or ***o*** resembles the English vowel of ***four*** or ***board*** (and is never like English ***o*** in ***hot***). Only the Russian vowel is shorter and has an odd sound because the Russian slightly rounds and sticks out his lips when forming this vowel. Be sure to imitate this.

The Russian vowel which we write as *U* or ***u*** resembles the English vowel of ***put, good, pull*** (and never that of ***but, cut***). Only the Russian ***u*** has an odd sound because, as in Russian ***o***, the lips are slightly rounded and protruded. Be sure to imitate this so as to get the proper Russian effect.

When the Russian vowels are ***loudly stressed*** we write them with capital letters: *A, E, I, O, U*. When they are ***weakly stressed*** they still have the same sounds, only less loud; we write them with an accent mark: ***á, é, í, ó, ú***. When the Russian vowels are ***unstressed*** they are shortened and slurred, very much like unstressed vowels in English; then we write plain, small ***a, e, i, u***.

Now listen to the way your Guide (or the speaker on the records) says the examples, and repeat after him. Be sure to make all the vowels good and short, and try to get a real Russian sound into your words.

PRACTICE 1

Unit 1, Record Side 2, after 1st spiral. (78 RPM) **(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 1, after 1st spiral.**

AIDS	NEAREST ENGLISH SOUND	AIDS	CONVENTIONAL	
i	after palatal consonant, like our *i* in *machine*, but shorter.	*gaspaD̦IN*	господин	*gentleman*
i	after plain consonant, like our *i* in *bill*, but pull back your tongue.	*VI*	вы	*you*
e	like our *e* in *bet*.	*Eta*	это	*this*
a	like our *a* in *father*, but shorter.	*YA*	я	*I*
o	like our *o* in *four*, *board*, but round your lips. (Never like *o* in *hot*.)	*SHTO*	что	*what*
u	like our *u* in *put*, *pull*, but round your lips. (Never like *u* in *cut*.)	*RUsķiy*	русский	*Russian*

2. The Russian *consonant* sounds are very much like the English ones, except only the Russian *r* and *x* and the palatalized consonants, and even these will give you no trouble once you make a good start.

The following Russian consonant sounds are very much like English sounds; for each one we give an English word which has roughly the same sound as the Russian:

b as in *bill*
c means *ts* as in *hats* (never as in *cat* or in *cent*)
ch as in *church*
d as in *do*
f as in *four*
g as in *go*, *get* (never as in *gem*)
k as in *kit*
l as in *well*
m as in *met*
n as in *net*
p as in *pet*
s as in *sell*

sh as in *shell*
t as in *ten*
v as in *very*
y as in *yes*
z as in *zero*
zh like *z* in *azure*

Russian *p, t, k* sound a little different from English *p, t, k:* the Russian sounds have less of a puff of breath after them.

Russian *t, d, n* sound a little different from English *t, d, n* because the Russian sounds are made with the tip of the tongue touching the back of the upper front teeth.

Russian *b, d, g, v, z, zh* have more of a buzz to them than do the similar English sounds. For instance, when a Russian says *DA* ('yes') it seems to our ears almost as if he were saying *nDA*.

Russian *sh* and *zh* have less of a hiss in them than the English sounds in *shell* and *azure*. In the Russian sounds the front of the tongue is lower, and often the lips are a bit rounded.

Russian *l* has a hollow sound; some speakers make it sound almost like an English *w*. It is much like the English *l*-sound in *well* or *wool*, and differs from the higher pitched English *l*-sound in *less* or *lean*.

3. Russian *r*. The first thing to note about this sound is that it is never anything like our American *r*. If you use our *r* in Russian, you will make it hard for Russians to understand you. So get rid of your American *r* right from the start.

The Russians use a trilled sound, like the *rrr* that children say in imitating a telephone bell or a running motor. The tip of the tongue vibrates, making a few rapid taps against the rounded bump in the palate right above and behind the upper gums. You can find the place by pronouncing an English *d* as in *did*. In an English *d* the tip of the tongue makes a real contact but in a Russian *r* it makes only a vibration at this point.

4. Russian *x*. The Russian sound which we write with the letter *x* is a strong, very breathy *h*-sound. Many speakers of English have a similar sound at the beginning of words like *hue, huge, human*.

Now listen to the Guide (or the speaker on the record) and repeat right after him.

PRACTICE 2

Unit 1, Record Side 2, after 2nd spiral. (78 RPM)

paŋiMAyu	понимаю	*I understand*
TO zhi	тоже	*also*
KAK	как	*how*

LAdna	ладно	*agreed*
malaKO	молоко	*milk*
vagZAL	вокзал	*railway station*
RUsķiy	русский	*Russian*
xaraSHO	хорошо	*good, well*

Now go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* again with your book open, following the same procedure as before. Repeat each word and phrase, immediately after hearing it, in a loud, clear voice. Let yourself go and say the phrases right out.

Go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* once more with your book open, but this time, take turns letting each member of your group repeat individually until everybody has taken part. Keep on the alert. If the Guide asks you to repeat, do so with enthusiasm and try to mimic him as best as you can until he is satisfied with your pronunciation. When you have satisfied him, you can be sure that you are speaking understandable Russian. Continue this individual repetition as long as time permits. If you are using only the phonograph records, your Leader will see to it that you repeat and that everyone gets the most out of this individual performance.

4. Check Yourself

Did you go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* at least twice in unison and at least once more individually?

Did you repeat each word and phrase in a loud, clear voice immediately after hearing it?

Did you follow the pronunciation you heard even when it was different from that shown in your book?

Did you keep in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you heard and spoke the Russian?

If you have failed at any point to carry out the instructions, go over the *Useful Words and Phrases* once again as soon as you can, being careful to follow every step in the procedure outlined.

SECTION B—USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES (*Cont.*)

Here are other useful words and phrases which you will want to use immediately if you are in a country in which the people speak Russian. These are being given to you as a "language first aid." *Learn them by heart.*

In working with this material, follow the same procedure that you used with the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Section A. After you have gone through the list once, repeating in unison, read the following *Hints on Pronunciation*. Run through the *Pronunciation Practices*. Then go through the list a second and a third time, as in Section A.

1. Useful Words and Phrases (*Cont.*)

Buying Things

Unit 1, Record Side 2, after 3rd spiral. (78 RPM) **(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 1, after 2nd spiral.**

how	*KAK*	как
(to) say	*skaZAŢ*	сказать
in Russian	*pa RUsķi*	по-русски
How [do you say] this in Russian?	*KAK Eta pa RUsķi?*	Как это по-русски?
How [do you] say this in Russian?	*KAK skaZAŢ Eta pa RUsķi?*	Как сказать это по-русски?
(you) want	*xaŢIţi*	хотите
What do you want?	*SHTO vɨ́ xaŢIţi?*	Что вы хотите?
[I] want	*xaCHU*	хочу
cigarette*	*papiROsu*	папиросу
I want [a] cigarette.	*yá xachú papiROsu.*	Я хочу папиросу.
by me	*u ɱiŊA*	у меня
there is	*YEŞŢ*	есть
cigarettes	*papiROsi*	папиросы
I have some cigarettes.**	*u ɱiŊA yéşţ papiROsi.*	У меня есть папиросы.
matches	*SP̧Ichik*	спичек
I haven't any matches. ('By me there are no matches')	*u ɱiŋá ŊET SP̧Ichik.*	У меня нет спичек.

---

*Not on the record. **The record, by mistake, has "I have a cigarette."

Unit 1, Record Side 3, beginning. (78 RPM)

give	*DAYt̡i*	дайте
me	*MN̡E*	мне
[a] match	*SP̡ICHku*	спичку
Give me a match.	*DAYt̡i mn̡é SP̡ICHku.*	Дайте мне спичку.
to eat*	*KUshit̡*	кушать
I want [something] to eat.	*yá xachú KUshit̡.*	Я хочу кушать.
some soup*	*SUpu*	супу
I want some soup.	*yá xachú SUpu.*	Я хочу супу.
Do you want some soup?	*xat̡it̡i SUpu?*	Хотите супу?
Please give me some soup.	*DAYt̡i mn̡é SUpu, paZHALsta.*	Дайте мне супу, пожалуйста.
some bread	*XL̡Eba*	хлеба
some butter	*MAsla*	масла
some meat	*M̡Asa*	мяса
some potatoes	*karTOshk̡i*	картошки
some coffee	*KOf̡i*	кофе
some tea	*CHAyu*	чаю
some sugar	*SAxaru*	сахару
some milk	*malaKA*	молока
some beer	*P̡Iva*	пива
some water	*vaDI*	воды
Coffee or beer?	*KOf̡i il̡i P̡Iva?*	Кофе или пива?

---

*Not on the record.

how much	*SKOĻka*	сколько
it is worth *or* it costs	*STOyit*	стоит
How much does it cost?	*SKOĻka éta STOyit?*	Сколько это стоит?
It costs two roubles.	*éta stóyit DVA ruBĻA.*	Это стоит два рубля.
one rouble	*aḐIN RUBĻ*	один рубль
two roubles	*DVA ruBĻA*	два рубля
three roubles	*TŖI ruBĻA*	три рубля
four roubles	*chiTIŗi ruBĻA*	четыре рубля
ten kopeks	*ḐEşiţ kaP̧Eyik*	десять копеек
[It's] two ten.	*DVA ḐEşiţ.*	Два десять.
one	*aḐIN*	один
two	*DVA*	два
three	*TŖI*	три
four	*chiTIŗi*	четыре
five	*P̧AŢ*	пять
six	*SHEŞŢ*	шесть
seven	*ŞEM̧*	семь
eight	*VOşim*	восемь
nine	*ḐEv̧iţ*	девять
ten	*ḐEşiţ*	десять
will be	*BUḑit*	будет
How much are two and two?	*SKOĻka búḑit DVA i DVA?*	Сколько будет два и два?
Two and two [are] four.	*DVA i DVA, chiTIŗi.*	Два и два — четыре.

Three and five [are] eight.	*ŢŖI i ŖAŢ, VOşim.*	Три и пять — восемь.
Good-bye!	*da sv̧iDAŋya!*	До свиданья!

2. Comment on the Basic Sentences

Forms of address. In talking to a foreigner whom they do not know very well, Russians are likely to use the foreign title, saying, for instance, *M̦ISter SM̦IT*, *M̦Işis SM̦IT*, *M̦IS SM̦IT*. Or else, they may use the very formal Russian word *gaspaḐIN* and call a man *gaspaḐIN SM̦IT*. The corresponding word for 'Mrs.' is *gaspaZHA*, but they rarely use this, and there is no corresponding word for 'Miss'.

In talking to each other, when they are not well acquainted, Russians use two titles. One is *taVAŗishch* 'comrade'; it is used regardless of sex: *taVAŗishch ivaNOF* 'Comrade Ivanov', *taVAŗishch ivaNOva* 'Mrs. Ivanov' or 'Miss Ivanov'. The other title is 'citizen', *grazhdaŅIN* for men, *graZHDANka* for women: *grazhdaŅIN ivaNOF* 'Mr. I.' *graZHDANka ivaNOva* 'Mrs. I.' or 'Miss I.'

Notice that some Russian family names have an extra ending *-a* when they are used of a woman.

As soon as Russians know anyone at all well, they stop using the family name; instead they call people by the combination of first name and father's first name: 'John Peter's-son', 'Mary Peter's-daughter'.

Ivanov. The speaker on the record stresses the last syllable of this family name; he says Mr. *ivaNOF*, Mrs. *ivaNOva*. Mostly this family name is pronounced *iVAnaf*, *iVAnava*.

Be, do, have, the, a. Each language has its own machinery for saying things. In English, such words as *be, is, are, have, has, do, does, the, a* perform a great deal of work. In Russian there are no words to match these; the same work is done by entirely different forms of expression. Don't waste your time puzzling over this; just learn how one says things in Russian. Observe the following types of phrases which have appeared in the *Basic Sentences.*

No 'the' or 'a':

[the] hotel, [a] hotel	*gaŞŢIŋica*	гостиница

No 'do':

[Do] you understand?	*vɨ paŋiMAyiţi?*	Вы понимаете?

Often no pronoun with verb:

[Do you] understand?	*paŋiMAyiţi?*	Понимаете?

No verb 'to be':

Here is the hotel.	*VOT gaŞŢIņica.*	Вот гостиница.
There is some beer.	*YEŞŢ P̧Iva.*	Есть пива.
There is no beer.	*ŅET P̧Iva*	Нет пива.
There are no matches.	*ŅET SP̧Ichik.*	Нет спичек.
Where [is the] station?	*GḐE vagZAL?*	Где вокзал?
The station is there.	*vagZAL TAM.*	Вокзал там.

No verb 'to have':

I have some cigarettes.	*u m̧iŅA YEŞŢ papiROsi.*	У меня есть папиросы.
I have the cigarettes.	*papiROsi u m̧iŅA.*	Папиросы у меня.
I have no matches.	*u m̧iŅA ŅET SP̧Ichik.*	У меня нет спичек.

Notice that Russian words like *VOT*, *YEŞŢ*, *ŅET* do not match up with *is* or *has* or any other English word.

After you have gone through the *Useful Words and Phrases* and through the *Comments on the Basic Sentences*, read the following:

3. Hints on Pronunciation

To the Group Leader: The following section is divided into two parts, and each part is to be taken up separately. First, read through with the group the introductory material and the explanations given in the first part. Then have the Guide read the *Examples* with the group repeating after him, first in unison, and then individually. Don't go on to the next part until everyone has a reasonable control over the items of pronunciation that are being taught. Follow this procedure with each of the two parts.

You will find that the *Examples* are all given on the phonograph records. Between each set of examples there is a clear space of record or *spiral*, so that you can play each set as often as is necessary.

As you have already noticed, Russian has a lot of sounds that are almost like our English ones, but still not quite the same. Also, there are a few sounds that are totally different from anything we have in English.

If you want to speak understandable Russian, you will of course have to learn to say these two kinds of sounds. The only way to learn them is to listen to the way your Guide (or the speaker on the records) says them, and to imitate him as well as you can. To help you imitate him we shall give you a few *Hints on Pronunciation*. These will cover, in small doses, the sounds that differ completely from those we use in English, as well as the ones that differ only a little.

Palatal consonants.

You have probably noticed and imitated the peculiar Russian sounds which we mark in the *Aids to Listening* by putting a comma under the letters. These sounds are *palatal consonants*. You will have to practice them until you recognize them without fail when you hear them, and until you pronounce correctly the words and phrases in which they occur. Otherwise you could not understand what a Russian is saying, and he could not understand you.

Russian palatal consonants sound as if a *y* (as in *yes*) were mixed into the ordinary consonant sound. The middle part of the tongue is raised up against the highest part of the palate while the consonant is being pronounced. Place your tongue as if you were saying *yee* and keep it in this position while you produce the consonant sound.

Some Russian consonants occur in pairs, *plain* and *palatal*. We mark the palatal one by placing a comma under the letter in the *Aids to Listening:*

b d g f k l m n p r s t v x z

b̦ d̦ ģ f̦ ķ ļ m̦ ņ p̦ ŗ ș ț v̦ x̦ z̦

Two other Russian palatal consonants have no corresponding plain consonant by their side. These are *ch* (as in English *church*) and *y* (as in English *yes*). Note that these count in Russian as palatal consonants because the tongue is in the characteristic palatal position.

Now listen to the Guide (or the record) and imitate.

PRACTICE 1

Unit 1, Record Side 4, beginning. (78 RPM)

(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 1, after 3rd spiral.

		EXAMPLES		
AIDS	NEAREST ENGLISH SOUND	AIDS	CONVENTIONAL	
p̦	like *p* and *y* run together	*P̦AȚ*	пять	*five*
ț	like *t* and *y* run together	*xaȚIți*	хотите	*you want*
d̦	like *d* and *y* run together	*D̦Ev̦iț*	девять	*nine*
f̦	like *f* and *y* run together	*KOf̦i*	кофе	*coffee*
v̦	like *v* and *y* run together	*izv̦iŅIți*	извините	*excuse*
ș	like *s* and *y* run together	*ȘEM̦*	семь	*seven*

z̧	like *z* and *y* run together	*z̧iMA*	зима	*winter*
m̧	like *m* and *y* run together	*M̧Asa*	мясо	*meat*
ņ	like *n* and *y* run together	*ŅET*	нет	*no*
ļ	like *l* and *y* run together	*na ĻEva*	налево	*to the left*
ŗ	like *r* and *y* run together	*TŖI*	три	*three*

Some other consonants.

The Russian *x*-sound is something like a strong, breathy *h*-sound.

Three Russian plain consonants have no corresponding palatal consonant by their side. These are *sh* (as in English *shell*), *zh* (like *z* in *azure*), and *c* (like *ts* in *hats*). The Russian *sh* and *zh* have a duller, less hissing sound than the nearest English consonants. The front of the tongue is lower in Russian, and the lips are slightly rounded.

When Russian *sh* and *ch* come together in the combination *shch*, the sound is much as in an English combination like *fresh chips*. The whole combination is palatal. Many Russians, however, pronounce this combination more as if it were *sh-sh* (as in English *fresh ships*), but they always keep the combination palatal, by raising the middle of the tongue in the usual way. Imitate your Guide or the record.

PRACTICE 2

Unit 1, Record Side 4, after 1st spiral. (78 RPM)

		EXAMPLES		
AIDS	HOW TO MAKE THE SOUND	AIDS	CONVENTIONAL	
x	friction sound in the back of the mouth	*XĻEba*	хлеба	*some bread*
		SAxaru	сахару	*some sugar*
		xaCHU	хочу	*I want*
sh	like English *sh* in *harsh*	*SHTO*	что	*what*
zh	like English *z* in *azure*	*TO zhi*	тоже	*also*
shch	like English *shch* in *fresh chips*	*taVAŗishch*	товарищ	*comrade*

4. Check Yourself

Did you go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* at least twice in unison and at least once more individually?

Did you apply what you learned about the vowel sounds in *Hints on Pronunciation?*

Did you follow the pronunciation you heard even when it was different from that shown in your book?

Did you keep in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you heard and spoke the Russian?

If you have failed at any point to carry out the instructions, go over the *Useful Words and Phrases* once again as soon as you can, being careful to follow every step in the procedure outlined.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES

If your group has time for outside assignments, sections marked *Individual Study* may be done between meetings of the group. Otherwise use them as independent study during a group meeting.

1. Covering the English (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B. Cover up the English. Read the Russian aloud. Keep your voice down if you are working with the rest of the group. Follow your Guide's pronunciation as nearly as you can remember, and test yourself to see if you can recall the meaning of each word and phrase. Check the expressions you are not sure about and after you have gone through the whole list, uncover the English and find their meaning. Repeat this procedure at least three times or until you are satisfied that you know every expression.

2. Review of Useful Words and Phrases

To the Group Leader: Read again for your information the numbered suggestions just preceding *Useful Words and Phrases* on page 3. Your Guide has been directed in his manual to pay particular attention to the correct pronunciation of the sounds. He may ask members of the group to repeat words or phrases a good many times in an effort to get a pronunciation that is more nearly correct. See that they listen closely, that they repeat promptly and loud enough so that everyone can hear them, and that they imitate the Guide to the last detail.

Go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B twice. The first time have the members of the group repeat individually after the Guide with books open. The second time, have them close their books. The Guide will give each Russian expression twice as before. Let the students take turns giving the English equivalent the first time they hear the Guide speak the Russian and repeating the Russian as usual the second time. This will help them to check on the meaning of all Russian expressions in *Useful Words and Phrases*.

Go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B. The first time you go through the list, take turns repeating the Russian after the Guide. Keep your book open, and get all the help you can from the *Aids to Listening*. Pay particular attention to what you have learned about the pronunciation of the vowels. Make every effort to satisfy your Guide with your pronunciation.

The second time you go through the list, check up on the meaning of the Russian. Keep your books closed and take turns giving the English equivalent the first time you hear the Russian expression and repeating the Russian as usual the second time. If you have any trouble with the English, you should find time for more individual study of the *Useful Words and Phrases*, covering the English and checking up on the meaning when you read the Russian aloud.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. Listening In

To the Group Leader: The conversations which appear in this section will be read to the group by the Guide or played on the phonograph records. English equivalents are omitted from the *Listening In* material so that students can get practice in understanding spoken Russian which uses the vocabulary they know. Meaning, therefore, is to be emphasized.

The first time you go through the conversations, have the Guide repeat a conversation, if necessary to help clear up the meaning, before you go on to the next conversation. If you have no Guide, lift the needle of the phonograph at the end of each conversation and let the students discuss the meaning of any sentences that are not understood.

Go through the conversations a second time without stopping. Pay about equal attention to pronunciation and meaning.

Finally, assign parts and have the students read the conversations. Give everyone a chance. Suggest that the actors actually take the parts, stand up and move around, sit at a table in the restaurant, stand behind the counter in the store, etc. Keep it moving. Get everyone to speak up! Take a part yourself.

Keep your book closed while the Guide reads the following conversation and repeat after him. If you have no Guide, you should use the phonograph records, repeating the Russian immediately after you hear it. At the end of each conversation take time out to check up on the meaning of what you have heard and said. Ask someone in the group to give you the English equivalent of any expression you do not understand. Almost all the words and the expressions you have had in *Useful Words and Phrases* occur in the following conversations.

Unit 1, Record Side 4, after 2nd spiral. (78 RPM)

(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 1, after 4th spiral.

1. *Smith asks Ivanov the way.*

Smith: *ZDRAstvuyţi, taVAŗishch ivaNOF!*
KAK ví pazhiVAyiţi?
KAK taVAŗishch ivaNOva?

Ivanov: *xaraSHO, spaŞIba.*
a VI?

Smith: *TO zhi xaraSHO.*
xaŢIţi papiROsu?

Ivanov: *DA, paZHALsta.*
SP̧ICHku?

Smith: *spaŞIba.*
u m̧iņá ŅET SP̧Ichik.
yá xaCHU KUshiţ.
GḐE ŗistaRAN?

Ivanov: *yéşţ ŗistaRAN na PRAva.*

Smith: *iz̧viŅIţi.*
SHTO ví skaZAļi?
ŗistaRAN TAM?

Ivanov: *ŅET, na PRAva.*
vagZAL TAM,
gaŞŢIņica na ĻEva,
a ŗistaRAN na PRAva.

Smith: *yá ņi paņiMAyu.*
paZHALsta, gavaŖIţi M̧Edļinna.
éta ŗistaRAN?

Ivanov: *DA.*
TAM vagZAL,
a ŗistaRAN Z̧ḐEŞ.

Smith: *ví xaŢIţi KUshiţ?*

Ivanov: *ŅET, spaŞIba.*
da sv̧iDAņya, grazhdaņín SM̧IT.

Smith: *da sv̧iDAņya.*

Unit 1, Record Side 4, after 3rd spiral. (78 RPM)

2. *Mr. Smith enters a restaurant.*

Smith: *ZDRAstvuyţi!*

Waitress: *ZDRAstvuyţi!*
SHTO ví xaŢIţi KUshiţ?

Smith: *DAYţi mņé M̧Asa i karTOshķi, XĻEba i MAsla.*

Waitress: *ví xaţíţi SUpu?*

Smith: *DA.*

Waitress: *ví xaţiţi malaKA iļi KOf̧i?*

Smith: *ŅET.*
yá xachú P̧Iva.

Waitress: *xaraSHO.*

Smith: *SKOĻka éta STOyit?*

Waitress: *RUBĻ ḐEşiţ.*

Unit 1, Record Side 4, after 4th spiral. (78 RPM)

3. *Mr. Jones and Mr. Ilyin are in a restaurant.*

Ilyin: *paZHALsta, DAYţi mņé SUpu, M̧Asa, i karTOshķi.*

Jones: *paftaŖIţi éta M̧Edļina, paZAHLsta.*

Ilyin: *yá xachú SUpu, M̧Asa, i karTOshķi.*

Jones: *MŅE TO zhi, paZHALsta.*

Girl: *SHTO ví xaŢIţi, KOf̧i iļi CHAyu?*

Jones: *yá xachú CHAyu.*

Ilyin: *a yá xachú KOf̧i i vaDI.*

Girl: *xaraSHO.*

2. Check Yourself

Is there any expression in any of these conversations that you do not understand now? If there is, find the meaning of it or ask other members of your group before you proceed. If no one knows, refer to the *Useful Words and Phrases.*

Go through the conversations once more following the same plan as before. Imitate carefully and be sure to keep in mind the English equivalent of everything you are saying in Russian.

Finally go through the conversations again but this time take turns. The leader will assign parts and the exercise is to continue at least until everyone has had a chance to speak one of the parts. Keep this going as long as you have time. When your turn comes, speak clearly and with enthusiasm. Put yourself in the situation and let yourself go. If the Guide asks you to repeat, do so until he is satisfied with your pronunciation.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Russian (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B. Cover up the Russian. Read the English silently and test yourself to see if you can speak the Russian for each word and phrase. Check the expres sions you are uncertain about and after you have gone through the whole list, uncover the Russian and review em. Go through the list once more and continue for least three times or until you can give the Russian dily for all the expressions. To make sure of this, pick out expressions at random and see if you can speak out the Russian quickly. Speak the Russian aloud and try to imitate your Guide's pronunciation as well as you can remember it.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

To the Group Leader: Go to the *Useful Words and Phrases* in Sections A and B. Read to the group the English equivalent of the Russian expressions. Call on different students not in any fixed order, asking for the correct Russian for the English. For instance, say to A, "KAK skaZAŢ pa RUsķi: *Where is the hotel?*" The students are to respond with their books closed. The Guide will indicate by a negative sign whenever he hears a Russian expression that is wrong, or, if there is no Guide, the other members of the group will indicate that they do not agree. Immediately ask someone else to give the expression correctly. Any group member who has difficulty in giving the correct Russian should be told to review the *Useful Words and Phrases* thoroughly before the next meeting of the group. Do not spend any time talking about the *why* of the Russian; stick to the *how.*

There are two precautions which the Leader must observe in all exercises of this sort and in the conversation practice throughout the course. Be sure that everyone understands them. They are as follows:

1. Every Russian expression must be given smoothly and completely before the student's performance can be considered satisfactory. If there is an error in the first attempt, ask the student to give the expression over again in complete form. If he fumbles badly, turn to someone else.
2. Everyone must speak loud enough, so that all can hear. Every student should be encouraged to call out "Louder, please!" if he can't hear. Check on this occasionally by pointing to the student who is listening to someone else's Russian, and ask "What did he say?"

If you do not observe these precautions, much time and effort may be wasted in group meetings.

In this section you are going to have your first chance to engage in conversation in Russian. This, of course, is the most useful part of the entire unit, and the part you should do with the greatest amount of pep and realism. Do it half-heartedly and you lose most of the value of the unit. Do it earnestly and enthusiastically and you will find that you can readily say a great number of things in Russian, fluently and correctly. Read the instructions carefully, get everything you are to do straight in your mind, and then plunge in.

In order to fix in your mind the expressions you will need in the conversation, check yourself on your ability to speak the Russian you have learned. By now you should not have to grope for it. The Leader of the group will ask you to supply in turn the Russian expressions for the English equivalents which he reads from the

Useful Words and Phrases. If you have done a thorough job of recalling the Russian when you are looking only at the English equivalents, as suggested in Section E, you will have no difficulty in responding promptly and smoothly when you hear the English. Your Guide will let you know if your Russian expressions are not correct. If you have no Guide, the members of the group should be ready to correct faulty expressions.

3. Simple Arithmetic in Russian

Here are some sample additions:

a. *SKOĻka BUḑit aḐIN i ḐEşiţ?* $1 + 9 = ?$
сколько будет один и девять?
aḐIN i ḐEşiţ, ḐEşiţ. $1 + 9 = 10$
один и девять — десять.

b. *SKOĻka BUḑit P̧AŢ i TŖI?* $5 + 3 = ?$
сколько будет пять и три?
P̧AŢ i TŖI, VOşim. $5 + 3 = 8$
пять и три, восемь.

c. *SKOĻka BUḑit SHEŞŢ i chiTIŗi?* $6 + 4 = ?$
сколько будет шесть и четыре?
SHEŞŢ i chiTIŗi, ḐEşiţ. $6 + 4 = 10$
шесть и четыре — десять.

On a sheet of paper, write out the figures for similar problems which do not add up to more than ten. Write, for example $8 + 2 = 10$. The Group leader will then ask one of the members of the group to say his problem in Russian and another to answer it in Russian. The person who answers must give the whole addition, and not just the answer. For example, if you have written down $8 + 2 = 10$, you say: *SKOĻka BUḑit VOşim i DVA?* and the one who answers must say: *VOşim i DVA, ḐEşiţ*, not just plain *ḐEşiţ*. Continue this exercise until everyone has had a chance to ask and to answer.

4. Conversation

To the Group Leader: Read the following directions with the class. Encourage the students to strike out for themselves. Spend all the time you can on free conversation practice in an effort to get to the point where students can speak easily and smoothly with a minimum of *ums* and *ers*.

The Leader will assign parts and will ask you to take turns in pairs, carrying on the following conversations. The two persons who are talking together should stand up and act out their parts, speaking as smoothly and naturally as possible. Make it real and get some fun out of it. The Guide will help you if your Russian is wrong or if your pronunciation is bad. The Leader will prompt you if you are not sure what comes next in your part.

1. Asking Directions

1. You walk up to a stranger, beg his pardon, and ask where the railroad station is.
2. He answers that it's to the right.
3. You ask him what he said.
4. He repeats.
5. You beg his pardon, say you don't understand him, and ask him please to speak slowly.
6. He repeats very slowly that that's the railroad station over there, to the right, and asks whether you understand.
7. You say you understand, and thank him.
8. He says you're welcome.

Go through this conversation twice more, asking first for the hotel and then the restaurant, and have the stranger reply by saying that the hotel is here to the right, the restaurant there to the left.

2. At a Restaurant

1. You walk into a restaurant, sit down, say hello to the waitress, and ask how she is.
2. She says she's fine, and asks how you are.
3. You say you're fine too. You'd like to eat.
4. She asks what you'd like.
5. You ask how the meat is.
6. She says it's good.
7. You say good, you'd like meat and potatoes.
8. She asks whether you'd like tea or beer.
9. You say beer, please.
10. After you've eaten, you ask her how much that costs.
11. She says it's 3 roubles and 10.
12. You pay, saying here it is (*paZHALsta*).
13. She thanks you, and you both say good-bye.

If it is so desired, particularly when the group is too large to give everybody a chance to participate in the conversation, the exercise should be continued for a longer time. It is also a good practice to give people who are having difficulties a second trial.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

To the Group Leader: You can tell from the work that you did on conversation in Section E, whether or not the group needs to spend more time in preparing for successful conversation. If necessary, spend the first part of this section in individual study, having members of the group say the Russian of the *Useful Words and Phrases* when they have the English expression covered. Check up on their vocabulary as in Section E. Then continue the work with conversation which you started in Section E.

In this section you are to continue taking part in conversation. If the work didn't go well in Section E, take time to go through the *Useful Words and Phrases* again with the English covered and to give the Russian of the English expressions as your Leader asks for it.

Put everything you can into the conversations. Act your part; don't hesitate to talk for fear of making a mistake. You'll make plenty of mistakes at first, but the important thing is to practice talking. You can't correct an error until you have made it.

Try out your Russian whenever you get a chance. Don't wait for meetings of the group to practice what you have learned. Pair off between meetings and see what you can do with Russian greetings and conversation. When you are alone, run over the list of Russian expressions you know. Review them in your mind. Try saying them. See how much you can improve your pronunciation and control of the language in whatever time you can find between meetings of the group. Make this a regular practice throughout the course.

FINDER LIST

This is a complete alphabetical list of all the words and expressions used in this unit. The conventional spelling is enclosed in parentheses after each entry. This list is for reference only, but you should know all of these before going on to the next unit.

a **(а)** and, but
aḐIN **(один)** one

BUḑit **(будет)** (it) will be

CHAyu **(чаю)** (some) tea
chiTIŗi **(четыре)** four

DA **(да)** yes
da **(до)** to, up to, until: *da sv̧iDAŋya* **(до свиданья)** good-bye
DAYţi **(дайте)** give
ḐEşiţ **(десять)** ten
ḐEv̧iţ **(девять)** nine
DVA **(два)** two

Eta **(это)** this

gaspaḐIN **(господин)** gentleman; Mr.
gaSTIŋica **(гостиница)** hotel
gavaŖIţi **(говорите)** speak
GḐE **(где)** where
grazhdaŋIN **(гражданин)** (male) citizen; Mr.
graZHDANka **(гражданка)** (female) citizen; Mrs., Miss

i **(и)** and
iļi **(или)** or
iVAnaf, ivaNOF **(Иванов)** Ivanov (*family name*)
izv̧iŊIţi **(извините)** excuse (me)

KAK **(как)** how

kaP̧Eyik **(копеек)** kopeks
karTOshķi **(картошки)** potatoes
KOf̧i **(кофе)** (some) coffee
KUshiţ **(кушать)** to eat

ĻEva **(лево)** the left; *na ĻEva* **(налево)** to the left

malaKA **(молока)** (some) milk
M̧Asa **(мяса)** (some) meat
MAsla **(масла)** (some) butter
M̧Edļina **(медленно)** slowly
m̧iŅA **(меня)** me; *u m̧iŅA* **(у меня)** by me; I have
MŅE **(мне)** to me

na **(на)** on, at: *na ĻEva* **(налево)** to the left; *na PRAva* **(направо)** to the right
ŅET **(нет)** no; there is none
ņi **(не)** not

pa **(по)** along, on, in; *pa RUSķi* **(по-русски)** in Russian
paftaŖIţi **(повторите)** repeat
paņiMAyiţi **(понимаете)** you understand
papiROsi **(папиросы)** cigarettes
papiROsu **(папиросу)** a cigarette
P̧AŢ **(пять)** five
paZHALsta **(пожалуйста)** please; you're welcome
pazhiVAyiţi **(поживаете)** you get along
P̧Iva **(пива)** (some) beer

PRAva **(право)** the right: *na PRAva* **(направо)** to the right

ŗistaRAN **(ресторан)** restaurant
RUBĻ **(рубль)** rouble; *DVA ruBĻA* **(два рубля)** two roubles
RUsķi **(русский)** Russian; *pa RUSķi* **(по-русски)** in Russian

SAxaru **(сахару)** (some) sugar
ŞEM̧, ŞEM **(семь)** seven
SHEŞŢ **(шесть)** six
SHTO **(что)** what
skaZAļi **(сказали)** (you) said
skaZAŢ **(сказать)** to say
SKOĻka **(сколько)** how much
spaŞIba **(спасибо)** thank you
SP̧Ichik **(спичек)** matches
SP̧ICHku **(спичку)** a match
STOyit **(стоит)** it is worth; it costs
SUpu **(супу)** (some) soup
sv̧iDAņya **(свиданье)** seeing each other; *da sv̧iDAņya* **(до свиданья)** till we meet again; good-bye

TAM **(там)** there
taVAŗishch **(товарищ)** comrade
TO zhi **(тоже)** also
TŖI **(три)** three

u **(у)** near, by, with; *u ɱiŅA* **(у меня)** with me; I have
uBORnaya **(уборная)** toilet

vaDI **(воды)** (some) water
vagZAL **(вокзал)** railway station
VI **(вы)** you
VOşim, *VOşiɱ* **(восемь)** eight
VOT **(вот)** there (it) is!

xaCHU **(хочу)** I want

xaraSHO **(хорошо)** good, well, all right
xaŢIţi **(хотите)** you want

XĻEba **(хлеба)** (some) bread

YA **(я)** I
YEŞŢ **(есть)** there is (some); there are (some)

ȤḐEŞ **(здесь)** here
ZDRAstvuyţi **(здравствуйте)** how d'you do; hello
zhi **(же)** *see TO zhi*

UNIT 2

THE FAMILY

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

To the Group Leader: Adopt the following steps as a standard practice in conducting this course:

1. Before each meeting of the group, be sure to read carefully and get clearly in mind the instructions covering those sections of a unit which you expect to take up in the group meeting.
2. Before each group meeting, see that the Guide is available with his *Справочник Руководителя* or that phonograph and records are ready.
3. Have the members of the group read together the instructions that precede each piece of work they are to do before they begin it. Let one member of the group read these instructions aloud while the others follow the reading in their books.
4. Take time, following the reading of all instructions, to make sure that everyone understands exactly what he is to do.

In Section A of Unit 2 follow the same procedure as that outlined for *Useful Words and Phrases* of Section A in Unit 1. Go through the *Basic Sentences* once with everyone repeating in unison after the Guide or phonograph record. Then take up the *Hints on Pronunciation* which follow. Come back to the *Basic Sentences* and go through them once more, with repetitions in unison after the Guide. Pay particular attention to those items of pronunciation you have been working on. Finally, go through the *Basic Sentences* a third time with solo repetition. The Guide will call for as many repetitions as may be necessary to get a pronunciation that sounds to him like Russian.

Make everyone speak loudly and clearly. Keep the work moving. Don't let it drag.

Begin this section by listening, in the manner already outlined in Section A of the preceding unit, to the *Basic Sentences* which follow. Be sure to keep in mind the meaning of the Russian by reading silently the English equivalent. As you listen to the Russian, keep your eye on the *Aids to Listening*. This will help you imitate accurately the pronunciation you are hearing. Repeat each word and phrase loudly and clearly right after you hear it. As you pronounce the Russian, do so as though you really meant what you are saying. Do not forget that these words and phrases convey a real meaning and it is up to you to say them as though you were actually using them. Go through the sentences in unison and with your book open.

The *Basic Sentences* are set up as conversations so that you may hear and speak the Russian as you would hear and speak it if you were talking with Russian people.

Although numerous characters are introduced in these *Basic Sentences*, it is not important for you to try to keep in mind just who they are or their relationship to one another. You are concerned rather with *what* they say and *how* they say it.

1. Basic Sentences

Mr. Ivanov and Mr. Smith meet each other on their way to the railroad station.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Unit 2, Record Side 1, beginning. (78 RPM)		**(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 2, beginning.**
	Ivanov	
Hello, Mr. Smith!	*ZDRAstvuyţi, gaspaḑín SM̦IT!*	Здравствуйте, господин Смит!
How are you?	*KAK ví pazhiVAyiţi?*	Как вы поживаете?
	Smith	
Fine, thanks.	*xaraSHO, spaŞIba.*	Хорошо, спасибо.
And you?	*a VI?*	А вы?
	Ivanov	
[I'm] fine, too.	*TO zhi xaraSHO.*	Тоже хорошо.
(you) tell	*skaZHIţi*	скажите
whereto	*kuDA*	куда
you are going	*iḐOţi*	идете
Tell me, please:	*skaZHIţi paZHALsta:*	Скажите, пожалуйста:
where are you going?	*kuDA ví iḐOţi?*	Куда вы идете?

Smith

I go *or* ride	*YEdu*	еду
to	*NA*	на
station	*vagZAL*	вокзал
to meet	*FSTŖEţiţ*	встретить
my wife	*maYU zhiNU*	мою жену
[my] children	*ḑiŢEY*	детей
I'm going to the station to meet my wife and children.	*yá YEdu na vagZAL, FSTŖEţiţ mayú zhiNU i ḑiŢEY.*	Я еду на вокзал, встретить мою жену и детей.

Ivanov

your	*VAshi*	ваши
children*	*ḐEţi*	дети
at the station	*na vagZAļi*	на вокзале
Are your children at the station?	*váshi ḐEţi na vagZAļi?*	Ваши дети на вокзале?
[they] told me	*mņé skaZAļi*	мне сказали
that*	*SHTO*	что
your son	*VASH SIN*	ваш сын
in the army	*v ARm̧iyi*	в армии
I've heard your son is in the army.	*mņé skaZAļi shtó vásh SIN v ARm̧iyi.*	Мне сказали, что ваш сын в армии.

Smith

my daughter	*mayá DOCH*	моя дочь
small	*MAļiņķiy*	маленький

---

*Not on the record.

boy	*MAĻchik*	мальчик
but	*NO*	но
my*	*MOY*	мой
older	*STARshiy*	старший
My daughter and my little boy are at the station.	*mayá DOCH i móy MAĻiŋķiy MAĻchik** na vagZAļi.*	Моя дочь и мой маленький мальчик на вокзале.
My older son is in the army.	*móy STARshiy SIN v ARɱiyi.*	Мой старший сын в армии.
	Ivanov	
you know	*ví ZNAyiţi*	вы знаете
You know, my son is in the army too.	*ví ZNAyiţi, MOY SIN TO zhi v ARɱiyi.*	Вы знаете, мой сын тоже в армии.
his *or* to him	*u ŋiVO*	у него
furlough	*OTpusk*	отпуск
But he has a furlough.	*nó u ŋiVO OTpusk.*	Но у него отпуск.

Unit 2, Record Side 2, beginning. (78 RPM)

	Ivanov	
I'm going to the station too.	*yá TO zhi YEdu na vagZAL.*	Я тоже еду на вокзал.
him	*yiVO*	его
I want to meet him.	*yá xaCHU yivó FSTŖEţiţ.*	Я хочу его встретить.
	Smith	
That's fine.	*xaraSHO.*	Хорошо.
Where's your wife?	*GḐE vásha zhiNA?*	Где ваша жена?

---

*Not on the record. **Not usual. Ordinarily, simply *MAĻchik* instead of *MAĻiŋķiy MAĻchik*.

	Ivanov	
she	*aNA*	она
husband	*MUSH* or *MUZH*	муж
my daughter's	*mayéy DOchiŗi*	моей дочери
in the restaurant	*v ŗistaRAņi*	в ресторане
She and my daughter's husband are in the restaurant.	*aNA i MUZH mayéy DOchiŗi v ŗistaRAņi.*	Она и муж моей дочери в ресторане.
	Smith	
who?	*KTO*	кто
your daughter's	*váshiy DOchiŗi*	вашей дочери
Who is your daughter's husband?	*KTO MUSH váshiy DOchiŗi?*	Кто муж вашей дочери?
	Ivanov	
Mr. Ilyin.	*taváŗishch iĻYIN.*	Товарищ Ильин.
match	*ŞPICHku*	спичку
Please give me a match.	*paZHALsta, DAYţi m̦ņé ŞPICHku.*	Пожалуйста, дайте мне спичку.
	Smith	
oh	*AX*	ах
Oh, excuse me; I haven't any matches.	*AX, izv̦iŅIţi; u m̦iņá ŅET ŞPIchik.*	Ах, извините; у меня нет спичек.
	Ivanov	
nothing	*ņi chiVO*	ничего
Never mind.	*éta ņi chiVO.*	Это ничего.
	Smith	
What's this to the right? The hotel?	*SHTO éta na PRAva? gaŞŢIņica?*	Что это направо? Гостиница?

	Ivanov	
of the station	*at vagZALa*	от вокзала
No, the hotel is to the left of the station.	*ƝET. gaŞŢIɲica na ĻEva at vagZAla.*	Нет. Гостиница налево от вокзала.
	Smith	
Thanks, Mr. Ivanov.	*spaŞIba, grazhdaɲín ivaNOF.*	Спасибо, гражданин Иванов.
	Ivanov	
You're welcome, Mr. Smith.	*paZHALsta, grazhdaɲín SM̦IT.*	Пожалуйста, гражданин Смит.
They arrive at the station.		
	Smith	
we	*MI*	мы
my wife*	*mayéy zhiNI*	моей жены
We're at the station, but my wife is not here.	*MI na vagZAļi, nó mayéy zhiNI z̧d̦éş ƝET.*	Мы на вокзале, но моей жены здесь нет.
	Ivanov	
my son	*mayivó SIna*	моего сына
And my son isn't either.	*i ƝET mayivó SIna.*	И нет моего сына.
	Smith	
Would you like some beer?	*xaŢIţi P̧Iva?*	Хотите пива?
	Ivanov	
Thanks.	*spaŞIba.*	Спасибо.
	Smith	
There's the restaurant.**	*ŗistaRAN TAM.*	Ресторан там.

---

*Not on the record. **The English on the record is an error.

	Ivanov	
Fine!	*xaraSHO!*	Хорошо!

Unit 2, Record Side 3, beginning. (78 RPM)

In the restaurant.

	Ivanov (*to the waitress*)	
Miss, give me some beer, please.	*graZHDANka, dáyţi mŋé P̧Iva. paZHALsta.*	Гражданка, дайте мне пива, пожалуйста.
	Smith	
I want some beer too.	*yá TO zhi xachú P̧Iva.*	Я тоже хочу пива.
And give me some matches, please.	*i DAYţi mŋé, paZHALsta, SP̧Ichik.*	И дайте мне, пожалуйста, спичек.
	(*to Ivanov*)	
Do you want a cigarette?	*xaţíţi paP̧iROsu?*	Хотите папиросу?
	Ivanov	
Thanks.	*spaŞIba.*	Спасибо.
	Smith	
he knows	*ZNAyit*	знает
Tell [me], does your son know you are here in the restaurant?	*skaZHIţi, vásh SIN ZNAyit shtó ví ȤḐEŞ v ŗistaRAŋi?*	Скажите, ваш сын знает, что вы здесь в ресторане?
he*	*ON*	он
me*	*miYA*	меня
	Ivanov	
(he) will meet	*FSTŖEţit*	встретит
Yes, he'll meet me here.	*DA. ón miŋá FSTŖEţit ȤḐEŞ.*	Да, он меня встретит здесь.

---

*Not on the record.

Oh, here's my son!	*AX, VOT móy SIN!*	Ах, вот мой сын!
	Smith	
And here's my wife too!	*a VOT i mayá zhiNA!*	А вот и моя жена!
Good-bye!	*da sɣiDAŋya!*	До свиданья!

Before you go through the *Basic Sentences* a second time, study the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation

To the Group Leader: The explanations preceding each *Practice* should be read by the group and discussed before the *Practice* is attempted. The practice for *Hints on Pronunciation* is in the Guide's Manual and on the phonograph records. Follow the same procedure in working with the practice material that you have followed with the *Basic Sentences*. Go through as many times as may be necessary to give each member of the group reasonable control of the item of pronunciation that is being taught. Have the group repeat after the Guide, first in unison, then individually.

The Russian sounds *p, t, k*. The Russian sounds which we write with *p, t, k* in the *Aids to Listening*, are slightly different from English *p, t, k* as in *pin, tin, kin*. The Russian sounds have less of a puff of breath after them. This difference is plainest at the beginning of a word. When English *p, t, k* have an *s* before them, as in *spin, stone, skin*, they do not have this puff of breath and are more like the Russian sounds.

PRACTICE 1

Unit 2, Record Side 3, after 1st spiral. (78 RPM) **(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 2, after 1st spiral.**

POD or *POT*	под	*under*
paZHALsta	пожалуйста	*please*
TAM	там	*there*
SHTO	что	*what*
KAK	как	*how*
KUshiţ	кушать	*to eat*

Russian *t, d, n, s, z*. Russian *t, d, n* differ somewhat from English *t, d, n*, as in *too, do, no*. The Russian sounds are made with the tip of the tongue farther forward: the tip of the tongue presses against the backs of the upper front teeth.

Russian *s* and *z* are made with more force than English *s* (as in *see*) and *z* (as in *zero*): the Russian *s* is more hissing and the Russian *z* more buzzing.

PRACTICE 2

Unit 2, Record Side 3, after 2nd spiral. (78 RPM)

TO zhi	тоже	*also*
Eta	это	*this*
DA	да	*yes*
DVA	два	*two*
SUpu	супу	*some soup*
SIN	сын	*son*
zaVUT	зовут	*they call*
ZNAyiţi	знаете	*you know*
NAS	нас	*us*
aNA	она	*she*

Palatal *ţ, ḑ, ŋ, ş, ȥ*. The palatal consonants *ţ, ḑ, ŋ, ş, ȥ* are made like the plain consonants *t, d, n, s, z*, with the addition of the *y*-like effect caused by raising the middle of the tongue against the high part of the roof of the mouth.

PRACTICE 3

Unit 2, Record Side 3, after 3rd spiral. (78 RPM)

ŢEM	тем	*by that*
ţiB̧A	тебя	*you*
ḐEţi	дети	*children*

AḐIN	один	*one*
ŞEM̧	семь	*seven*
şiSTRA	сестра	*sister*
z̧iMA	зима	*winter*
Z̧ḐEŞ	здесь	*here*
ŅET	нет	*no*
u ņiVO	у него	*of him, by him*

Contrast of plain and palatal consonants. The plain consonants are not so very different from English sounds, but the palatal consonants sound quite odd to our ears, because there is a kind of *y*-sound mixed into them. Remember to get this effect by raising the middle of the tongue.

In the following exercise a word with a plain consonant is given first and then, after it, a word with the corresponding palatal consonant.

Imitate the Guide or the record.

PRACTICE 4

Unit 2, Record Side 3, after 4th spiral. (78 RPM)

TAM	там	*there*
ŢEM	тем	*by that*
DAYţi	дайте	*give*
ḐEţi	дети	*children*
SIN	сын	*son*
şiSTRA	сестра	*sister*
ZAFtra	завтра	*tomorrow*
z̧iMA	зима	*winter*
NAS	нас	*us*
ŅET	нет	*no*

POT	под	*under*
P̦AȚ	пять	*five*
BIla	было	*it was*
B̦EZ	без	*without*
faM̦Il̦iya	фамилия	*family-name*
KOf̦i	кофе	*coffee*
VI	вы	*you*
V̦EȘ	весь	*all*
MAsla	масло	*butter*
M̦Asa	мясо	*meat*

If you are uncertain about any of the points of pronunciation which have been discussed, ask your Guide to repeat the words and phrases with which you are having trouble, and try to improve your pronunciation. Remember that these notes are only approximate and are at best an imperfect description of the sounds.

When you are satisfied that you can pronounce fairly well all the sounds, go through the *Basic Sentences* once more in unison and with your book open. As you repeat after your Guide, keep your eye on the *Aids to Listening*, and note in particular the examples of the sounds discussed. Do not hesitate to ask your Guide to repeat if you are uncertain about any sound.

Finally go through the *Basic Sentences* again, this time taking turns. Keep your book closed, listen carefully to your Guide, and make sure that your pronunciation satisfied him.

3. Check Yourself

Did you go through the *Basic Sentences* at least twice with your book open and then at least once with your book closed?

Did you repeat each word and phrase immediately after hearing it in a loud, clear voice?

Did you follow the pronunciation you heard even if it seemed different from that shown in your book?

Did you keep in mind the meaning of each word and phrase as you heard and spoke the Russian?

If your Guide asked you to repeat, did you do so with enthusiasm and as many times as necessary until he was satisfied with what you were saying?

Section B—Word Study and Review of Basic Sentences

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

If your group has time for outside assignments, do the *Word Study* between meetings of the group. Otherwise make it independent study in the group meeting.

In this section we take up some of the words and expressions you have just learned and examine them to see how the language is built. First read the words and expressions in each list and make sure that you understand the meaning of the Russian. Then read the comment which goes with each list. This should make clear to you just how the words function and how they are put together. If there are any points that are not clear to you, make note of them and ask other members of the group about them. Follow the same procedure with each list and each comment.

A. COMMENT ON THE BASIC SENTENCES

kuDA ví iḐOţi? 'Where are you going?' The word used here means *going on foot.* If Smith were going to the station on foot, he would answer *yá iDU na vagZAL.* But in the conversation here given, Smith is planning to drive or to take a street car; therefore he answers *yá YEdu na vagZAL:* the word used here means *going (riding) in a vehicle or on the back of an animal.* If Ivanov saw Smith sitting in an automobile or if he met him on a street car or in a train, he would ask *kuDA ví YEḑiţi?* 'Where are you driving (or riding) to?'

MUSH or *MUZH* 'husband.' In slow, careful speech, especially when saying the word all by itself for you to hear plainly, many Russians will say *MUZH.* In ordinary rapid speech it will mostly be *MUSH.* We shall learn more of this later.

u ņivó OTpusk 'he is having a furlough', literally 'With him [there is a] furlough'. The words for 'me, him, her', and so on are as follows:

me	*ɱiŊA*	меня
us	*NAS*	нас
you	*VAS*	вас
him	*yiVO*	его
her	*yiYO*	ее
them	*YIX*	их

For example:

Do you understand me?	*vɨ́ ɱiŋá paŋiMAyiţi?*	Вы меня понимаете?
Do you understand us?	*vɨ́ nás paŋiMAyiţi?*	Вы нас понимаете?
I don't understand you.	*yá vás ŋi paŋiMAyu.*	Я вас не понимаю.
Do you know him?	*vɨ́ yivó ZNAyiţi?*	Вы его знаете?
Do you know her?	*vɨ́ yiyó ZNAyiţi?*	Вы ее знаете?
Do you know them?	*vɨ́ yɨ́x ZNAyiţi?*	Вы их знаете?

But after prepositions (*with*, *for*, *in*, and the like) these last three words begin with *ŋ* instead of *y:*

I have cigarettes.	*u ɱiŋá papiROsi.*	У меня папиросы.
We have cigarettes.	*u nás papiROsi.*	У нас папиросы.
Have you cigarettes?	*u vás papiROsi?*	У вас папиросы?
He has one rouble.	*u ŋivó aḐIN RUBĻ.*	У него один рубль.
She has two roubles.	*u ŋiyó DVA ruBĻA.*	У нее два рубля.
They have a furlough.	*u ŋɨ́x OTpusk.*	У них отпуск.

mŋé skaZAļi shtó vásh SIN v ARɱiyi 'They have told me that your son is in the army'. The word *SHTO* will match several different English words. Here we use, in English, the word 'that'. We have met *SHTO* also where in English we say 'what'; for instance, *SHTO vɨ xaŢIţi?* (or, simply, *SHTO vɨ́?*) 'What do you want?'

B. CASES

Here's my wife, too!	*VOT i mayá zhiNA!*	Вот и моя жена!
I want to meet my wife there.	*yá tám xachú FSTŖEţiţ mayú zhiNU.*	Я там хочу встретить мою жену.
My wife isn't here.	*z̧ḑéş ŊET mayéy zhiNI.*	Здесь нет моей жены.

Russian *nouns* (that is, words like *station*, *match*, *wife*, *children*) have different forms in different sentences; for instance, here we see *zhiNA*, *zhiNU*, *zhiNI*, all meaning 'wife'. These different forms are called the *case forms* or *cases* of the noun.

Notice that the difference between the case forms appears at the end of the word. The parts which differ are called the ***endings***, such as *-a*, *-u*, *-i* in our example. The different case forms of a noun have different endings.

The part of the noun which comes before the endings is called the *stem* of the noun. Thus, in our example, the stem is *zhin-*.

But how do we know which case form to use? The real answer is: *we must imitate the Russian speakers.* We must learn to talk as they talk. In the beginning we can do this only by memorizing a big stock of useful, common sentences. Later on, this difficulty disappears and, for the most part, one instinctively uses the right case form.

It may help, however, if we tell something about this as we go along. The case form of a noun depends on the other words in the sentence. There are six cases. In this and the following Units we shall tell about the case forms of nouns and about the connections in which each one is used.

What we tell about this may help you keep things straight. But it would be a mistake to spend time studying our statements or puzzling over them. Read them through and let it go at that. The important thing is to study the Russian sentences until you know them by heart and can say them without hesitation. ***Spend your time on the Russian sentences and not on the English explanations.***

C. NOMINATIVE CASE

Masculine nouns.

Where is the station?	*GḐE vagZAL?*	Где вокзал?
It is here.	*ON Z̧ḐEŞ.*	Он здесь.
Where is your son?	*GḐE vásh SIN?*	Где ваш сын?
He is there.	*ON TAM.*	Он там.
Here's our older son!	*VOT násh STARshiy SIN!*	Вот наш старший сын!
My husband speaks Russian.	*móy MUZH gavaŖIT pa RUsķi.*	Мой муж говорит по-русски.
It's a big house.	*baļSHOY DOM.*	Большой дом.
The Russian language is difficult.	*RUsķiy yiZIK TRUdnay.*	Русский язык трудный.
I have one rouble.	*u miŅA aḐIN RUBĻ.*	У меня один рубль.
This house is mine.	*Etat DOM MOY.*	Этот дом мой.

Practice these sentences, covering first the English, and then the Russian. Then go through them and observe the following things.

(1) The ***nouns*** in these sentences end in a consonant: *vagZAL, SIN, MUZH, DOM* ('house'), *yiZIK* ('tongue; language'), *RUBĻ*.

(2) The word 'it' or 'he' referring to one of these nouns is *ON*.

(3) The adjectives modifying or describing one of these nouns have the following forms: *baļSHOY* ('big'), *TRUdnay* ('difficult'), *STARshiy* ('older'), *RUsķiy, MOY, NASH* ('our'), *VASH, Etat, aḐIN*.

(4) All these words name or describe a person or thing that *is somewhere* or *is some way* or *does something*. All these words are in a case form which we call the *Nominative*.

(5) The nouns in these sentences belong to a class called *Masculine*. They denote male persons and certain things.

We have seen the following Masculine nouns. We give them here in the Nominative case.

tea	*CHAY*	чай
house	*DOM*	дом
gentleman, Mr.	*gaspaḐIN*	господин
citizen	*grazhdaŅIN*	гражданин
little boy	*MAĻchik*	мальчик
husband	*MUSH, MUZH*	муж
furlough	*OTpusk*	отпуск
restaurant	*ŗistaRAN*	ресторан
rouble	*RUBĻ*	рубль
sugar	*SAxar*	сахар
son	*SIN*	сын
soup	*SUP*	суп
comrade	*taVAŗishch*	товарищ

station	*vagZAL*	вокзал
bread	*XĻEP, XĻEB*	хлеб
language	*yiZIK*	язык

Feminine nouns.

Where is the hotel?	*GḐE gaŞŢIŋica?*	Где гостиница?
It is here.	*aNA Z̧ḐEŞ.*	Она здесь.
Where is your daughter?	*GḐE vásha DOCHka?*	Где ваша дочка?
She is there.	*aNA TAM.*	Она там.
Here's our older daughter!	*VOT násha STARshiya DOCHka!*	Вот наша старшая дочка!
My wife speaks Russian.	*mayá zhiNA gavaŖIT pa RUsķi.*	Моя жена говорит по-русски.
It's a big hotel.	*baļSHAya gaŞŢIŋica.*	Большая гостиница.
This work is difficult.	*Eta raBOta TRUdnaya.*	Эта работа трудная.
I have one cigarette.	*u miŅA aDNA papiROsa.*	У меня одна папироса.

Practice these sentences, covering first the English, and then the Russian. Then go through them and observe the following things.

(1) The nouns in these sentences end in *-a: gaŞŢIŋica, DOCHka* ('daughter'), *zhiNA*, *raBOta* ('work'), *papiROsa.*

(2) The word 'it' or 'she' referring to one of these nouns is *aNA.*

(3) The adjectives modifying or describing one of these nouns have the following forms: *baļSHAya* ('big'), *TRUdnaya* ('difficult'), *STARshiya* ('older'), *maYA*, *NAsha* ('our'), *VAsha*, *Eta*, *aDNA*.

(4) All these words name or describe a person or thing that *is somewhere* or *is some way* or *does something*. All these words are in their *Nominative* case form.

(5) The nouns in these sentences belong to a class called *Feminine.* They denote female persons and certain things.

We have seen the following Feminine nouns. We list them here in the Nominative case form:

army	*ARɱiya*	армия
daughter	*DOCHka*	дочка
hotel	*gaŞŢIŋica*	гостиница
(female) citizen	*graZHDANka*	гражданка
kopek	*kaP̧EYka*	копейка
potatoes	*karTOshka*	картошка
cigarette	*papiROsa*	папироса
work	*raBOta*	работа
match	*SP̧ICHka*	спичка
water	*vaDA*	вода
wife	*zhiNA*	жена

Neuter nouns.

Where is our butter?	*GḐE násha MAsla?*	Где наше масло?
It is here.	*aNO Z̧ḐEŞ.*	Оно здесь.
Here it is!	*VOT aNO!*	Вот оно!
This is good butter.	*Eta, xaROshiya MAsla.*	Это — хорошее масло.
Where is my letter?	*GḐE mayó pişMO?*	Где мое письмо?
[Is it a] Russian letter?	*RUskaya pişMO?*	Русское письмо?
One letter is here.	*Z̧ḐEŞ aDNO pişMO.*	Здесь одно письмо.
[Is] this letter yours?	*éta pişMO VAsha?*	Это письмо ваше?
One word, please!	*aDNO SLOva, paZHALsta!*	Одно слово, пожалуйста!
[It's a] big building.	*baļSHOya ZDAŋiya.*	Большое здание.
Here's some cold milk!	*VOT xaLOdnaya malaKO!*	Вот холодное молоко!
How much does this milk cost?	*SKOĻka STOyit éta malaKO?*	Сколько стоит это молоко?

Practice these sentences, covering first the English and then the Russian. Then go through them and observe the following things.

(1) The nouns in these sentences end in *-O* when the ending is stressed: *malaKO*, *p̦işMO* ('letter'); when the ending is not stressed, it is *-a: MAsla*, *ZDAŋiya* ('building'), *SLOva* ('word').

(2) The word 'it' referring to one of these nouns is *aNO*.

(3) The adjectives modifying or describing one of these nouns have the following forms: *baļSHOya* ('big'), *xaLOdnaya* ('cold'), *xaROshiya* ('good'), *RUskaya*, *maYO*, *NAsha* ('our'), *VAsha*, *Eta*, *aDNO*.

(4) All these words name or describe something which *is somewhere* or *is some way* or *does something*. They are in their *Nominative* case form.

(5) The nouns in these sentences belong to a class called *Neuter*. They denote various things.

We have seen the following Neuter nouns. We give them here in their Nominative case form:

milk	*malaKO*	молоко
meat	*M̦Asa*	мясо
butter	*MAsla*	масло
letter	*p̦işMO*	письмо
beer	*P̦Iva*	пиво
word	*SLOva*	слово
building	*ZDAŋiya*	здание

Plural nouns.

Where are my cigarettes?	*GḐE mayí papiROsi?*	Где мои папиросы?
Your cigarettes are here.	*váshi papiROsi Z̦ḐEŞ.*	Ваши папиросы здесь.
Here they are, here!	*VOT aŋí Z̦ḐEŞ!*	Вот они здесь!
Our little boys understand Russian.	*náshi MAĻchiki paŋiMAyut pa RUsķi.*	Наши мальчики понимают по-русски.
I have the matches.	*SP̦ICHķi u miŅA.*	Спички у меня.

These young people are Russian.	*éţi malaDIya ĻUḑi, RUsķiya.*	Эти молодые люди — русские.
Where are our wives?	*GḐE náshi ZHOni?*	Где наши жены?
Here are some big buildings!	*VOT baļSHIya ZDAŋiya!*	Вот большие здания!
These letters are mine.	*éţi P̧IŞma maYI.*	Эти письма мои.
No, they are not yours, they are ours.	*ŊET; aŋí ŋi VAshi; aŋí NAshi.*	Нет, они не ваши, они наши.
Russian words are difficult.	*RUsķiya slaVA TRUdniya.*	Русские слова трудные.

Practise these sentences, covering first the English and then the Russian. Then go through them and observe the following things.

(1) The nouns in these sentences are *Plural;* they mean *more than one* person or thing. A *Singular* noun means *one* person or thing. Each Plural noun matches some one of the Singular nouns which we have been studying:

MAĻchik—MAĻchiķi (little boy—little boys)
papiROsa—papiROsi (cigarette—cigarettes)
SP̧ICHka—SP̧ICHķi (match—matches)
zhiNA—ZHOni (wife—wives)

Those Plural nouns which match a Masculine or Feminine Singular noun have the ending *-i* in the Nominative case. Before this ending, the sound *k* is replaced by palatal *ķ*. Some accent different syllables in the Singular and in the Plural. There is no Singular in everyday speech corresponding to *ĻUdi* ('people') or to *ḐEţi* ('children').

SLOva—slaVA (word—words)
pişMO—P̧IŞma (letter—letters)
ZDAŋiya—ZDAŋiya (building—buildings)

Those Plural nouns which match a Neuter Singular noun have the ending *-A* in the Nominative Plural. The accent is often on different syllables in the Singular and in the Plural.

(2) The word 'they', referring to a Plural noun, is *aŊI*.

(3) The adjectives modifying Plural nouns have the following forms: *malaDIya* ('young ones'), *baļSHIya* ('big ones'), *TRUdniya* ('difficult ones'), *RUsķiya* ('Russian ones, Russians'), *maYI, NAshi, VAshi, Eţi.*

(4) All the Plural forms in our sentences name or describe persons or things which *are somewhere* or *are some way* or *are doing something.* These Plural nouns are all in their *Nominative* case form.

Notice that the Nominative Plural form is not used after numbers. After numbers a different form is used, as we shall see in the next Unit.

Here are some more Singular and Plural nouns in the Nominative case form:

ŗistaRAN—ŗistaRAni (restaurant—restaurants)
taVAŗishch—taVAŗishchi (comrade—comrades)
vagZAL—vagZAli (station—stations)
gaŞŢIŋica—gaŞŢIŋici (hotel—hotels)
yiZIK—yiziĶI (language—languages)

Summary

We shall now sum up what we have said about the Nominative case form. If you know how to say things, you don't need to bother with the statements we are going to give here. The native speakers (for instance, Russians or Americans) speak their own language perfectly, but very few of them can make statements that describe the forms. If you can talk, you don't need any rules. But sometimes when one is studying a foreign language, one starts worrying about the forms, and then it helps to have a handy table or summary such as we shall now give.

Nominative case forms

Nouns.

Masculine: *vagZAL* (no ending)
Feminine: *papiROsa* (ending -*a*)
Neuter: *malaKO, SLOva* (ending -*O*, unstressed -*a*)
Plural of Masc. or Fem.: *papiROsi* (ending -*i*)
Plural of Neuter: *slaVA* (ending -*a*)

Before -*i* the sound *k* becomes palatal *ķ*: *MAĻchik—MAĻchiķi*.

Special adjectives and pronoun.

My:
Masculine: *móy SIN* (no ending)
Feminine: *mayá zhiNA* (ending -*á*)
Neuter: *mayó pişMO* (ending -*ó*)
Plural: *mayí P̧IŞma* (ending -*í*)

Your:
Masculine: *vásh SIN* (no ending)
Feminine: *vásha zhiNA* (ending -*a*)
Neuter: *vásha pişMO* (ending -*e*)
Plural: *váshi P̧IŞma* (ending -*i*)
The word *NASH* ('our') goes just like *VASH*.

This, that:
Masculine: *état vagZAL* (ending -*at*)
Feminine: *éta gaŞŢIŋica* (ending -*a*)
Neuter: *éta pişMO* (ending -*a*)
Plural: *éţi ḐEţi* (Plural stem *eţ*-, ending -*i*)

One:
Masculine: *aḐIN RUBĻ* (no ending; vowel *i* inserted before *n*)

Feminine: *aDNA kaP̧EYka* (ending *-a*)
Neuter: *aDNO SLOva* (ending *-o*)

He, she, it, they:

Masculine: *GḐE vagZAL?—VOT ON* (no ending)
Feminine: *GḐE gaŞŢIŋica?—VOT aNA* (ending *-á*)
Neuter: *GḐE malaKO?—VOT aNO* (ending *-ó*)
Plural: *GḐE SP̧ICHķi?—VOT aŊI* (Plural stem *aŋ-*, ending *-í*)

Ordinary adjectives with accent on endings:

Masculine: *baļSHOY DOM* (ending *-óy*)
Feminine: *baļSHAya gaŞŢIŋica* (ending *-áya*)
Neuter: *baļSHOya ZDAŋiya* (ending *-óya*)
Plural: *baļSHIya gaŞŢIŋici* (ending *-íya*)

Ordinary adjectives with accent on stem:

When the accent is not on the endings, the vowels *o* and *a* are weakened to *i* after palatal consonants or *sh*, *zh*, and to *a* after other consonants.

Masculine: *xaROshiy SUP* (ending *-iy*)
Feminine: *xaROshiya papiROsa* (ending *-iya*)
Neuter: *xaROshiya malaKO* (ending *-iya*)
Plural: *xaROshiya ŗistaRAni* (ending *-iya*)

If the stem ends in *k*, *g*, *x*, these sounds become palatal before the vowel *i*.

After *k*, *g*, *x*, many speakers (including the one on our records) have the ending *-iy* for the Masculine, instead of *-ay*.

Masculine: *RUsķiy yiZIK* (ending *-iy*)
Feminine: *RUskaya gaŞŢIŋica* (ending *-aya*)
Neuter: *RUskaya SLOva* (ending *-aya*)
Plural: *RUsķiya slaVA* (ending *-iya*)

But many speakers use *-ay* in the Masculine: *RUskay yiZIK*.

After other plain consonants (that is, after all except *sh*, *zh*, *k*, *g*, *x*), the vowels *o* and *i* are weakened to *a* when unstressed:

Masculine: *TRUdnay yiZIK* (ending *-ay*)
Feminine: *TRUdnaya raBOta* (ending *-aya*)
Neuter: *TRUdnaya SLOva* (ending *-aya*)
Plural: *TRUdnaya raBOti* (ending *-aya*)

He is a Russian.	*ON RUsķiy.*	Он русский.
She is a Russian.	*aNA RUskaya.*	Она русская.
They are Russians.	*aŊI RUsķiya.*	Они русские.
The toilet is to the left.	*uBORnaya na ĻEva.*	Уборная налево.

Notice that some words which we should expect to be nouns are in Russian adjectives.

Irregular nouns.

Study the following sentences in the usual way until you can say them fluently. Read the explanations; they may help.

This is our daughter.	*Eta násha DOCH.*	Это наша дочь.
These are our daughters.	*Eta náshi DOchiŗi.*	Это наши дочери.

The Feminine noun *DOCH* has an irregular form in the Nominative Singular. The stem in all other forms is *DOchiŗ-*. There is also a regular noun *DOCHka* (plural *DOCHķi*).

Here's your coffee!	*VOT vásh KOf̦i!*	Вот ваш кофе!

Some Masculine nouns do not end in a consonant.

There are big houses there.	*TAM baļSHIya daMA.*	Там большие дома.

Some Masculine nouns have the ending *-a* (instead of *-i*) in the Nominative Plural.

Where are your husbands?	*GḐE váshi muZHYA?*	Где ваши мужья?
My sons are in the army.	*mayí sanaV̦YA v ARm̦iyi.*	Мои сыновья в армии.
How do you do, gentlemen!	*ZDRAstvuyţi, gaspaDA!*	Здравствуйте, господа!

Some Nouns have different stems in the Singular and in the Plural. We have seen three such nouns, all **Masculine**:

Singular stem:	Plural stem:
muzh- (*MUSH, MUZH*)	*muzhy-* (*muZHYA*)
sin- (*SIN*)	*sanav̦y-* (*sanav̦YA*)
gaspaḑin- (*gaspaḐIN*)	*gaspad-* (*gaspaDA*)

Pronouns.

The Nominative forms of the pronouns are *YA, MI, VI, KTO, SHTO*. Learn the following sentences:

Who's there?	*KTO TAM?*	Кто там?
It's I.	*Eta YA.*	Это я.
Who are you?	*KTO VI?*	Кто вы?

What's this?	*SHTO Eta?*	Что это?
Here's what it is!	*VOT SHTO!*	Вот что!
Where are you?	*GḐE VI?*	Где вы?
I'm here.	*yá Z̧ḐEŞ.*	Я здесь.
We're here.	*mí Z̧ḐEŞ.*	Мы здесь.
We're in the army.	*mí v ARm̧iyi.*	Мы в армии.

2. Covering English and Russian of Word Study

Read aloud several times the examples given you in the *Word Study*. Then cover the English and see if you know the meaning of every item. Repeat operation until you are sure that you know every expression. As a final test, cover the Russian and see if you can speak out the Russian expressions by simply looking at the English. Skip about and test yourself thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* with your Guide or the phonograph record. Go through them as many times as you can, taking turns repeating the Russian individually. Try it with books closed and see how you get along without the help of the *Aids to Listening*. Always keep in mind the meaning of the Russian you are hearing and speaking. As you go through the *Basic Sentences* be on the lookout for examples of the points in *Word Study* you have just covered.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences* with your Guide or the phonograph record. For the detailed procedure to be followed read again the instructions for the review of the first half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Here is your chance to find out just how well you have learned the meaning of the Russian expressions you have had up to this point. Go back to the *Basic Sentences* in Section A and cover the English. Read the Russian aloud and see whether you can supply the English equivalents of the words and phrases. Mark those you are not sure about and after reading the list through, uncover the English and look up their meaning. Cover the English again and repeat the procedure until you can go through the entire list giving all the meanings without difficulty.

3. What Would You Say?

For each of the following situations, three Russian sentences are given. All three of the sentences make perfectly good sense and are written in correct Russian, but only one of them fits the situation. Read all three of them out loud and pick out the one that fits the situation. Be sure you know why the other choices are not suitable. At the next meeting of the group you will be asked to say what you have chosen, and you will have a chance to test your answers. Do not write anything down.

1. You meet Mrs. Ivanov on the street and greet her. You say:
   a. *ZDRAstvuyţi, grazhdaņin ivaNOF!*
   b. *ZDRAstvuyţi, grazhdánka ivaNOva!*
   c. *ZDRAstvuyţi, gaspaḑín ivaNOF!*
2. You introduce your friend Mr. Ilyin. You say:
   a. *iz̧iŅIţi, YA taVAŗishch iĻYIN.*
   b. *grazhdaņín iĻYIN na vagZAļi.*
   c. *Eta grazhdaņín iĻYIN.*
3. Mrs. Ivanov asks where you are going. She says:
   a. *kuDA ví iḐOţi?*
   b. *vásha zhiNA v ŗistaRAņi?*
   c. *GḐE vásha zhiNA?*
4. She compliments you on your speaking Russian. She says:
   a. *ví xaraSHO gavaŖIţi pa RUSķi.*
   b. *ví ņi chiVO ņi paņiMAyiţi pa RUSķi.*
   c. *ví ņi xaraSHO gavaŖIţi pa RUSķi.*
5. She asks where your friend is. She says:
   a. *GḐE vásh SIN?*
   b. *GḐE vásha zhiNA?*
   c. *GḐE vásh taVAŗishch?*
6. You want to tell her he is in the army. You say:
   a. *ón na vagZAļi.*
   b. *ón v ARm̧iyi.*
   c. *móy SIN na vagZAļi.*
7. You ask Ilyin whether he wants a cigarette. You say:
   a. *vi xaţiţi papiROsu?*
   b. *GḐE mayí papiROsi?*
   c. *u vás yéşţ papiROsi?*

8. He wants one. He says:
   a. *DA, paZHALsta; DAYt̡i mŋé SP̡ICHku.*
   b. *DA, paZHALsta; DAYt̡i mŋé papiROsu.*
   c. *DA, paZHALsta; DAYt̡i mŋé vaDI.*

9. Mrs. Ivanov tells you she is driving to the railway station. She says:
   a. *yá xachú KUshit̡.*
   b. *yá YEdu na vagZAL.*
   c. *yá iDU na vagZAL.*

10. She says her husband is going to meet her there. She says:
   a. *miŋá tám FSTR̡Et̡it móy MUSH.*
   b. *mŋé skaZAl̡i shtó móy MUSH TAM.*
   c. *VOT móy MUSH!*

11. You are driving to the station too. You say:
   a. *yá TO zhi idú v r̡istaRAN.*
   b. *yá TO zhi xachú FSTR̡Et̡it̡ váshiva MUzha.*
   c. *yá TO zhi YEdu na vagZAL.*

12. Your friend is going to meet you there. You say:
   a. *miŋá tám FSTR̡Et̡it ad̡ín móy taVAr̡ishch.*
   b. *yá xachú tám FSTR̡Et̡it̡ mayú DOCH.*
   c. *miŋá tám FSTR̡Et̡it móy SIN.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

To the Group Leader: Read the English describing the situations in *What Would You Say?* of Section C, and call on different students, not in any fixed order, to speak the Russian which the situation calls for. Encourage the students to give the Russian, if they can, without reading it from the simplified spelling in their books. Then ask different members of the group to give the meaning in English of the different Russian expressions listed for each situation.

Go back to the last exercise in the preceding section. The Leader will ask different members of the group to speak the Russian to be used in each of the situations given. Other members of the group will criticize the choices made if they do not agree with them. The Leader will also ask for the English equivalents of all the other expressions offered as choices, taking turns around the group.

2. Word Study Check-Up

To the Group Leader: As a further check on the students' understanding of the *Word Study*, read the English equivalent of the Russian expressions given in each comment under *Word Study*. Call on different students, not in any fixed order, to give the correct Russian for the English. For instance, say to A: "*KAK skaZAṬ pa RUsḳi; my son, your son?*" and so on. The Guide will at this point indicate by a negative sign whenever he hears a Russian expression that is wrong. If there is no Guide, the other members of the group will signal that they do not agree. Immediately ask someone else to give the right answer. Any member of the group who has difficulty in giving the correct Russian should be told to review the *Word Study* thoroughly before the next meeting of the group. Do not take time in this exercise to talk about the *why*. Stick to the *how*.

The Leader will ask different members of the group to give the correct Russian for the English equivalents of the expressions you studied in the *Word Study*. If you give the wrong answer, the Guide will let you know by making a negative sign; or, if there is no Guide, the other members of the group will indicate that they think your answer is wrong. The Leader will then immediately call on someone else for the right answer. If you have difficulty in giving the correct Russian, review the *Word Study* thoroughly.

3. Listening In

To the Group Leader: Re-read the note *To the Group Leader* in Section D1 of Unit 1. Follow the same procedure as outlined there. The first time you go through the conversations, check up on the meaning at the end of each conversation. Then go through all of them a second time without stopping. Finally, assign parts and have the students read the conversations. Get them to do a little acting if you can. Encourage them to speak loudly and clearly and to get into the spirit of the situation.

Keep your book closed while the Guide reads the following conversations and repeat after him in unison. If you have no Guide, you should use the phonograph records, repeating the Russian immediately after you hear it. At the end of each conversation take time out to check up on the meaning of any word or phrase about which you are in doubt. Ask some other member of the group to give you the English equivalent or in case no one knows, go back to the *Basic Sentences* of this unit and make sure that you understand everything before you proceed any further. Go through the conversations a second time, repeating after the Guide individually. Then take parts in the conversations. This exercise contains almost all the new words you have learned in this unit.

Unit 2, Record Side 4, beginning. (78 RPM) **(33⅓ RPM) Record 2, after 2nd spiral.**

1. *Anna and Marya talk about Mrs. Ivanov's children.*

Anna: *KTO éta graZHDANka?*

Marya: *grazhdánka ivaNOva.*

Anna: *AX, DA!*

Marya: *vɨ́ yiyó ZNAyiṭi?*

Anna: *ŊET.*
nó mayí ḐEţi mŋé skaZAļi shtó yiyó SIN v ARɱiyi.

Marya: *DA.*
u ŋiyó SIN i DOCH.

Anna: *GḐE yiyó DOCH?*

Marya: *aná ȤḐEŞ v ŗistaRAŋi.*
ví xaţíţi FSTŖEţiţ yiyó?

Anna: *DA.*
nó yá YEdu na vagZAL.
móy MUSH tám.
a kudá VI iḐOţi?

Marya: *v ŗistaRAN.*
da sv̡iDAŋya, graZHDANka.

Anna: *da sv̡iDAŋya.*

Unit 2, Record Side 4, after 1st spiral. (78 RPM)

2. *Smith and Ivanov have a couple of beers.*

Smith: *ZDRAstvuyţi taVAŗishch!*

Ivanov: *ZDRAstvuyţi!*
KAK VI?

Smith: *xaraSHO, spaŞIba.*
YA xachú ƤIva.
a VI?

Ivanov: *YA TO zhi.*
YEŞŢ ŗistaRAN na ĻEva?

Smith: *DA.*
xaŢIţi papiROsu?

Ivanov: *DA.*
spaŞIba

Smith: *iȥv̡iŊIţi; u ɱiŋá ŊET SƤIchik.*

Ivanov: *ŋi chiVO.*
ȤḐEŞ ŗistaRAN.

Waitress: *ZDRAstvuyţi!*
SHTO xaŢIţi?

Ivanov: *YA xachú ƤIva, paZHALsta, i SƤIchik.*

Smith: *paZHALsta, DAYţi mŋé TO zhi ƤIva.*
a KAK vásha zhiNA, taVAŗishch?

Ivanov: *xaraSHO, spaŞIba.*

Smith: *ví ZNAyiţi shtó MUZH moyéy DOchiŗi ȤḐEŞ?*

Ivanov: *DA.*
a GḐE vásh SIN?

Smith: *ón TO zhi ȤḐEŞ.*

Ivanov: *ON ŋi v ARɱiyi?*

Smith: *DA, nó u ŋivó OTpusk.*

Ivanov: *xaraSHO.*
graZHDANka! SKOĻka éta STOyit?

Unit 2, Record Side 4, after 2nd spiral. (78 RPM)

3. *A stranger asks directions from Green.*

Stranger: *ZDRAstvuyţi taVAŗishch!*
ví paŋiMAyiţi pa RUsķi?

Green: *DA, yá paŋiMAyu:*
nó pazhálsta gavaŖIţi ⱮEdļinna.

Stranger: *ví ZNAyiţi gḑé uBORnaya?*

Green: *DA.*
v gaŞŢIŋici yéşţ uBORnaya.

Stranger: *GḐE gaŞŢIŋica?*

Green: *gaŞŢIŋica na ĻEva at vagZAla.*

Is there any word or phrase in these conversations that you do not understand now? If there is, be sure to find out its meaning by asking members of your group or looking it up in the *Basic Sentences.*

Go through the conversations again following the same plan as before. Imitate carefully and keep in mind the meaning of everything you are saying in Russian.

Finally go through the conversations a third time.

Waitress: *chiŢIŗi ŖIva, aḐIN RUBĻ.*
spaŞIba.
da sv̧iDAŋya.

Ivanov and Smith: *da sv̧iDAŋya.*

Stranger: *ví skaZAļi shtó éta gaŞŢIŋica?*
éta ŋi gaŞŢIŋica.
éta vagZAL.

Green: *paZHALsta, paftaŖIţi.*

Stranger: *éta vagZAL, ŋi gaŞŢIŋica.*

Green: *vagZAL na ĻEva,*
a gaŞŢIŋica na ĻEva at vagZAla.

Stranger: *AX, izv̧iŊIţi paZHALsta.*

Green: *éta ŋi chiVO.*

Take turns speaking the parts and continue until everybody has had a chance to speak at least one of the parts. Keep this exercise going as long as you have time. Get the most out of this individual performance and when your turn comes, speak clearly and with feeling. The Guide will correct any errors he hears by asking you to repeat. Make every effort to satisfy him with your pronunciation.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Russian of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Basic Sentences* of this unit. Cover up the Russian. Read the English silently and test yourself to see how many words and phrases you can say in Russian. Check the words you are uncertain about and after you have gone through the whole list, uncover the Russian and review them. Go through the list once more and continue for at least three times or until you can give the Russian readily for all the expressions. This test is hard, but if you succeed in saying the Russian for all the sentences by merely looking at the English, you are doing well indeed. To make sure of this, after you are certain you know the material, pick out expressions at random and see if you can still speak the Russian quickly. As you practice, you must always speak the Russian aloud and try to imitate the pronunciation of your Guide as well as you can recall it.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

To the Group Leader: Go to the *Basic Sentences.* Read to the group the English equivalents of the Russian expressions. Call on different students, not in any fixed order, asking for the correct Russian for the English. This check-up is to be conducted in the same way as the *Vocabulary Check-Up* of Section E 2 of Unit 1. If you have any question about the proper procedure, review the note *To the Group Leader* in that section. Remember not to spend any time talking about the ***why*** of the Russian; stick to the ***how.***

In this section you are going to have your second chance to engage in conversation in Russian. Remember that this is the most useful part of your study. Therefore, you should make the greatest effort to do this part as well as you possibly can. Get perfectly clear [illegible] you are to do and then plunge into it with enthusiasm.

Before you begin the conversation, check yourself on your ability to speak the Russian you have learned up to this point. As in the *Vocabulary Check-Up* of Unit 1, the leader of the Group will ask you to supply in turn the Russian expressions for the English equivalents which he reads from the *Basic Sentences.* Figure out how to say the Russian for each English phrase or sentence whether it is your turn to speak or not. Only in this way can you get the most value out of the *Check-Up.* If there is much of the Russian which you don't know, review the *Basic Sentences* at the first opportunity outside of the group meeting.

3. Conversation

To the Group Leader: This section represents the real purpose of the entire unit. The course is intended to teach you to speak Russian and to understand it when you hear it spoken. Follow the instructions and give all the time you can to free conversation practice. Any members of the group who have special difficulty recalling the Russian words and phrases they need to express a meaning should be told to do more work with the *Useful Words and Phrases* and *Basic Sentences*. They need, in particular, more practice in covering the Russian and recalling it when they read the English. Practice in getting the meaning of the *Listening In* records will also help. Arrangements should be made for students to play and listen to the records whenever they can between meetings of the group.

Then turn to the outlined conversations which follow. Assign parts and ask the students to act them out. Vary the situations and suggest to the students that they vary the Russian slightly as they gain confidence in their speaking. Remember to keep the speaking loud enough so that everyone can hear. See that everyone is listening and trying to understand the Russian that is being spoken.

The Leader will assign parts and will ask you to reproduce the conversational situations which follow. Act your part. Don't be afraid to vary the conversation if you are sure of your Russian and use the Russian you have learned in Unit 1 as well as that of Unit 2. Continue this practice until everyone can speak any part of the conversations even though slight changes in the situations are introduced.

1. Two friends meet, A asks B if he'd like a beer. B asks where there is a restaurant. A tells him where there is one (to the right or left of the hotel, station, etc.). B says he is driving to the station to meet his daughter's husband, and asks where A is headed for. A says he is going to the hotel to the right of the station. They go off together.
2. At the station the daughter's husband is not there. They go into the restaurant and the waitress asks what they want. They order beer and cigarettes. B asks A about his family. A says his wife and little boy are getting on fine; his older son is in the army. B says his daughter's husband is in the army but he has a furlough. He calls the waitress and asks 'How much?' She says two beers and cigarettes are one rouble. They pay, she thanks them and say goodbye.
3. A boy and girl meet. He asks her if she'd like something to eat. She accepts. They go to a restaurant and the waitress asks what they want. The girl orders tea and bread and butter; the boy orders milk, meat, and potatoes. The waitress is hard of hearing and asks if she wants meat or butter. The boy says to give him some meat and the girl says she wants butter. The waitress asks him to repeat, and he repeats the whole order. She thanks him and leaves.

Throw yourself into these conversations. Do the best you can with pronunciation and with the Russian, but don't worry too much about mistakes. Think more of acting your part and speaking smoothly and as though you must mean what you are saying. The Guide will help you correct your errors. If you can do this work well, it means that you are actually conversing in Russian, and that is your chief aim in this course.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Read again the instructions given in Section F of the preceding unit. Then continue the conversations which you started in Section E of this unit (2).

Take every opportunity between now and the next meeting of the group to try out your Russian on other members of the group or on native speakers around you. Carry on conversations with them whenever you get a chance. Ask questions. At this stage of the game, don't try to use phrases or sentences which are different from those you have learned thus far in this course.

FINDER LIST

This is a complete alphabetical list of all the words and expressions used in this unit which are in any way new or unusual. The conventional spelling is enclosed in parentheses after each entry. From now on we shall not repeat words which have been drilled sufficiently in previous units. This list is for reference only, but you should know all these before going on to the next unit.

aNA, *aƝI*, *aNO*, see *ON*

ARɱiya **(армия)** army; *v ARɱiyi* in the army

at **(от)** from, of; *na PRAva at vagZALa* to the right of the station

AX **(ах)** oh!

baļSHOY **(большой)** big

chiVO **(чего)** of what: *ɲi chiVO* **(ничего)** nothing; it's nothing; never mind

ḐEţi **(дети)** children; *FSTŖEţiţ ḑiŢEY* **(дитей)** to meet the children

DOCH **(дочь)** daughter; *DOCHiŗi* **(дочери)** daughters; *MUSH mayéy DOchiŗi* **(дочери)** my daughter's husband

DOCHKA **(дочка)** daughter

DOM **(дом)** house; *daMA* **(дома)** houses

FSTŖEţiţ **(встретить)** to meet

FSTŖEţit **(встретит)** he will meet

iḐOţi **(идете)** you are going (on foot)

iDU **(иду)** I am going (on foot)

iĻYIN **(Ильин)** Ilyin (family name)

KTO **(кто)** who

kuDA **(куда)** whereto

ĻUḑi **(люди)** people

malaDOY **(молодой)** young

MAĻchik **(мальчик)** boy

MAļinķiy **(маленький)** small

MI **(мы)** *we*

MOY **(мсй)** my

MUSH, MUZH **(муж)** husband; *muZHYA* **(мужья)** husbands

NA **(на)** on, at
NAS **(нас)** us, *u NAS* we have
NASH **(наш)** our
ŋiVO, *ŊIX*, *ŋiYO*, see *yiVO*
NO **(но)** *but*

ON **(он)** he, it; *aNA* **(она)** she, it; *aNO* **(оно)** it; *aŊI* **(они)** they
OTpusk **(отпуск)** furlough

p̧işMO **(письмо)** letter; *P̧IŞma* **(письма)** letters

RUsķiy **(русский)** Russian

SIN **(сын)** son; *sanav̧YA* **(сыновья)** sons
skaZHIţi **(скажите)** tell
SLOva **(слово)** word; *slaVA* **(слова)** words
STARshiy **(старший)** older

TRUdnay **(трудный)** difficult

V **(в)** in; *v ŗistaRAŋi* in the restaurant
VAS **(вас)** you; *u VAS* you have
VASH **(ваш)** your

xaLODnay **(холодный)** cold
xaROshiy **(хороший)** good

YEḑiţi **(едете)** you are riding or driving,
YEdu **(еду)** I am riding or driving
yiVO **(его)** him; *u ŋiVO* **(у него)** he has
YIX **(их)** them; *u ŊIX* **(у них)** they have
yiYO **(ее)** her; *u ŋiYO* **(у нее)** she has
yiZIK **(язык)** tongue, language; *yiziĶI* **(языки)** languages

ZDAŋiya **(здание)** building
zhiNA **(жена)** wife; *ZHOni* **(жены)** wives
ZNAyit **(знает)** knows
ZNAyiţi **(знаете)** you know

UNIT 3

MEETING PEOPLE

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

To the Group Leader: Read carefully the note to the Leader in Section A of Unit 2. Then go through the *Basic Sentences* once, and take up the *Hints on Pronunciation*. Go through the *Basic Sentences* at least twice more individually, paying especial attention to pronunciation.

Go through the *Basic Sentences*, in unison, in the same way you did for Section A of the preceding unit. Be sure to put plenty of life into your repetition of the sentences. After you have gone through the *Basic Sentences* once in unison and have done the *Hints on Pronunciation*, come back to the *Basic Sentences*. Pay particular attention to the points of pronunciation you have just been working on and go through the sentences at least twice more individually.

1. Basic Sentences

Mrs. Smith meets the Ilyins and they talk about their friends.

Unit 3, Record Side 1, beginning. (78 RPM) **(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 3, beginning.**

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	*AIDS TO LISTENING*	*CONVENTIONAL SPELLING*
	Mrs. Smith	
girl	*ḐEvushku*	девушку
Mrs. Ilyin, do you know that girl?	*grazhdánka iĻYIN,* ví ZNAyiţi étu ḐEvushku?*	Гражданка Ильин, вы знаете эту девушку?
	Mrs. Ilyin	
(female) friend	*p̧ŗiYAţiļņica*	приятельница
Yes, she's one of my son's friends.	*DA; aNA p̧ŗiYAţiļņica mayivó SIna.*	Да, она приятельница моего сына.

---

*Not usual. The wife or daughter of *Mr. iĻYIN* is commonly called *iļyiNA*.

you*	*VAS*	вас
with her	*s ŊEY*	с ней
to make acquainted, to introduce**	*paznaKOɱiʈ*	познакомить
I want to make you acquainted with her.**	*yá xaCHU vás s ŊEY paznaKOɱiʈ.*	Я хочу вас с ней познакомить.
	Mrs. Smith	
that *or* this	*Etat*	этот
young	*malaDOY*	молодой
person	*chilaƲEK*	человек
Who is the young man with her?	*KTO état maladóy chilaƲEK s ŊEY?*	Кто этот молодой человек с ней?
	Mrs. Ilyin	
brother	*BRAT*	брат
It's her older brother.	*Eta yiyó stárshiy BRAT.*	Это ее старший брат.
	Mrs. Smith	
with what	*CHEM*	чем
he is occupied *or* is busy	*zaŋiMAyitsa*	занимается
What does he do?	*CHEM ón zaŋiMAyitsa?*	Чем он занимается?
	Mrs. Ilyin	
doctor	*DOKtar*	доктор
He's a doctor.	*ON, DOKtar.*	Он доктор.

---

*Not on the record. **The English on the record is an error.

sister	*şiSTRA*	сестра
(female) teacher	*uCHIţiļŋica*	учительница
English	*anGĻIYskava*	английского
(of) language	*yiziKA*	языка
His sister is an English teacher.	*yivó şiSTRA, uCHIţiļŋica anGĻIYskava yiziKA.*	Его сестра — учительница английского языка.
my boys	*mayí MAĻchiķi*	мои мальчики
(she) speaks	*gavaŖIT*	говорит
in English	*pa anGĻIYsķi*	по-английски
My boys told me that she speaks English well.	*mayí MAĻchiķi mŋé skaZAļi shtó aná xaraSHO gavaŖIT pa anGĻIYsķi.*	Мои мальчики мне сказали, что она хорошо говорит по-английски.
Please introduce me to her.	*paZHALsta, paznaKOMţi miŋá s ŊEY.*	Пожалуйста, познакомьте меня с ней.

Mrs. Smith

wait for	*padaZHDAŢ*	подождать
my husband	*mayivó MUzha*	моего мужа
I want to wait for my husband.	*yá xachú padaZHDAŢ mayivó MUzha.*	Я хочу подождать моего мужа.
He doesn't know that I'm here.	*ón ŋi ZNAyit shtó yá Z̧ḐEŞ.*	Он не знает, что я здесь.

Unit 3, Record Side 3, beginning. (78 RPM)

Mrs. Smith

them	*YIX*	их
Your husband knows them too?	*vásh MUSH yíx TO zhi ZNAyit?*	Ваш муж их тоже знает?

	Mrs. Ilyin	
together	*v ⱮEşţi*	вместе
(they) work	*raBOtayut*	работают
in the hospital*	*v GOspitaļi*	в госпитале
Yes, they work together in the hospital.	*DA; aņí v ⱮEşţi raBOtayut v GOspitaļi.*	Да, они вместе работают в госпитале.
Here's my husband, there, on the right!	*VOT móy MUSH; TAM, na PRAva!*	Вот мой муж, там направо!
hello (familiar)*	*ZDRAstvuy*	здравствуй
Boris (man's name)*	*baŖIS*	Борис
Hello, Boris!	*ZDRAstvuy baŖIS!*	Здравствуй, Борис!
	Mr. Ilyin	
Vera (woman's name)*	*V̦Era*	Вера
Hello, Vera!	*ZDRAstvuy V̦Era!*	Здравствуй, Вера!
	Mrs. Ilyin	
you (familiar)	*TI*	ты
(you) know (familiar)	*ZNAyish*	знаешь
Do you know Mrs. Smith?	*tí ZNAyish grazhdánku SⱮIT?*	Ты знаешь гражданку Смит?
you (familiar)	*tiB̦A*	тебя
I want you to meet her ('I want to make you acquainted with her').	*yá xaCHU tib̦á s ŅEY paznaKOɱiţ.*	Я хочу тебя с ней познакомить.
Mrs. Smith—my husband.	*ɱíşis SⱮIT; móy MUSH.*	Миссис Смит — мой муж.

---

*Not on the record.

	Mr. Ilyin	
very	*Ochiŋ*	очень
pleasant*	*priYAtna*	приятно
Very pleased to meet you ('Very pleasant').	*Ochiŋ pŗiYAtna.*	Очень приятно.
	Mrs. Smith	
How do you do, Mr. Ilyin!	*ZDRAstvuyţi, grazhdaŋín iĻYIN!*	Здравствуйте, гражданин Ильин!
	Mrs. Ilyin	
(he) wants	*XOchit*	хочет
(with the) sister	*s şiSTROY*	с сестрой
(of) Dr. Ivanov	*dóktara ivaNOva*	доктора Иванова
to get acquainted**	*paznaKOm̡itsa*	познакомиться
Mrs. Smith wants to meet Dr. Ivanov's sister.	*grazhdánka SM̡IT xóchit paznaKOm̡itsa s şiSTROY DOKtara ivaNOva.*	Гражданка Смит хочет познакомиться с сестрой доктора Иванова.
	Mr. Ilyin	
they	*aN̡I*	они
Where are they?	*a GD̡E aŋí?*	А где они?
	Mrs. Ilyin	
(he) went away	*uSHOL*	ушел
to the hospital**	*v GOspitaļ*	в госпиталь
She is in the restaurant, but he went off to the hospital.	*aNA v ŗistaRAŋi, a ON uSHOL v GOspitaļ.*	Она в ресторане, а он ушел в госпиталь.

---

*The English on the record is an error. **Not on the record.

	Mr. Ilyin	
to drink	*ŖIŢ*	пить
Would you like [something] to eat or drink?	*ví xaţíţi ŖIŢ íļi KUshiţ?*	Вы хотите пить или кушать?
	Mrs. Ilyin	
(we) want	*mí xaŢIM*	мы хотим
We'd like some tea or coffee, thank you.	*mí xaţím CHAyu íļi KOf̦i, spaŞIba*	Мы хотим чаю или кофе, спасибо.
	Mr. Ilyin	
let's go	*payḐOMţi*	пойдемте
Good; let's go into the restaurant.	*xaraSHO. payḐOMţi v ŗistaRAN.*	Хорошо, пойдемте в ресторан.
	Waitress	
What do you want?	*SHTO ví xaŢIţi?*	Что вы хотите?

Unit 3, Record Side 2, beginning. (78 RPM)

	Mrs. Ilyin	
to us	*NAM*	нам
Bring us some tea, please.	*DAYţi nám CHAyu, paZHALsta.*	Дайте нам чаю, пожалуйста.
	Mrs. Smith	
I want some milk and sugar, please.	*YA xachú malaKA i SAxaru, paZHALsta.*	Я хочу молока и сахару, пожалуйста.
	Waitress	
All right.	*xaraSHO.*	Хорошо.
	Mrs. Ilyin	
we'll meet	*FSTŖEţim*	встретим
We'll meet Miss Ivanov at the hospital.	*mí FSTŖEţim grazhdánku ivaNOvu v GOspitaļi.*	Мы встретим гражданку Иванову в госпитале.

we'll go*	*mí payḐOM*	мы пойдем
with you (familiar)	*s taBOY*	с тобой
there ('to that place')	*tuDA*	туда
We'll go there with you.	*mí payḐOM tuDA s taBOY.*	Мы пойдем туда с тобой.
Dr. Ivanov is there too.	*DOKtar ivaNOF TO zhi TAM.*	Доктор Иванов тоже там.
	Mrs. Smith	
Here's our tea.	*VOT násh CHAY.*	Вот наш чай.
It's so nice to meet you here!	*kák pŗiYAtna FSTŖEţiţ vás Z̧ḐEŞ!*	Как приятно встретить вас здесь!
with me	*sa MNOY*	со мной
My husband and children aren't with me, you know.	*ví ZNAyiţi, MUSH i ḐEţi ŋi sa MNOY.*	Вы знаете, муж и дети не со мной.
	Mrs. Ilyin	
Where are they?	*GḐE aní?*	Где они?
	Mrs. Smith	
They are in the hospital.	*aŋí v GOspitaļi.*	Они в госпитале.
	Mr. Ilyin	
too bad	*ZHALka*	жалко
(we) knew	*ZNAļi*	знали
Too bad!	*ZHALka!*	Жалко!
No; we didn't know.	*ŅET; mí ŋi ZNAļi.*	Нет, мы не знали.
	Mr. Ilyin	
Excuse me;	*izv̧iŅIţi;*	Извините;

---

*Not on the record.

I'm going to the hospital.	*yá idú v GOşpitaļ.*	Я иду в госпиталь.
to go *or* come*	*payŢI*	пойти
Would you like to come with me?	*xaŢIţi payŢI sa MNOY?*	Хотите пойти со мной?
	Mrs. Ilyin	
Good; we'll go together.	*xaraSHO; mí payḐOM v MEşţi.*	Хорошо, мы пойдем вместе.

---

*Not on the record.

Before you go through the *Basic Sentences* a second time study the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation

1. Palatal, *ķ*, *ģ*, *x̧*. The palatal sounds *ķ*, *ģ*, *x̧* occur only before the vowels *e* and *i*, and never in any other position. The plain consonants *k*, *g*, *x* never occur before *e* and *i*.

No such rule will hold good for the other consonants. Whether a consonant (other than *k*, *g*, *x*) is plain or palatal does not depend on the sound that comes after it. It depends simply on what word is being spoken. Thus, we have *P̦AŢ* 'five', but *PAT* in *vadaPAT* 'waterfall'.

vagZAL: vagZAli 'station: stations': the *i* has no effect on the *l;*

MAĻchik: MAĻchiķi 'boy: boys': when the *i* is added the *k* becomes palatal *ķ*.

Compare also:

vagZAli 'stations', with plain *l* before *i;*

na vagZAļi 'at the station', with palatal *l* before *i*.

2. The vowel *i* after plain consonants. Remember that Russian *i* after a plain consonant has a special sound; to our ears it sounds queer and muffled. This effect is got by drawing the tongue back, almost as though one were gagging. The muffled effect comes out clearest after *p*, *b*, *v;* for instance, the words *MI* 'we' and *VI* 'you' sound almost as they were *MWI*, *VWI*.

Now carefully and vigorously imitate the Guide or the record.

PRACTICE 1

Unit 3, Record Side 3, after 1st spiral. (78 RPM) **(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 3 after 1st spiral.**

VI	вы	*you*
MI	мы	*we*

BIla	было	*it was*
TI	ты	*you (familiar)*
vaDI	воды	*some water*
SIN	сын	*son*
yiZIK	язык	*language*
zhiNI	жены	*(my) wife's*
VAshi	ваши	*your*
RIba	рыба	*fish*

3. Russian *i*. Remember that Russian *i* at the beginning of a word or after a palatal consonant sounds like the *i* in *machine*, only shorter.

We now give some practice on this sound, contrasting it with the sound of *i* after plain consonants. Listen to the way your Guide (or the speaker on the record) says these sounds. Repeat each word right after him, imitating him as well as you can.

PRACTICE 2

Unit 3, Record Side 3, after 2nd spiral. (78 RPM)

aŅI	они	*they*
vaDI	воды	*some water*
P̧Iva	пиво	*beer*
VI	вы	*you*
YIX	их	*them*
TI	ты	*you (familiar)*
xaŢIţi	хотите	*you want*
MI	мы	*we*
pa anGĻIYsķi	по-английски	*in English*
SIN	сын	*son*

iz̧v̧iNIţi	извините	*excuse (me)*
zhiNI	жены	*(my) wife's*
paftaŖIţi	повторите	*repeat*
yiZIK	язык	*language*
gaŞŢIŋici	гостиницы	*hotels*
uCHIţiļŋici	учительницы	*(woman) teachers*
şiSTRI	сестры	*(my) sister's*

4. Russian *o* and *u*. The Russian *o* resembles our vowel in *four* and the Russian *u* resembles our vowel in *pull*. Still there is a big difference. The way a Russian makes these sounds is especially noticeable if he uses them in speaking English imperfectly. The Russian vowels *o* and *u* are made with rounded lips; this is the main cause of their peculiar sound. English spoken with Russian vowels is hard to understand; Russian spoken with English vowels may be quite unintelligible. Therefore practise carefully on Russian *o* and *u*.

Notice that Russian *o* never occurs unstressed.

Now imitate as well as you can.

PRACTICE 3

Unit 3, Record Side 4, beginning. (78 RPM)

KTO	кто	*who*
VOT	вот	*here it is*
DOCH	дочь	*daughter*
ON	он	*he, it*
TVOY	твой	*your (familiar)*
SKOĻka	сколько	*how much*
STOyit	стоит	*it costs*
RUBĻ	рубль	*rouble*
SUpu	супу	*some soup*
MUSH, MUZH	муж	*husband*

pa RUsᶄi	по-русски	*in Russian*
KUshiƫ	кушать	*to eat*

Now go through the *Basic Sentences* once more individually, and with your book open. As you repeat after your Guide, keep your eyes on the *Aids to Listening* and note in particular the examples of the sounds discussed. Again do not hesitate to ask your Guide to repeat if you are uncertain about any sound.

Finally, go through the *Basic Sentences* at least once again individually. Keep your book closed, listen carefully to your Guide and make sure that your pronunciation satisfies him.

3. Check Yourself

Can you make a clear difference between plain and palatal consonants?

Can you pronounce the Russian vowels?

Are you sure that you make them good and short and never drawl them?

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

As in Section B1 of Unit 2, read the words and expressions in each list and make sure that you understand the meaning of the Russian. Then read the comments which follow each list. When you have finished the *Word Study* ask other members of the group about points which are not clear to you.

A. COMMENT ON THE BASIC SENTENCES

Familiar *you*. Mr. and Mrs. Ilyin in talking to each other use the intimate word *TI* 'you' instead of *VI*. In talking to a near relative or a very intimate friend, Russians use this pronoun *TI*. They also use it in talking to a child or to any non-human being, such as a dog or horse. In talking to two or more such persons or beings, they always use *VI*. You will have occasion to use the word *TI* only if you talk to a child—or if you get very intimate with Russian people, and by the time you do that, you won't need this book any longer.

When one says *TI* one also uses *TVOY* 'your' instead of *VASH*. The verbs, too, are different: *ZDRAstvuy* 'hello' (literally 'be well') instead of *ZDRAstvuyʈi; XOchish* 'you want' instead of *xaƮIʈi; ZNAyish* 'you know' instead of *ZNAyiʈi.*

The word *TVOY* takes the same endings as *MOY.*

v ⱮEşʈi means 'together', but *ⱮEsta* means 'place': *VOT vám ⱮEsta* 'here is a place (or seat) for you'. Hence *v ⱮEşʈi* literally means 'in [the or a] place'. Different languages say things in entirely different ways.

Reflexive ending. We see in the *Basic Sentences* that *paznaKOɱiʈ* means 'to make (someone) acquainted (with someone); to introduce (someone to someone)'. For instance *yá xachú paznaKOɱiʈ vás s mayím BRAtam* 'I want to make you acquainted with (introduce you to) my brother'.

The longer word *paznaKOɱitsa* means 'to get acquainted (with someone); to be introduced (to someone)'. For instance: *yá xachú paznoKOɱitsa s váshim BRAtam* 'I want to get acquainted with (to be introduced to) your brother'.

The syllable *-sa* or *-şa* tacked on to the end of a verb is called the *reflexive ending.* It has many different meanings. For instance:

That is not said (One doesn't say it that way).	*Eta ŋi gavaⱤITsa.*	Это не говорится.
We'll meet him.	*mí yivó FSTⱤEʈim.*	Мы его встретим.
We'll meet (each other) at the station.	*mí FSTⱤEʈimsa na vagZAļi.*	Мы встретимся на вокзале.
I feel like drinking. (the usual way of saying 'I'm thirsty').	*mŋé xóchitsa ƤIƮ.*	Мне хочется пить.
Do you feel like eating? (that is: 'Are you hungry?')	*vám xóchitsa KUshiʈ?*	Вам хочется кушать?

After a vowel the reflexive ending is shorter: *-ş* or *-s:*

Get acquainted with Mr. Ivanov.	*paznaKOɱʈiş s gaspaḑinam ivaNOvam.*	Познакомьтесь с господином Ивановым.
With what are you busying yourself?	*CHEM ví zaŋiMAyiʈiş?*	Чем вы занимаетесь?

New nouns. Here are the Nominative case forms, Singular and Plural, of the new nouns in the *Basic Sentences.*

Masculine:

baŖIS (Boris, man's given name; no Plural)
BRAT—BRAţya (brother—brothers)
chilaV̧EK (person, man; no Plural)
DOktar—daktaRA (doctor—doctors)
GOsp̧itaļ—GOsp̧itaļi (hospital—hospitals)

Notice that the Plural Nominatives *BRAţya* and *daktaRA* have the irregular ending *-a*. The word *BRAT* has a longer stem *braţy-* in the Plural.

Feminine:

ḐEvushka—ḐEvushķi (girl—girls)
p̧ŗiYAţiļŋica—p̧ŗiYAţiļŋici (friend—friends, female)
şiSTRA—ŞOstri (sister—sisters)
uCHIţiļŋica—uCHIţiļŋici (teacher—teachers, female)
V̧Era (Vera, woman's given name; no Plural)

Neuter:

M̧Esta—m̧iSTA (place, seat—places, seats)

B. GENITIVE CASE

Masculine and Neuter nouns.

She is the sister of my friend.	*aNA, şiSTRA mayivó taVAŗishcha.*	Она — сестра моего товарища.
Give me a glass of milk.	*DAYţi mŋé staKAN malaKA.*	Дайте мне стакан молока.

Observe that the words *taVAŗishcha, malaKA* are used like English phrases with the word 'of': 'of my friend', 'of milk'. Observe that these two Russian words have the ending *-a*. This case form is called the *Genitive.*

Masculine nouns (*taVAŗishch*) and Neuter nouns (*malaKO*) have the ending *-a* in the Genitive case form.

Feminine nouns.

He is the brother of my wife.	*ón BRAT mayéy zhiNI.*	Он — брат моей жены.
Give me a glass of water.	*DAYţi mŋé staKAN vaDI.*	Дайте мне стакан воды.

Feminine nouns have the ending *-i* in the Genitive case form.

Plural nouns.

She is the sister of my friends.	*aná şiSTRA mayíx taVAŗishchiy.*	Она — сестра моих товарищей.
She is the teacher of our children.	*aná uCHIţeļŋica náshix ḑiŢEY.*	Она — учительница наших детей.

Plural nouns ending in a palatal consonant (except *y*) have the ending *-ey* in the Genitive case. Unstressed *-ey* is weakened to *-iy*.

There are lots of big houses here.	*Z̧ḐEŞ MNOga baļSHIX daMOF.*	Здесь много больших домов.
There are lots of restaurants there.	*TAM MNOga ŗistaRAnaf.*	Там много ресторанов.
He is a friend of my brothers.	*ON, taVAŗishch mayíx BRAţyif.*	Он — товарищ моих братьев.

Plurals of Masculine nouns ending in a plain consonant or in *y* have the ending *-of* in the Genitive case. The vowel *o* is weakened to *a* (and after *y* to *i*) when unstressed.

I have lots of cigarettes.	*u miŊA MNOga papiROS.*	У меня много папирос.
He knows lots of Russian words.	*ón ZNAyit MNOga RUsķix SLOF.*	Он знает много русских слов.
There are lots of big buildings there.	*TAM MNOga baļSHIX ZDAŋiy.*	Там много больших зданий.

Plurals of Feminine and Neuter nouns ending in a plain consonant or in *y* have no ending in the Genitive case.

She is the teacher of these girls.	*aná uCHIţiļŋica éţix ḐEvushik.*	Она — учительница этих девушек.
I have lots of letters.	*u miŊA MNOga PIşim.*	У меня много писем.

When a word has no ending added (as in these Genitive plural forms), a stem ending in two consonants inserts a vowel between them.

This holds true of all consonant combinations except a very few, such as *st:* the Genitive Plural of *M̧Esta* is *M̧EST.*

The hotel is to the left of the station.	*gaŞTIŋica na ĻEva at vagZAla.*	Гостиница налево от вокзала.
My brother has the letter ('The letter is with my brother').	[illegible] *u mayivó BRAta.*	Письмо у моего брата.

The Genitive case form is used after the prepositions *OT* (unstressed: *at*) and *U*.

Give me some (of the) milk.	*DAYţi mŋé malaKA.*	Дайте мне молока.

The Genitive form means *part of something*, as against the whole of it; compare:

Give me the milk.	*DAYţi mŋé malaKO.*	Дайте мне молоко.
There is no milk.	*malaKA ŊET.*	Молока нет.

My children aren't here.	*mayíx ḑiŢEY Z̧ḐEŞ ŊET.*	Моих детей здесь нет.
I have no matches.	*u ɱiŊA ŊET SP̧Ichik.*	У меня нет спичек.

The Genitive denotes something of which there *isn't any* or something which *is not* in a place.

I don't drink milk.	*yá ŋi P̧YU malaKA.*	Я не пью молока.
I don't know this word.	*yá ŋi ZNAyu étava SLOva.*	Я не знаю этого слова.
I don't know these Russian words.	*yá ŋi ZNAyu éţix RUsķix SLOF.*	Я не знаю этих русских слов.

The Genitive denotes something to which one *does not do* something or other.

How many children have you?	*SKOĻka u VAS ḑiŢEY?*	Сколько у вас детей?
He has lots of cigarettes.	*u ŋiVO MNOga papiROS.*	У него много папирос.
I have few cigarettes.	*u ɱiŊA MAla papiROS.*	У меня мало папирос.
There is little water here.	*Z̧ḐEŞ MAla vaDI.*	Здесь мало воды.

The Genitive is used after words of *quantity: SKOĻka* (how many, how much), *MAla* (few, little), *MNOga* (many, much).

There is no big hospital here.	*Z̧ḐEŞ ŊET baļSHOva GOspitaļa.*	Здесь нет большего госпиталя.
There is no good doctor there.	*TAM ŊET xaROshiva DOKtara.*	Там нет хорошего доктора.
I don't understand this Russian word.	*yá ŋi paŋiMAyu étava RUskava SLOva.*	Я не понимаю этого русского слова.

The Genitive of adjectives in the Masculine and Neuter has the ending *-óva;* the *o* has the usual weakening when unstressed.

She is my brother's wife.	*aŋá zhiNA mayivó BRAta.*	Она — жена моего брата.
I haven't even one rouble.	*u ɱiŊA ŊET ŋi adnaVO ruBĻA.*	У мена нет ни одного рубля.
There isn't even one seat here.	*Z̧ḐEŞ ŊET ŋi adnaVO M̧Esta.*	Здесь нет ни одного места.

The special adjectives *MOY* and *aḐIN* have the ending *-avó* in the Masculine and Neuter Genitive.

There's no big hotel here.	*Z̦ḐEŞ ŅET baļSHOY gaŞŢIŋici.*	Здесь нет большой гостиницы.
There's not even one good hotel here.	*Z̦ḐEŞ ŅET ŋi aDNOY xaROshiy gaŞŢIŋici.*	Здесь нет ни одной хорошей гостиницы.
There's no toilet there.	*tám ŅET uBORnay.*	Там нет уборной.

The Genitive of adjectives in the Feminine has the ending *-oy* (with the usual weakening when unstressed). Note that *uBORnaya* is an adjective, not a noun.

He is my sister's husband.	*ón MUSH mayéy şiSTRI.*	Он муж моей сестры.

The special adjective *MOY* has the ending *-éy* in the Genitive Feminine.

There are no big hotels here.	*Z̦ḐEŞ ŅET baļSHIX gaŞŢIŋic.*	Здесь нет больших гостиниц.
There are no good restaurants here.	*Z̦ḐEŞ ŅET xaROshix ŗistaRAnaf.*	Здесь нет хороших ресторанов.
She is a friend of my daughters.	*aná p̧ŗiYAţiļŋica mayíx dachiŖEY.*	Она приятельница моих дочерей.
There are lots of hard words here.	*Z̦ḐEŞ MNOga TRUdnax SLOF.*	Здесь много трудных слов.

The Genitive Plural form of adjectives has the ending *-ix*, weakened to *-ax* when unstressed after a plain consonant (other than *c, sh, zh*).

I don't understand these words.	*yá ŋi paŋiMAyu éţix SLOF.*	Я не понимаю этих слов.

The Genitive Plural form of the special adjective *Etat* is *Eţix* (plural stem *eţ-*).

I have two roubles.	*u m̧iŅA DVA ruBĻA.*	У меня два рубля.
Here are two letters!	*VOT DVA p̧işMA!*	Вот два письма!
He has two sisters.	*u ŋiVO DV̧E şiSTRI.*	У него две сестры.
Here are three places!	*VOT TŖI M̧Esta!*	Вот три места!
There are four big hotels over there.	*TAM chiTIŗi baļSHIX gaŞŢIŋici.*	Там четыре больших гостиницы.
These two letters are from my brother.	*éţi DVA p̧işMA at mayivó BRAta.*	Эти два письма от моего брата.

After the Nominative forms of the numbers 2, 3, 4 a noun is in the Genitive Singular case form, and an adjective in the Genitive Plural case form. An adjective before the number is Nominative Plural.

The Nominative forms of the number 2 are Masculine and Neuter *DVA*, but Feminine *DỴE*.

I haven't two roubles.	*u ɱiŅA ŅET DVUX ruBĻEY.*	У меня нет двух рублей.
There aren't three big hotels here.	*Z̧ḐEŞ ŅET TŖOX baļSHIX gaŞŢIŋic.*	Здесь нет трех больших гостиниц.
We haven't got those four roubles.	*u NAS ŅET éţix chitiŖOX ruBĻEY.*	У нас нет этих четырех рублей.

The Genitive forms of the numbers 2, 3, 4 are *DVUX*, *TŖOX*, *chitiŖOX*. With these numbers, adjectives and nouns are in the Genitive Plural.

He has five roubles.	*u ŋiVO P̧AŢ ruBĻEY.*	У него пять рублей.
She has ten kopeks.	*u ŋiYO ḐEşiţ kaP̧Eyik.*	У нее десять копеек.
There are eight big hospitals there.	*TAM VOşiɱ baļSHIX GOspitaļiy.*	Там восемь больших госпиталей.
Here are your ten roubles!	*VOT váshi ḐEşiţ ruBĻEY!*	Вот ваши десять рублей!

After the Nominative forms of 5 and higher numbers, nouns and adjectives are in the Genitive Plural form. An adjective before the number is Nominative Plural.

He hasn't those five roubles.	*u ŋiVO ŅET éţix piŢI ruBĻEY.*	У него нет этих пяти рублей.
She hasn't ten kopeks.	*u ŋiYO ŅET ḑişiŢI kaP̧Eyik.*	У нее нет десяти копеек.
There aren't eight big hospitals there.	*TAM ŅET vaşM̧I baļSHIX GOspitaļiy.*	Там нет восьми больших госпиталей.

With the Genitive forms of 5 and higher numbers, nouns and adjectives are in the Genitive Plural form.

The Genitive forms of the numbers from 5 to 10 have the ending *-i*. The second vowel in the Nominative *VOşiɱ* is an inserted vowel (and therefore will be absent in the Genitive): *piŢI*, *shiŞŢI*, *şiM̧I*, *vaşM̧I*, *ḑiyiŢI*, *ḑişiŢI*. Note the weakening of unstressed vowels.

Who has the letter?	*pişMO u kaVO?*	Письмо у кого?
I have the letter.	*pişMO u ɱiŅA.*	Письмо у меня.
We have the letter.	*pişMO u NAS.*	Письмо у нас.
Have you the letter?	*pişMO u VAS?*	Письмо у вас?

He isn't there.	*yiVO Z̧ḐEŞ ŊET.*	Его здесь нет.
It isn't here.	*yiVO Z̧ḐEŞ ŊET.*	Его здесь нет.
She isn't here.	*yiYO Z̧ḐEŞ ŊET.*	Ее здесь нет.
They aren't here.	*YIX Z̧ḐEŞ ŊET.*	Их здесь нет.
That's nothing.	*Eta ŋi chiVO.*	Это ничего.
They don't understand me.	*aŋí m̧iŋá ŋi paŋiMAyut.*	Они меня не понимают.
He doesn't understand us.	*ón nás ŋi paŋiMAyit.*	Он нас не понимает.
I don't understand you.	*yá vás ŋi paŋiMAyu.*	Я вас не понимаю.
I don't understand him.	*yá yivó ŋi paŋiMAyu.*	Я его не понимаю.
I don't understand her.	*yá yiyó ŋi paŋiMAyu.*	Я ее не понимаю.
I don't understand them.	*yá yíx ŋi paŋiMAyu.*	Я их не понимаю.

The Genitive forms of the pronouns are as follows:

	Nominative	Genitive
I	*YA*	*m̧iŊA*
we	*MI*	*NAS*
you	*VI*	*VAS*
he (it)	*ON*	*yiVO*
it	*aNO*	*yiVO*

	Nominative	Genitive
she (it)	*aNA*	*yiYO*
they	*aŊI*	*YIX*
who	*KTO*	*kaVO*
what	*SHTO*	*chiVO*
you (familiar)	*TI*	*ţiB̧A*

He has five roubles.	*u ŋiVO P̧AŢ ruBĻEY.*	У него пять рублей.
She has three roubles.	*u ŋiYO TŖI ruBĻA.*	У нее три рубля.
Here's a letter from them.	*VOT p̧işMO at ŊIX!*	Вот письмо от них!

The Genitive forms *yiVO*, *yiYO*, *YIX* have *ŋ* instead of *y* after a preposition (*at*, *u*); an exception to this appears in the next sentences.

She is his sister.	*aNA yivó şiSTRA.*	Она его сестра.
He is her brother.	*ON yiyó BRAT.*	Он ее брат.
Here's their house!	*VOT yíx DOM!*	Вот их дом!

Here's a letter from his brother!	*VOT pişMO at yivó BRAta!*	Вот письмо от его брата!
Here's a letter from her brother!	*VOT pişMO at yiyó BRAta!*	Вот письмо от ее брата!
Here's a letter from their son!	*VOT pişMO at yíx SIna!*	Вот письмо от их сына!

There are no adjectives for 'his, her, its, their' to match the adjectives *MOY*, *NASH*, *VASH*. For 'his, her, its, their' one uses the Genitive forms *yiVO*, *yiYO*, *YIX*.

In this use these Genitive forms keep their initial *y* after a preposition.

Irregular Genitive forms.

Give me a glass of tea.	*DAYţi mŋe staKAN CHAyu (CHAya).*	Дайте мне стакан чаю (чая).
There's no sugar here.	*Z̧ḐEŞ ŊET SAxaru (SAxara).*	Здесь нет сахару (сахара).
You don't eat soup?	*ví ŋi KUshiyiţi SUpu (SUpa)?*	Вы не кушаете супу (супа)?

Some Masculine nouns have a second Genitive form with the ending *-u* and use it more commonly than the regular form with *-a*.

I don't know these gentlemen.	*yá ŋi ZNAyu éţix gaSPOT.*	Я не знаю этих господ.
I don't know her sons.	*yá ŋi ZNAyu yiyó sanaV̧EY.*	Я не знаю ее сыновей.
We don't know their husbands.	*mí ŋi ZNAyim yíx muZHEY.*	Мы не знаем их мужей.

Some Masculine nouns are irregular in the Genitive Plural, taking no ending. The vowel *e* in *muZHEY*, *sanaV̧EY* is an inserted vowel (the plural stems are *muzhy-*, *sanay̧y-*).

I don't drink coffee	*yá ŋi P̧YU KOf̧i.*	Я не пью кофе.

Some nouns, mostly of irregular shape, such as *KOf̧i* (Masculine), do not change for different case forms.

Read aloud several times all the examples given in this section on *Word Study*. Then cover the English and see if you know the meaning of every item. Repeat this operation until you are sure that you know every expression. As a final test, cover the Russian and see if you can say the Russian expression simply by looking at the English.

Before you go on to the next section, turn back to the *Basic Sentences* and look for examples of the things that have just been explained to you.

2. Covering English and Russian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Before you leave the *Word Study*, cover the English equivalents in each list and make sure that you know the meaning of every Russian expression. Then cover the Russian and see if you can say each Russian expression when you are looking only at the English.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

Review the first half of the *Basic Sentences*. Repeat individually with books closed. Work always to perfect your pronunciation; keep the meaning in mind; and observe examples of the points in *Word Study* you have just covered.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*. Follow the procedure suggested above.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Basic Sentences* in Section A, cover the English and test yourself by reading the Russian, just as you did in Section C of the previous unit. If you are not sure about the meaning of any words or phrases, when you have finished reading the *Basic Sentences* aloud, uncover the English and look up their meaning. Keep this up until you know all the meanings completely.

What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

In the following exercise you have certain situations presented for which you are to choose the correct expression in Russian. Read the situation, repeat aloud all the solutions for each situation, and then indicate for the next class meeting the answer which you consider the most appropriate.

1. You ask Mr. Ivanov whether he wants to have a glass of beer. You say:
   a. *tí XOchish stakán ƤIva?*
   b. *ví xaŢIţi KUshiţ'*
   c. *ví xaŢIţi stakán ƤIva?*

2. You want him to go into the restaurant that is right close by. You say:
   a. *payḐOM v étu gaŞŢIɳicu.*
   b. *payḐOM na vagZAL.*
   c. *payḐOM v état ŗistaRAN.*

3. You want to know whether Mr. Ivanov speaks English. You say:

a. *ví paɲiMAyiţi ɱiɲá?*
b. *ví gavaŖIţi pa anGĻIYsķi?*
c. *kák skaZAŢ éta pa anGĻIYsķi?*

4. You want to know how many children he has. You say:

a. *SKOĻka u vás dachiŖEY?*
b. *SKOĻka u vás ḑiŢEY?*
c. *SKOĻka u vás sanaV̦EY?*

5. He has two sons and two daughters. He says:

a. *u ɱiŅA TŖI SIna i DV̦E DOchiŗi.*
b *u ɱiŅA DVA SIna i TŖI DOchiŗi.*
c. *u ɱiŅA DVA SIna i DV̦E DOchiŗi.*

6. You are going to take a street car to the hotel. You want Mr. Ivanov to go with you. You say:

a. *ví iḐOţi sa mnóy?*
b. *ví YEḑiţi sa mnóy?*
c. *kuDA ví YEḑiţi?*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for Section D of Unit 2. Call on different students (not in any fixed order) to give their answers in Russian for the exercise *What Would You Say?* in Section C3 of this unit. Encourage them to give the answers directly and not from the books, if possible. Then check on the students' knowledge of the meaning in English of the different expressions in Russian.

Go back to the last exercises in the preceding section. The Leader will call for your answers in Russian for the exercises. If you can, give the correct answers without reading from the book. Other members of the group will criticize the choice made if they disagree. The Leader will then call for the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercises.

2. Word Study Check-Up

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for this part of Section D of Unit 2. Call on various students for the correct Russian for the English equivalents of the expressions given in the *Word Study.* Make sure that all the students have learned the material thoroughly.

Go back to the *Word Study* in Section B. The Leader will ask different members of the group to give the correct Russian for the English equivalents of the expressions you went over in the *Word Study*. Be sure you are able to give the correct form without having to read it from the book. If you have any difficulty, review the *Word Study* thoroughly.

3. Listening In

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for *Listening In* in Section D3 of Unit 2. Check up on meaning at the end of each conversation on the first time through; then, after the second time through, assign parts and have the students read the conversations.

Keep your book closed while the Guide reads the following conversations, or while they are played on the phonograph, and repeat the Russian immediately after hearing it. At the end of each conversation, check up on the meaning of any word or phrase about which you are in doubt, either by asking some other member of the group or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows.

Go through the conversations again, with your books open, being sure to imitate carefully and to keep in mind the meaning of everything you are saying. Then take turns speaking the parts. Make the conversations real. Say your part as though you meant it.

1. *Basil and Boris see a couple of girls.*

Unit 3, Record Side 4, after 1st spiral. (78 RPM)

Basil: *ZDRAstvuy baŖIS!*
KAK tí?
Boris: *xaraSHO.*
mŋé skaZAļi shtó tvóy BRAT ushól v ARm̧iyu.
GḐE ón?
Basil: *mí ŋi ZNAyim GḐE ón.*
Boris: *éta Ochiŋ ŋi p̧riYAtna.*
Basil: *KTO éta ḐEvushka?*

(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 3, after 2nd spiral.

Boris: *éta ŋé ḐEvushka.*
éta uCHIţiļŋica.
Basil: *yá xachú s ŊEY paznaKOm̧itsa.*
tí ZNAyish yiyó?
Boris: *aNA p̧riYAţiļŋica maYEY şiSTRI.*
yá yiyó ŋi ZNAyu, i ŋi xaCHU yiyó ZNAŢ.
vót mayá şiSTRA!
payḐOM!

(repeats:) *VOT mayá şiSTRA!*
payḐOM!
Basil: *xaraSHO.*
u ţib̧á YEŞŢ pap̧iROsa?
Boris: *ŅET.*

Basil: *ti XOchish ɱiɲá padaZHDAŢ?*
Boris: *a ti XOchish P̧Iva?*
na PRAva YEŞŢ ŗistaRAN.
Basil: *xaraSHO.*
da sv̧iDAɲya.

2. *Basil goes up to the girls.*

Unit 3, Record Side 4, after 2nd spiral. (78 RPM)

Basil: *izv̧iŅIţi.*
u vás YEŞŢ pap̧iROsa?
Vera: *DA.*
VOT pap̧iROsa.
a u vás YEŞŢ SP̧ICHka?
Basil: *DA, spaŞIba.*
vi xaţiţi KOf̧i?
Vera: *ŅET, spaŞIba*

Teacher: *spaŞIba.*
kuDA vi iḐOţi?
Basil: *v ŗistaRAN.*
TAM vásh BRAT baŖIS.
Teacher: *YA xachú s ŅIM paznaKOɱitsa.*
mɲé skaZAļi shtó ón paɲiMAyit pa anGĻIYsķi.
V̧Era, payḐOM s ɲím.
Vera: *xaraSHO.*
payḐOM.

3. *Anna and Marya gossip.*

Unit 3, Record Side 4, after 3rd spiral. (78 RPM)

Anna: *KTO état malaDOY chilaV̧EK, MAŗya?*
Marya: *éta STARshiy SIN ivaNOva.*
Anna: *vi yivó ZNAyiţi?*

Marya: *DA.*
ón raBOtayit s NAɱi v gaŞŢIɲici.
Anna: *CHEM ón zaɲiMAyitsa?*

Marya: *yá ŋi ZNAyu.*
ón gavaŖIT pa anGĻIYsķi, a yivó şiSTRA uCHIţiļŋica anGĻIYskava yiziKA.
yá YIX ŋi ZNAyu.
ivaNOF ŋi XOchit yíx s NAŋi paznaKOŋiţ.
mí raBOtayim v yivó gaŞŢIŋici.

Anna: *ZHALka.*

Marya: *DA, ZHALka.*
AX, VOT BRAT mayéy pŗiYAţiļŋici!

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Russian of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Just as you did in Section E of Unit 2, go back to the *Basic Sentences* of this unit, cover up the Russian and test yourself to see how many words and phrases you can say in Russian when you are looking only at the English.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

To the Group Leader: As in Unit II, go around the class calling on various students and asking them: "*KAK skaZAŢ pa RUsķi?*" for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences*, with their books closed. If any student does not answer in a reasonable time, do not allow hemming and hawing; call on another student. Make sure that every student speaks loud enough so that all can hear. Do not allow any mumbling. Any student who cannot give satisfactory answers needs more review of the *Basic Sentences.*

As you did in Unit 2, supply the Russian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences*, when the Leader calls on you. Give your answers in a clear, loud voice, so that everyone can hear you.

3. Conversation

To the Group Leader: Follow the same procedure as for Section E3 of Unit 2. Have the students converse, first following closely the model of the conversations outlined below and then changing the situation slightly.

As you did in the Conversation in Section E3 of Unit 2, first go through the conversations outlined below, taking turns. As soon as you can speak the parts smoothly, pass to acting them out in front of the group; keep this up until you can do it easily and smoothly.

1. Two men meet and greet each other. A asks B if he has a match. B says he has, but that he hasn't any cigarettes. A offers him one. B tells A he'd like to meet his sister. A says that he was going to the hospital to meet her. B asks in surprise, if she is there? A says she works there. B says he had heard that she was a teacher. A says no, that was his sister Anna. Vera works in the hospital. A says Anna is an English teacher. B says let's get going.

2. Two girls go into a restaurant and order tea and coffee. Q asks R who the young girl over there is. R says she's a friend of her brother. She's the daughter of Mr. Ilyin. Q says she heard his daughter was Doctor Ivanov's wife. R says yes, her brother met her at the hospital. Q asks where her brother is, and she says that he went away to the army. R says it's too bad, she wanted to meet him. Q calls the waitress and asks how much the tea is. She says tea is eight kopeks and coffee is seven. They pay and go.

3. Marya and Alexander are out together. He asks her if she'd like something to drink. She accepts. They order beer. She sees a young man in the restaurant and asks Alexander if he knows him. He says it's Boris Ivanov. She asks what he does for a living. He says that he works with him. She says she has a girl friend who knows him and that she'd like to meet him.

4. Alexander introduces Boris and Marya. He says he's glad to meet her, she says hello and adds that she has heard that he speaks English. He says he does and asks if she does too. She does, but Alexander puts in that he doesn't. Boris asks them if they'd like beer. They both would; so he calls the waitress. Alexander says he'd like some bread and soup too. Boris says he'd like some meat and potatoes and asks Marya if she would like something to eat. She says no thanks. Marya asks the boys to give her a cigarette. Alexander offers her one but he hasn't a match. Boris brings one out and Marya thanks them.

5. Alexander tells Boris that he heard his sister was in the hospital. He says that she is. Marya says that's very unfortunate. Boris says that Doctor Petrov works at the hospital. Alexander says that's good, he knows him. Marya asks Boris how his sister is getting along, and he says she's fine; he is going (riding) to meet her. Alexander and Marya tell Boris that they'd like to wait for him. He says fine and calls the waitress and asks her what the bill is. She says it's three rubles ten. They pay and go.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E. If necessary to make the conversations smoother and more successful, review parts 1 and 2 of Section E.

FINDER LIST

This *Finder List* has all the new words and expressions used in this unit. The conventional spelling is enclosed in parentheses after each entry. These as well as those of the previous two units, are words and expressions which by this time you should know quite well.

anGĻIYsķiy **(английский)** English;
  pa anGĻIYsķi **(по-английски)** in English

baŖIS **(Борис)** Boris (man's given name)
BRAT **(брат)** brother; *BRAţya* **(братья)** brothers

CHEM **(чем)** with what
chilaYEK **(человек)** person

ḐEvushka **(девушка)** girl
DOktar **(доктор)** doctor; *daktaRA* **(доктора)** doctors

FSTŖEţim **(встретим)** we'll meet (someone);
  FSTŖEţimsa **(встретимся)** we'll meet each other

GOspitaļ **(госпиталь)** hospital; *v GOspitaļi* in the hospital
gaŞŢIŋica: v gaŞŢIŋici in the hotel
graZHDANka: graZHDANku Mrs., Miss

MAla **(мало)** few, little
ⱮEsta **(место)** place, seat; *ɱiSTA* **(места)** places, seats
  v ⱮEşţi in a place; together

MNOga **(много)** many, much
MNOY **(мной)** me: *sa MNOY* **(со мной)** with me

NAM **(нам)** to us; *s NAɱi* **(с нами)** with us
ŊE **(не)** not (stressed form of *ŋi*)
ŊEY, ŊIM, ŊIɱi, see *YEY, YIM, YIɱi*
ŊI **(ни)** not even

Ochiŋ **(очень)** very

padaZHDAŢ **(подождать)** to wait for
paŋiMAyit **(понимает)** understands
payḐOM **(пойдем)** we'll go; let's go; *payḐOMţi* **(пойдемте)** let's all go
payŢI **(пойти)** to go *or* come
paznaKOɱiţ **(познакомить)** to make acquainted, to introduce; *paznaKOɱitsa* **(познакомиться)** to get acquainted, to be introduced
P̧IŢ **(пить)** to drink
pŗiYAţiļŋica **(приятельница)** friend (female)
pŗiYAtna **(приятно)** pleasant

raBOtayit **(работает)** he (she, it) works;
  raBOtayim **(работаем)** we work
  raBOtayut **(работают)** they work

s, sa **(с, со)** with
şiSTRA **(сестра)** sister; *ŞOstri* **(сестры)** sisters
StaKAN **(стакан)** glass

TI **(ты)** you (familiar, to one person);
  tiþ4 **(тебя)** Genitive; *s taBOY* **(с тобой)** with you
tuDA **(туда)** to that place, there
TVOY **(твой)** your (familiar)

uCHIţiļŋica **(учительница)** teacher (female)
uSHOL **(ушел)** he went away, he has gone away

VAM **(вам)** to you; *s VAŋi* **(с вами)** with you

V̧Era **(Вера)** Vera (woman's given name)

xaŢIM **(хотим)** we want
  XOchish **(хочешь)** you want (familiar, to one person)
  XOchit **(хочет)** he (she, it) wants

YEY **(ей)** to her; *s ƝEY* **(с ней)** with her
YIM **(им)** to them; him; *s ƝIM* **(с ним)** with him
YIŋi **(ими)** them; *s ƝIŋi* **(с ними)** with them

zaŋiMAyitsa **(занимается)** he (she, it) is occupied, busies himself
ZDRAstvuy **(здравствуй)** hello! (familiar)
ZHALka **(жалко)** too bad!
ZNAļi **(знали)** they knew, you knew, we knew
  ZNAŢ **(знать)** to know
  ZNAyu **(знаю)** I know
  ZNAyim **(знаем)** we know

UNIT 4

WHERE ARE YOU FROM?

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

To the Group Leader: From this point on you will need special instructions only when new sections or procedures are introduced in the learning units. With other sections, simply follow the procedures which have been recommended in the first three units and the instructions provided for the group at the beginning of the sections.

Go through the *Basic Sentences* in unison. Then work on the *Hints on Pronunciation* and after that go through the *Basic Sentences* at least twice more individually.

1. Basic Sentences

Alexander and Boris talk about people and places.

Unit 4, Record Side 1, beginning. (78 RPM)

(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 4, beginning.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
	Alexander	
(they) are traveling	*YEdut*	едут
to America	*v aM̧Eŗiku*	в Америку
My sisters are going to America.	*mayí ŞOstri YEdut v aM̧Eŗiku.*	Мои сестры едут в Америку.
	Boris	
(they) know	*ZNAyut*	знают
Do they know John Smith?	*aņí ZNAyut iVAna SM̧Ita?*	Они знают Ивана Смита?
from *or* out of	*IZ*	из
(of) friends	*druZ̧EY*	друзей
He's a friend of mine.	*ón aḑín iz mayíx druZ̧EY.*	Он один из моих друзей.

	Alexander	
never	*ŋi kaGDA*	никогда
so ('that')	*Etava*	этого
(they) said	*gavaŖIļi*	говорили
They never said so ('They never told me that').	*aŋí mŋé Etava ŋi kaGDA ŋi gavaŖIļi.*	Они мне этого никогда не говорили.
	Boris	
(an) American (man)	*am̧iŗiKAŋic*	американец
He's an American.	*ON am̧iŗiKAŋic.*	Он американец.
not long ago	*ŋi DAvna*	недавно
(he) arrived, (he) came	*p̧ŗiYExal*	приехал
He came from America not long ago.	*ón ŋi DAvna p̧ŗiYExal iz aM̧Eŗiķi.*	Он недавно приехал из Америки.
	Alexander	
friend	*DRUK, DRUG*	друг
(he) does	*ḐElayit*	делает
What does your friend do?	*shtó vásh DRUK ḐElayit?*	Что ваш друг делает?
	Boris	
(we) work	*raBOtayim*	работаем
We work together in the hotel.	*mí raBOtayim v M̧Eşţi v gaŞŢIŋici.*	Мы работаем вместе в гостинице.
waiter	*af̧iCYANT*	официант
He's a waiter too.	*ON TO zhi af̧iCYANT.*	Он тоже официант.
	Alexander	
Does he speak Russian?	*ón gavaŖIT pa RUsķi?*	Он говорит по-русски?

	Boris	
a little	*ŋi MNOga.*	немного
He speaks (it), but (only) a little.	*ón gavaŖIT, nó ŋi MNOga.*	Он говорит, но немного.
	Alexander	
(she) told	*skaZAļa*	сказала
now	*ţiPEŖ*	теперь
in American schools	*v amiŗiKANsķix SHKOlax*	в американских школах
(they) study	*izuCHAyut*	изучают
(the) Russian language	*RUsķiy yiZIK*	русский язык
My sister told me that now they study (the) Russian (language) in American schools.	*mayá şiSTRA mŋé skaZAla shtó v amiŗiKANsķix SHKOlax ţipéŗ izuCHAyut RUsķiy yiZIK.*	Моя сестра мне сказала, что в американских школах теперь изучают русский язык.

Unit 4, Record Side 2, beginning. (78 RPM)

	Boris	
of course	*kaŅEchna, kaŅEshna*	конечно
You know, of course, that I'm learning English too.	*ví kaŋéchna ZNAyiţi shtó yá TO zhi izuCHAyu anGĻIYsķiy yiZIK.*	Вы конечно знаете, что я тоже изучаю английский язык.
John and I ('we with John')	*MI s iVAnam*	мы с Иваном
(we) speak	*gavaŖIM*	говорим
John and I speak English in the hotel.	*MI s iVAnom gavaŗím pa anGĻIYsķi v gaŞŢIŋici.*	Мы с Иваном говорим по-английски в гостинице.
good	*xaROshiy*	хороший
John's a good guy.	*iVAN, Ochiŋ xaROshiy chilaV̦EK.*	Иван очень хороший человек.

	Alexander	
(it) would be nice	*xaraSHO bíla bi*	хорошо было бы
It certainly would be nice to know English.	*AX, kák xaraSHO bíla bi ZNAŢ anGĻIYsķiy yiZIK.*	Ах, как хорошо было бы знать английский язык.
younger (feminine)	*MLATshiya*	младшая
(they) speak	*gavaŖAT*	говорят
My younger sister and my brother speak English.	*mayá MLATshiya şiSTRA i móy BRAT gavaŖAT pa anGĻIYsķi.*	Моя младшая сестра и мой брат говорят по-английски.
	Boris	
Where are they?	*GḐE aņí?*	Где они?
	Alexander	
in Moscow*	*v maSKV̦E*	в Москве
They're in Moscow.	*aŅI v maSKV̦E.*	Они в Москве.
	Boris	
(they) do	*ḐElayut*	делают
What do they do there?	*SHTO aņí tam ḐElayut?*	Что они там делают?
	Alexander	
in school	*f SHKOļi*	в школе
My sister is in school; (but) [my] brother is a doctor.	*mayá şiSTRA f SHKOļi; a BRAT DOktar.*	Моя сестра в школе, а брат доктор.
	Boris	
(you) are traveling	*YEḑiţi*	едете
Where are you going?	*kuDA ví YEḑiţi?*	Куда вы едете?
	Alexander	
to Moscow	*v maSK*[illegible]	в Москву
I'm going to Moscow.	*yá YEdu* [illegible]	Я еду в Москву.

---

*Not on the record.

	Boris	
in America*	*v aⱮEŗiķi*	в Америке
were	*BIļi*	были
Have you [ever] been to America?	*vi BIļi v aⱮEŗiķi?*	Вы были в Америке?
	Alexander	
No, never.	*ŅET, ņi kaGDA.*	Нет, никогда.
	Boris	
to take a trip	*paYExaţ*	поехать
there (to that place)	*tuDA*	туда
after the war	*POşļi vayNI*	после войны
I want to go there after the war.	*yá xachú tuDA paYExaţ POşļi vayNI.*	Я хочу туда поехать после войны.
	Alexander	
(it) will be	*BUḑit*	будет
Yes, that will be nice.	*DA. éta búḑit Ochiņ pŗiYAtna.*	Да, это будет очень приятно.

Unit 4, Record Side 3, beginning. (78 RPM)

	Boris	
mother	*MAŢ*	мать
many	*MNOga*	много
times	*RAZ*	раз
(she) was	*biLA*	была
My mother's been to America often.	*mayá MAŢ mnóga RAZ biLA v aⱮEŗiķi.*	Моя мать много раз была в Америке.

---

*Not on the record.

father	*aŢEC*	отец
Are your father and mother in Moscow?	*váshi aŢEC i MAŢ v maSKY̦E?*	Ваши отец и мать в Москве?
	Alexander	
(they) live	*zhiVUT*	живут
(they) used to live	*ZHIļi*	жили
when	*kaGDA*	когда
No, they live here now, but they used to live in Moscow when I was a little boy.	*N̦ET, ţiP̦EŖ aņí zhiVUT Z̦D̦EŞ, nó aņí ZHIļi v maSKY̦E kaGDA yá bil MAļiņķiy MAĻchik.**	Нет, теперь они живут здесь, но они жили в Москве когда я был маленький мальчик.

---

*Not the usual expression. Usually. *kaGDA yá bil MAĻchikam.*

Before you go through the Basic Sentences a second time, study the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation

1. Russian *r*.

We recall that Russian *r* is very different from American *r*. The Russian *r* is made by the tip of the tongue trilling (vibrating, giving a couple of rapid taps) against the bulge of the palate that is just above and behind the upper gums. Our telephone operators sometimes make this kind of an *r* in the word 'thr-r-ree'.

Now listen to the Guide or to the record.

PRACTICE 1

Unit 4, Record Side 3, after 1st spiral. (78 RPM) **(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 4, after 1st spiral.**

BRAT	брат	*brother*
karTOshķi	картошки	*some potato*
na PRAva	направо	*to the right*

pa RUsķi	по-русски	*in Russian*
graZHDANka	гражданка	*citizen* (*female*)
RUBĻ	рубль	*rouble*
uBORnaya	уборная	*toilet*
raBOtaţ	работать	*to work*

2. Russian *l*.

We recall that Russian *l* sounds somewhat like the English *l* in words like *well, dull*. In fact, it has an even more hollow sound, because the Russian pulls down the middle part of the tongue, the part that is back of the tip. Even when it comes at the beginning of a word, the Russian *l* always has this hollow sound. The Russian *l* never has the clearer *l*-sound that we have in English *l* at the beginning of a word like *leaf*.

Listen to the Guide or to the speaker on the record and try to repeat right after him.

PRACTICE 2

Unit 4, Record Side 3, after 2nd spiral. (78 RPM)

BIL	был	*he was*
MLATshiy	младший	*younger*
LUCHshiy	лучший	*better*
uSHOL	ушел	*he went away*
skaZAla	сказала	*she said*
LOshka	ложка	*spoon*
MAsla	масло	*butter*
ḐElayit	делает	*he does*
LAMpa	лампа	*lamp*

3. Russian *x*.

We recall that Russian *x* sounds like a close, breathy *h*. One gets this effect by somewhat raising the back of the tongue.

Listen to the Guide or to the record and imitate.

PRACTICE 3

Unit 4, Record Side 3, after 3rd spiral. (78 RPM)

AX	ах	*Oh!*
xaraSHO	хорошо	*good*
YExaţ	ехать	*to ride*
v mayíx SHKOlax	в моих школах	*in my schools*
XOchit	хочет	*he wants*
XĻEP, XĻEB	хлеб	*bread*

4. Russian final *x*.

When Russian *x* comes at the end of a word, and the next word begins with certain consonants (especially *b*, *d*, *g*), the Russian *x* sometimes has a weaker sound.

Listen and imitate.

PRACTICE 4

Unit 4, Record 3, after 4th spiral. (78 RPM)

aḐIN iz maYIX druZ̧EY	один из моих друзей	*one of my friends*
aḐIN iz maYIX ḑiŢEY	один из моих детей	*one of my children*
yá ZNAyu anGĻIYsķix daktaROF.	Я знаю английских докторов.	*I know the English doctors.*
P̧AŢ RUsķix baļNIX	пять русских больных	*five Russian patients*

3. Check Yourself

Are you taking every opportunity to practice your Russian by talking with other members of the group or with Russian speaking people whom you may meet?

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

Work through the following as recommended in the previous units.

A. COMMENT ON THE BASIC SENTENCES

New nouns. Here are the new nouns that come in this Unit. For each one we give the Nominative Singular (N.S.), the Genitive Singular (G.S.), the Nominative Plural (N.P.), and the Genitive Plural (G.P.).

	N.S.	G.S.	N.P.	G.P.
		Masculine:		
waiter	*aƒiCYANT*	*aƒiCYANta*	*aƒiCYANti*	*aƒiCYANtaƒ*
American (male)	*aɱiŗiKAŋic*	*aɱiŗiKANca*	*aɱiŗiKANci*	*aɱiŗiKANciƒ*
father	*aŢEC*	*atCA*	*atCI*	*atCOF*
friend (male)	*DRUK, DRUG*	*DRUga*	*druȤYA*	*druȤEY*
time	*RAS, RAZ*	*RAza*	*RAzi*	*RAS, RAZ*
		Feminine:		
America	*aⱮEŗika*	*aⱮEŗiķi*	——	——
Moscow	*maSKVA*	*maSKVI*	——	——
mother	*MAŢ*	*MAţiŗi*	*MAţiŗi*	*maţiŖEY*
school	*SHKOla*	*SHKOļi*	*SHKOli*	*SHKOL*
war	*vayNA*	*vayNI*	*VOYni*	*VOYN*

The noun *aɱiŗiKAŋic* has the stem *aɱiŗikanc-;* the noun *aŢEC* has the stem *atc-:* the extra vowels in the Nominative Singular are inserted vowels.

The noun *DRUK, DRUG* has the Singular stem *drug-;* in the Plural it has a different stem *druȥy-*. The Nominative Plural has the irregular ending *-á*. The Genitive Plural has no ending: the *e* is an inserted vowel.

The noun *RAS, RAZ* has no ending in the Genitive plural: *DVA RAza* 'twice', *ƤAŢ RAS* 'five times'.

The noun *MAŢ* has the stem *maţiŗ-;* the Nominative Singular is irregular, like *DOCH*.

The noun *vayNA* does not insert a vowel in the Genitive Plural. Notice the accent of the Nominative Plural.

John and I. In Russian one rarely says such things as 'John and I.' Instead one says we with John':

John and I	*MI s iVAnam*	мы с Иваном
my wife and I	*MI zh zhiNOY*	мы с женой
you and I	*MI s VAŋi*	мы с вами

Use of *ŋi*. The word *ŋi* 'not' often combines with a following word to express the opposite:

good	*xaraSHO*	хорошо
bad	*ŋi xaraSHO*	нехорошо
pleasant	*pŗiYAtna*	приятно
unpleasant	*ŋi pŗiYAtna*	неприятно
when	*kaGDA*	когда
never	*ŋi kaGDA*	никогда
of what	*chiVO*	чего
nothing	*ŋi chiVO*	ничего
who	*KTO*	кто
nobody	*ŋi KTO*	никто
much, many	*MNOga*	много
little, a little, few	*ŋi MNOga*	немного

Sometimes the accent shifts when *ŋi* combines with a following word:

long ago, since long ago, for a long time already	*daVNO*	давно
I've been here a long time.	*yá daVNO Z̧ḐEŞ.*	Я давно здесь.
not long ago, since not long ago	*ŋi DAvna*	недавно
He has only recently arrived.	*ón ŋi DAvna pŗiYExal.*	Он недавно приехал.
he was	*BIL*	был

He was in America.	*ón bíl v aM̦Eŗiķi.*	Он был в Америке.
he was not	*ŅȨ bil*	не был
He has never been in America.	*ón ņi kaGDA ŅE bíl v aM̦Eŗiķi.*	Он никогда не был в Америке.

New prepositions. The prepositions *iz* 'from' and *póşļi* 'after' are followed by the Genitive case.

Russians drink tea out of glasses.	*RUsķiya P̦YUT CHAY is staKAnaf.*	Русские пьют чай из стаканов.
I want to go there after the war.	*yá xachú paYExaţ tuDA póşļi vayNI.*	Я хочу поехать туда после войны.

B. ACCUSATIVE CASE

Do you know this young girl?	*ví ZNAyiţi étu malaDUyu D̦Evushku?*	Вы знаете эту молодую девушку?
I want to meet my wife at the station.	*yá xachú FSTŖEţiţ mayú zhiNU na vagZAļi.*	Я хочу встретить мою жену на вокзале.
Do you know our younger sister?	*ví ZNAyiţi náshu MLATshuyu şiSTRU?*	Вы знаете нашу младшую сестру?
They drink this water.	*aņí P̦YUT étu VOdu.*	Они пьют эту воду.
I met one of your (female) friends.	*yá tám FSTŖEţil aDNU váshu priYAţiļņicu.*	Я там встретил одну вашу приятельницу.

Observe that the Feminine nouns in these sentences have the ending *-u*. This case form is called the *Accusative*.

The Accusative case denotes someone or something to which someone does something or other (the *object* of a verb).

Observe that the noun *vaDA* has the accusative *VOdu* with change of accent.

Ordinary adjectives in the Feminine Accusative have the ending *-uyu: malaDUyu, MLATshuyu*.

The special adjectives in the Feminine Accusative have the ending *-u: maYU, aDNU Etu, NAshu, VAshu*.

Let's go into this hotel.	*payḐOM v Etu gaŞŢIņicu.*	Пойдем в эту гостиницу.
I'm traveling to Moscow.	*yá YEdu v maSKVU.*	Я еду в Москву.
I want to go to the post office.	*yá xachú iŢI na POchtu.*	Я хочу итти на почту.

The Accusative case after the prepositions *v* 'into, to' and *na* 'onto, to' tells the place *to which* someone or something goes.

We shall meet our daughter there.	*mí tám FSTŖEţim náshu DOCH.*	Мы там встретим нашу дочь.
Do you know my mother?	*vi ZNAyiţi mayú MAŢ?*	Вы знаете мою мать?

Feminine nouns whose Nominative ends in a consonant have the Accusative like the Nominative.

I want to say one word to you.	*yá xaCHU vám skaZAŢ aDNO SLOva.*	Я хочу вам сказать одно слово.
I drink cold milk.	*yá ŖYU xaLOdnaya malaKO.*	Я пью холодное молоко.

Neuter nouns and adjectives have the Accusative like the Nominative.

I want to drink tea.	*yá xachú CHAY ŖIŢ.*	Я хочу чай пить.
Give me a big glass of tea.	*DAYţi mņé baļSHOY staKAN CHAyu.*	Дайте мне большой стакан чаю.
Let's go into this restaurant.	*payḐOM v Etat ŗistaRAN.*	Пойдем в этот ресторан.
I'm driving to the station.	*yá YEdu na vagZAL.*	Я еду на вокзал.

Masculine nouns and adjectives that do not mean living beings have the Accusative like the Nominative.

Give me those matches.	*DAYţi mņé Eţi SŖICHķi.*	Дайте мне эти спички.
Give me my letters.	*DAYţi mņé mayí ŖIŞma.*	Дайте мне мои письма.
The doctors are now driving to the hospitals.	*daktaRA ţiŖEŖ YEdut v GOspitaļi.*	Доктора теперь едут в госпитали.

Plural nouns and adjectives that do not mean living beings have the Accusative like the Nominative.

Give him two roubles.	*DAYţi yimú DVA ruBĻA.*	Дайте ему два рубля.
Give us two cups of coffee.	*DAYţi nám DY̦E CHAshķi KOfi.*	Дайте нам две чашки кофе.
Give us three cups of coffee.	*DAYţi nám TŖI CHAshķi KOfi.*	Дайте нам три чашки кофе.
Give them four roubles.	*DAYţi yím chiTIŗi ruBĻA.*	Дайте им четыре рубля.

The numbers 2, 3, 4, when they do not count living beings, have the Accusative like the Nominative.

Give us five cups of coffee.	*DAYţi nám P̦AŢ CHAshik KOfi.*	Дайте нам пять чашек кофе.
Give them ten roubles.	*DAYţi yím ḐEşiţ ruBĻEY.*	Дайте им десять рублей.
At the school we met five (woman) teachers.	*f SHKOļi mí FSTŖEtiļi P̦AŢ uCHIţiļņic.*	В школе мы встретили пять учительниц.
I know six good doctors.	*yá ZNAyu SHEŞŢ xaROshix daktaROF.*	Я знаю шесть хороших докторов.

The numbers from 5 up have the Accusative like the Nominative.

What do you want?	*SHTO vi xaŢIţi?*	Что вы хотите?

The pronoun *SHTO* has the Accusative like the Nominative.

Do you know my brother?	*ví ZNAyiţi mayivó BRAta?*	Вы знаете моего брата?
I met one of your friends there.	*yá tám FSTŖEţil adnaVO váshiva DRUga.*	Я там встретил одного вашего друга.

Masculine nouns and adjectives that mean *living beings* have the Accusative like the *Genitive.*

Do you know my brothers?	*ví ZNAyiţi mayíx BRAţyif?*	Вы знаете моих братьев?
Did you meet our friends there?	*ví tám FSTŖEtiļi náshix dŗuZ̦EY?*	Вы там встретили наших друзей?
I know these girls.	*yá ZNAyu Eţix ḐEvushik.*	Я знаю этих девушек.
We'll meet our children at the station.	*mí FSTŖEţim náshix ḑiŢEY na vagZAļi.*	Мы встретим наших детей на вокзале.

Plural nouns and adjectives that mean *living beings* have the Accusative like the *Genitive.*

I know these two girls.	*yá ZNAyu éţix DVUX ḐEvushik.*	Я знаю этих двух девушек.
At the school we met three (woman) teachers.	*f SHKOļi mí FSTŖEţiļi TŖOX uCHIţiļŋic.*	В школе мы встретили трех учительниц.

The numbers 2, 3, 4 have the Accusative like the *Genitive* when they count *living beings.*

Whom are you going to meet there?	*kaVO ví tám FSTŖEţiţi?*	Кого вы там встретите?
Will you meet me here?	*ví ɱiŋá ẒḐEŞ FSTŖEţiţi?*	Вы меня здесь встетите?
Will you meet us at the restaurant?	*ví nás FSTŖEţiţi v ŗistaRAŋi?*	Вы нас встретите в ресторане?
I'll meet you there.	*yá vás tám FSTŖEchu.*	Я вас там встречу.
I know him well.	*yá yivó xaŗaSHO ZNAyu.*	Я его хорошо знаю.
We know her.	*mí yiyó ZNAyim.*	Мы ее знаем.
He knows them.	*ón yíx ZNAyit.*	Он их знает.
Do you understand me?	*ví ɱiŋá paŋiMAyiţi?*	Вы меня понимаете?
Do you understand us?	*ví nás paŋiMAyiţi?*	Вы нас понимаете?
I understand you.	*yá vás paŋiMAyu.*	Я вас понимаю.
I understand him.	*yá yivó paŋiMAyu.*	Я его понимаю.
I understand her.	*yá yiyó paŋiMAyu.*	Я ее понимаю.
I understand them.	*yá yíx paŋiMAyu.*	Я их понимаю.

The pronouns (except *SHTO*) have the Accusative like the Genitive.

I don't know this girl.	*yá ŋi ZNAyu Etay ḐEvushķi* (*Etu ḐEvushku*).	Я не знаю этой девушки (эту девушку).
I don't know this restaurant.	*yá ŋi ZNAyu Etava ŗistaRAna* (*Etat ŗistaRAN*).	Я не знаю этого ресторана (этот ресторан).

In Unit Three we learned that when one *does not* do something to a person or thing, this person or thing is in the *Genitive* case. That is: the *object* of a *negative* verb is in the *Genitive* case. The above sentences show that (when the Accusative is different from the Genitive) they sometimes here use the Accusative.

C. VERB FORMS

The verb forms in the Present tense differ according to who performs the action. There are two types of Present tense forms.

Type 1: *P̧IŢ* to drink (пить)

I drink	*P̧YU*	пью
you drink (familiar, to one person)	*P̧YOSH*	пьешь
he (she, it) drinks	*P̧YOT*	пьет
we drink	*P̧YOM*	пьем
you drink	*P̧YOţi*	пьете
they drink	*P̧YUT*	пьют

Type 2: *gavaŖIŢ* to speak (говорить)

I speak	*gavaŖU*	говорю
you speak (familiar, to one person)	*gavaŖISH*	говоришь
he (she, it) speaks	*gavaŖIT*	говорит
we speak	*gavaŖIM*	говорим
you speak	*gavaŖIţi*	говорите
they speak	*gavaŖAT*	говорят

Consonant changes and other details will be explained in later Units.

The Present tense of many verbs means a future action.

When the endings are not accented, there is almost no difference between the two types.

Type 1: *ZNAŢ* to know (знать)

I know	*ZNAyu*	знаю
you know (familiar)	*ZNAyish*	знаешь
he (she, it) knows	*ZNAyit*	знает

we know	*ZNAyim*	знаем
you know	*ZNAyiţi*	знаете
they know	*ZNAyut*	знают

Type 2: *FSTŖEţiţ* to meet (встретить)

I'll meet	*FSTŖEchu*	встречу
you'll meet (familiar)	*FSTŖEţish*	встретишь
he (she, it) will meet	*FSTŖEţit*	встретит
we'll meet	*FSTŖEţim*	встретим
you'll meet	*FSTŖEţiţi*	встретите
they'll meet	*FSTŖEţit*	встретят

The verb forms of the Past tense differ according to the gender (Masculine, Feminine, Neuter) of the person or thing that performs the action; in addition, there is a Plural form, for more than one actor and for 'you' (not familiar) as actor

The Past forms can be derived from the Infinitive form ('to do so and so'); hence we need only one example.

Infinitive: to know	*ZNAŢ*	знать

Past Masculine:

I knew (man speaking)	*yá ZNAL*	я знал
you knew (familiar, to a man or boy)	*tí ZNAL*	ты знал
he knew	*ón ZNAL*	он знал

Past Feminine:

I knew (woman speaking)	*yá ZNAla*	я знала
you knew (familiar, to a woman or girl)	*tí ZNAla*	ты знала
she knew	*aná ZNAla*	она знала

	Past Neuter:	
it knew (speaking of a Neuter noun)	*anó ZNAla*	оно знало
	Past Plural:	
we knew	*mí ZNAļi*	мы знали
you knew	*ví ZNAļi*	вы знали
they knew	*aní ZNAli*	они знали

2. Covering English and Russian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Review this *Word Study* by reading aloud all the Russian words and sentences. Then, in Sections A and B, cover the English and make sure that you know the meaning of every item; then cover the Russian and see if you can say each Russian sentence when you are looking only at the English. Read Section C carefully; it will help you to understand Russian and to say things in Russian.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* for better pronunciation, meaning and examples of points in the *Word Study*.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go back to the *Basic Sentences* in Section A, and read them aloud covering up the English. Note any words or phrases you are not sure about, and, when you have finished reading the *Basic Sentences*, uncover the English and look up the meaning of what you did not get. Keep this up until you know all the meanings completely.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Read aloud each of the following and then pick out the expression you think most suitable:

1. In the lobby of a hotel you see your friend, Mr. Terentyev, and he says he is glad to run across you. He says:
   - a. *Ochiŋ p̧ŗiYAtna ZHIŢ v étay gaŞŢIŋici*
   - b. *Ochiŋ p̧ŗiYAtna vás FSTŖEţiţ z̧ḑéş.*
   - c. *yá xaCHU paznaKOɱitsa s VAɱi.*
2. He asks you what you are doing here. He says:
   - a. *SHTO ví z̧ḑéş ḐElayiţi?*
   - b. *SHTO ví xaŢIţi ḐElaţ ţiP̧EŖ?*
   - c. *CHEM ví ţiP̧EŖ zaŋiMAyiţiş?*
3. You tell him you are going to meet your friend ILyin here. You say:
   - a. *yá FSTŖEchu z̧ḑéş mayivó DRUga iļyiNA.*
   - b. *yá FSTŖEchu z̧ḑéş mayú p̧ŗiYAtiļŋicu iļyiNU.*
   - c. *yá Z̧ḐEŞ s mayím DRUgam iļyiNIM.*
4. Mr. Terentyev says he has heard that Ilyin is now in the army. He says:
   - a. *mŋé skaZAļi shtó ón ŋi DAvna p̧ŗiYExal.*
   - b. *mŋé skaZAļi shtó ón ţiP̧EŖ zhiY̧OT v maSKY̧E.*
   - c. *mŋé skaZAļi shtó ón ţiP̧EŖ v ARɱiyi.*
5. You answer that he is, but that he is now on furlough. You say:
   - a. *DA, nó ón ţiP̧EŖ v aM̧Eŗiķi.*
   - b. *DA, nó ón ţiP̧EŖ v maSKY̧E.*
   - c. *DA, nó u ŋivó ţiP̧EŖ OTpusk.*
6. Mr. Terentyev asks about your father. He says:
   - a. *KAK pazhiVAyit vásh BRAT?*
   - b. *KAK pazhiVAyit vásh aŢEC?*
   - c. *KAK pazhiVAyit vásh SIN?*
7. You answer that he is well and that he is now in America. You say:
   - a. *xaraSHO, spaŞIba; ón ţiP̧EŖ v aM̧Eŗiķi.*
   - b. *xaraSHO, spaŞIba; ón ŋi DAvna p̧ŗiYExal.*
   - c. *xaraSHO, spaŞIba; ón paYEḑit v aM̧Eŗiku.*
8. Mr. Terentyev asks what your father is doing in America. He says:
   - a. *SHTO ón tám izuCHAyit?*
   - b. *GḐE ón tám raBOtayit?*
   - c. *SHTO ón tám ḐElayit?*
9. You answer that you don't know that. You say:
   - a. *yá ŋi ZNAyu GḐE ón.*
   - b. *yá ŋi ZNAyu SHTO ón izuCHAyit.*
   - c. *yá Etava ŋi ZNAyu.*

10. You see your friend Ilyin coming toward you, and you ask Mr. Terentyev whether he wants to be introduced to him. You say:
   a. *ví ZNAyiţi mayivó DRUga iļyiNA?*
   b. *ví ŋi ZNAyiţi mayivó DRUga iļyiNA?*
   c. *ví xaţiţi paznaKOɱitsa s mayím DRUgam iļyiNIM?*

11. Mr. Terentyev says yes, so you say you will introduce him to Ilyin. You say:
   a. *xaraSHO, yá vás s ŊIM paznaKOmļu.*
   b. *xaraSHO, payḐOMţi FSTŖEţim yivó.*
   c. *xaraSHO, payḐOMţi v M̦Eşţi s ŋím.*

12. You introduce them, and Mr. Terentyev says:
   a. *Ochiŋ xaraSHO!*
   b. *Ochiŋ daVNO!*
   c. *Ochiŋ pŗiYAtna!*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Russian for the last exercise in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Do it without reading from the book, if possible. Other members of the group will criticize your choice if they disagree with it. Then give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

Give the correct Russian for each English expression in the *Word Study*, without having to read it from the book. If you cannot do this easily, it means you need to put in more work on the *Word Study*. The Group Leader will give the English and call on different members of the group for the Russian.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Russian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows.

Go through the conversations again with books open, following the same plan as before, imitating carefully and keeping in mind the meaning of everything you say. Finally, take parts and carry on the conversation.

1. *Andreyev and Ilyin run into each other at the station.*

Unit 4, Record Side 3, after 5th spiral. (78 RPM)

iĻYIN: *tavárishch anDŖEyif!*
kák pŗiYAtna FSTŖEţiţ vás z̧ḑéş!

anDŖEyif: *AX, ZDRAstvuyţi, ZDRAstvuyţi!*
KAK ví pazhiVAyiţi?

iĻYIN: *mņé DOktar skaZAL shtó ví v maSKV̧E.*

anDŖEyif: *ŅET; yá YEdu v maSKVU s mayím BRAtam.*

2. *They meet Mrs. Ilyin and Andreyev's brother, Boris.*

Unit 4, Record Side 4, beginning. (78 RPM)

iĻYIN: *VOT vagZAL.*
GḐE MAŗya?

anDŖEyif: *BRÀta z̧ḑéş ŅET,*
nó VOT vásha zhiNA.

iĻYIN: *AX, DA!*
izņiŅIţi;
yá yéy skaZHU shtó ví Z̧ḐEŞ.

anDŖEyif: *paZHALsta.*

iĻYIN: *ZDRAstvuy, Maŗya!*
móy DRUK anDŖEyif na vagZAļi.
ón YEḑit v maSKVU.

MAŗya: *náshi ḐEţi yivó ZNAyut?*

(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 4, after 2nd spiral.

iĻYIN: *ón raBOtayit v GOspitaļi?*

anDŖEyif: *DA.*
a MŅE skazáļi shtó vásh SIN TAG zhi v maSKV̧E.

iĻYIN: *ón paYExal tuDA izuCHAŢ anGĻIYsķiy yiZIK.*
nó ón TAG zhi tám raBOtayit v GOspitaļi.

iĻYIN: *ŅET,*
nó yivó BRAT raBOtayit v GOspitaļi s iVAnam.
tí XOchish yimú skaZAŢ shtó tí biLA v maSKV̧E?

Maŗya: *kaŅEshna.*
GḐE ón?

iĻYIN: *ón TAM.*
VOT ón iḐOt!

anDŖEyif: *ZDRAstvuyţi, tavárishch iļyiNA!*
KAK ví pazhiVAyiţi?

MAŗya: *xaraSHO, spaŞIba.*
a VI?

anDŖEyif: *TO zhi xaraSHO.*
vásh MUSH mɲé skaZAL shtó vásh SIN izuCHAyit anGĻIYsķiy yiZIK v maSKƳE.

Maŗya: *DA;*
i násh MLATshiy sín TO zhi v maSKƳE.

anDŖEyif: *a shtó ón tám ḐElayit?*

3. *Andreyev and his brother join the Ilyins.*

Unit 4, Record Side 4, after 1st spiral. (78 RPM)

anDŖEyif: *ZDRAstvuy, baŖIS!*
KAK tí?

baŖIS: *xaraSHO.*
GḐE ti BIL?

anDŖEyif: *YA bíl s mayím DRUgam iļyiNIM i s yivó zhiNOY.*
aɲí ȤḐEŞ.
payḐOM yíx FSTŖEţiţ.

baŖIS: *xaraSHO;*
nó YA xachú ƤIŢ.

anDŖEyif: *VOT móy BRAT baŖIS.*

baŖIS: *Ochiɲ priYAtna.*

iĻYIN: *ZDRAstvuyţi!*
ȤḐEŞ na vagZAļi ɲi pŗiYAtna.
payḐOMţi v ŗistaRAN.

Maŗya: *ón f SHKOļi.*
YA pŗiYExala iz maSKVI.
yá biLA tám s ƝIɱi.

anDŖEyif. *izŗiƝIţi miɲá, paZHALsta.*
VOT iḑót móy BRAT.

iĻYIN: *ví nás s ɲím paznaKOɱiţi?*

anDŖEyif: *kaƝEshna.*

baŖIS: *xaraSHO.*
yá Ochiɲ xachú ƤIva.

anDŖEyif: *kuDA mí payḐOM?*

baŖIS: *ŗistaRAN na ĻEva at vagZAla.*

anDŖEyif: *graZHDANka iļyiNA, ví xaţíţi ƤIva íļi CHAyu?*

Maŗya: *ƤIva, spaŞIba, nó ɲi MNOga.*

anDŖEyif: *baŖIS, u ţiɓá YEŞŢ SƤICHka?*

baŖIS: *ƝET;*
nó VOT papiROsa.

iĻYIN: *VOT u ɱiƝA SƤICHka.*

anDŖEyif: *spaŞIba.*
graZHDANka, ví xaŢIţi papiROsu?

Maŗya: *spaŞIba*
baŖIS, vázh BRAT nám skaZAL shtó ví ZNAyiţi náshiva STARshiva SIna iVAna.
baŖIS: *AX, iVAN iĻYIN VASH SIN?*
yá yivó Ochiņ xaraSHO ZNAyu.
mí s iVAnam v M̧Eşţi gavaŗíļi pa anGĻIYsķi v GOspitaļi.
Maŗya: *ví tó zhi izuCHAyiţi anGĻIYsķiy yiZIK?*
baŖIS: *ŅET;*
yá bíl v aM̧Eŗiķi póşļi vayNI.
Maŗya: *yá ņi kaGDA tám ņi biLA.*
anDŖEyif: *mí tudá paYEḑim v M̧Eşţi.*

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Russian of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Russian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Russian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

As in previous units, the Group Leader will call on various members of the group to give the Russian expressions which correspond to the English in the *Basic Sentences*.

3. Conversation

Work through the following outlined conversations, taking parts. Act them out in front of the group; keep this up until you can do them easily and smoothly. When the outlined conversations go well, then change the situations somewhat. You now have more material which you can work into additional conversations. Invent topics as you did for the previous units.

1. A meets B on the street. They say hello to each other, and then A invites B to come to a café with him. They go into the café and A asks B what he'd like to drink. B says he'll take some coffee. A asks whether he wouldn't rather drink some beer? B says he likes coffee the best. Then A calls the waitress and gives her the order.
2. A asks B about B's English study: whether he understands; whether he speaks well; whether he has been in America; whether he wants to go there; who his teacher (woman) is; whether she speaks English well.
3. Q asks R about R's father, mother, brother, sister. R tells Q something about each one.
4. R asks Q about Q's wife and children. Q tells R something about each one.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

1. Conversation (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

af̧iCYANT **(официант)** waiter

aM̧Eŗika **(Америка)** America; *v aM̧Eŗiķi* **(в Америке)** in America

am̧iŗiKAņic **(американец)** American (man)

am̧iŗiKANsķiy **(американский)** American

anGĻIYsķiy **(английский)** English

aŢEC **(отец)** father

bi **(бы)** would; *BIla bi* **(было бы)** it would be

BIŢ **(быть)** to be; *BIL* **(был)** he was; *biLA* **(была)** she was; *BIla* **(было)** it was; *BIļi* **(были)** were

BUḑit **(будет)** he (she, it) will be

CHAshka **(чашка)** cup

daVNO **(давно)** long ago, since long ago, for a long time already;

ņi DAvna **(недавно)** not long ago, since not long ago

ḐElaţ **(делать)** to do, to make; *ḐElayut* **(делают)** they do, they make

DRUK, DRUG **(друг)** friend (male); *druZ̧YA* **(друзья)** friends

iz **(из)** out of, from

izuCHAŢ **(изучать)** to study; *izuCHAyut* **(изучают)** they study

kaGDA **(когда)** when; *ŋi kaGDA* **(никогда)** never
kaŊEchna, kaŊEshna **(конечно)** of course
kaVO **(кого)** whom

maSKVA **(Москва)** Moscow; *v maSKVE* **(в Москве)** in Moscow
MAŢ **(мать)** mother
MLATshiy **(младший)** younger

paYExaţ **(поехать)** to drive, ride, travel to a place

POchta **(почта)** post office; mail
POşļi **(после)** after
p̧ŗiYExaţ **(приехать)** to arrive (not on foot)

RAS, RAZ **(раз)** repetition, time

SHKOla **(школа)** school

TAG zhi **(также)** also
ţiP̧EŖ **(теперь)** now

vayNA **(война)** war

ZHIŢ **(жить)** to live; *zhiVUT* **(живут)** they live

UNIT 5

THE WEATHER

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Go once through the *Basic Sentences* in unison, then *Hints on Pronunciation*, and then go twice more through the *Basic Sentences* individually.

1. Basic Sentences

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Unit 5, Record Side 1, beginning. (78 RPM)		**(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 5, beginning.**
Peter and Ivan talk about the weather.		
	Peter	
what kind of (F.)	*kaKAya*	какая
weather	*paGOda*	погода
in Russia	*v raŞIyi*	в России
What sort of weather do you have in Russia?	*kaKAya u vás paGOda v raŞIyi?*	Какая у вас погода в России?
	Ivan	
possible	*MOzhna*	можно
any kind of (A.F.)	*RAznuyu*	разную
In Russia you can find any kind of weather.	*v raŞIyi mózhna FSTŖEţiţ RAznuyu paGOdu.*	В России можно встретить разную погоду.

rather *or* enough	*daVOĻna*	довольно
(it is) cool	*praXLAdna*	прохладно
in spring	*z̧iSNOY*	весной
in summer	*ĻEtam*	летом
(it is) hot	*ZHARka*	жарко
It's rather cool here in spring, but it's hot in summer.	*Z̧ḐEŞ davóļna praXLAdna z̧iSNOY, nó ĻEtam ZHARķa.*	Здесь довольно прохладно весной, но летом жарко.
	Peter	
cold (P.)	*xaLOdnaya*	холодные
winters	*Z̧Imi*	зимы
Do you have cold winters?	*u vás xaLOdnaya Z̧Imi?*	У вас холодные зимы?
	Ivan	
in winter	*z̧iMOY*	зимой
(it is) cold	*XOladna*	холодно
in fall (in autumn)	*Oşiŋyu*	осенью
(it is) warm*	*ţiPLO*	тепло
Yes, it's cold in winter, but it's warm in the fall.	*DA, z̧iMOY XOladna, nó Oşiŋyu ţiPLO.*	Да, зимой холодно, но осенью тепло.
pleases	*NRAv̧itsa*	нравится
(the) south	*YUK, YUG*	юг
I like the south of Russia.	*mņé NRAv̧itsa RUsķiy YUK,*	Мне нравится русский юг.
large (P.)	*baļSHIya*	большие
mountains	*GOri*	горы
They have high mountains.	*TAM baļSHIya GOri.*	Там большие горы.

---

*Not on the record.

	Peter	
often	*CHAsta*	часто
goes*	*iḐOT*	идет
rain	*DOSHCH, DOZHDZH*	дождь
it rains*	*iḑót DOSHCH*	идет дождь
They say there's a lot of rain there.	*gavaŖAT shtó tám CHAsta iḑót DOSHCH.*	Говорят, что там часто идет дождь.
	Ivan	
sometimes	*inaGDA*	иногда
Yes, sometimes there's really a lot.	*DA, inagdá Ochiņ CHAsta.*	Да, иногда очень часто.
(in) the north	*na ŞEv̧iŗi*	на севере
always	*fşiGDA*	всегда
snow	*ŞŅEK*	снег
In the north there's always rain or snow in the fall.	*na ŞEv̧iŗi Oşiņyu fşiGDA iḑód DOSHCH iļi ŞŅEK.*	На севере осенью всегда идет дождь или снег.

Unit 5, Record Side 2, beginning. (78 RPM)

	Peter	
(of) sick people	*baļNIX*	больных
Aren't there a lot of sick people there?	*TAM MNOga baļNIX?*	Там много больных?
	Ivan	
only	*TOĻka*	только
Only a few.	*TOĻka ņi MNOga.*	Только немного.

---

*Not on record.

	Peter	
wintry (P.)	*Z̧Imņiya*	зимние
cold weather	*xalaDA*	холода
for	*ḐĻA*	для
(are) bad	*ņi xaraSHI*	нехороши
Cold weather in winter isn't good for sick people.	*Z̧Imņiya xalaDA ņi xaraSHI ḑļa baļNIX.*	Зимние холода нехороши для больных.
	Ivan	
healthy (P.)	*zdaROvaya*	здоровые
people	*ĻUḑi*	люди
We're a healthy people.	*MI zdaROvaya ĻUḑi.*	Мы здоровые люди.
	Peter	
That's good.	*Eta xaraSHO.*	Это хорошо.
in the east	*na vaSTOķi*	на востоке
We have a lot of rain and snow in the east.	*u NAS na vaSTOķi CHAsta iḑód DOSHCH i ŞŅEK.*	У нас на востоке часто идет дождь и снег.
But it's hot there in summer.	*nó ĻEtam tám ZHARka.*	Но летом там жарко.
	Ivan	
San Francisco	*san franCIska*	Сан-Франциско
Is San Francisco in the east?	*san franCIska na vaSTOķi?*	Сан-Франциско на востоке?
	Peter	
Boston	*baSTON*	Бостон
No, Boston's in the east.	*ŅET; baSTON na vaSTOķi.*	Нет, Бостон на востоке.

in the west	*na ZApaḑi*	на западе
in California	*f kaļiFORŋiyi*	в Калифорнии
San Francisco is in California, and California is in the west.	*san franCIska f kaļiFORŋiyi, a kaļiFORŋiya na ZApaḑi.*	Сан-Франциско в Калифорнии, а Калифорния на западе.
heavy rains	*baļSHIya daZHDZHI*	большие дожди
But they have a lot of heavy rains there too.	*nó tám TOzhi CHAsta idúd baļSHIya daZHDZHI.*	Но там тоже часто идут большие дожди.
	Ivan	
the east	*vaSTOK*	восток
I like the east of Russia.	*mŋé NRAᶌitsa RUsķiy vaSTOK.*	Мне нравится русский восток.
	Peter	
I've been told it's always very hot in summer and very cold in winter there.	*mŋé skaZAļi shtó tám fşiGDA ĻEtam óchiŋ ZHARka, a ȥiMOY óchiŋ XOladna.*	Мне сказали, что там всегда летом очень жарко, а зимой очень холодно.

Unit 5, Record Side 3, beginning. (78 RPM)

	Ivan	
Yes, but sometimes the weather's very nice there.	*DA, nó inaGDA paGOda tám Ochiŋ pŗiYAtnaya.*	Да, но иногда погода там очень приятная.
	Peter	
by night	*NOchyu*	ночью
by day	*ḐŅOM*	днем
in Florida	*va flaŖIḑi*	во Флориде
In California and Florida it often rains at night, but it's nice in the daytime.	*f kaļiFORŋiyi i va flaŖIḑi CHAsta iḐOT NOchyu DOZHDZH, nó ḐŅOM priYAtna.*	В Калифорнии и во Флориде часто идет ночью дождь, но днем приятно.

	Ivan	
yesterday	*fchiRA*	вчера
went	*SHOL*	шел
It rained here yesterday.	*fchirá Z̧ḐEŞ shól DOSHCH.*	Вчера здесь шел дождь.
all the time*	*fşó VŖEɱa*	все время
Yes, it often rains here,	*Z̧ḐEŞ CHAsta iḑód DOSHCH,*	Здесь часто идет дождь,
but they told me [you] always [had] good weather here.	*a mŋé skaZAļi shtó Z̧ḐEŞ fşó VŖEɱya xaROshaya paGOda.*	а мне сказали, что здесь все время хорошая погода.
	Ivan	
And I was told that it never rains in California.	*a MŅE skaZAļi shtó f kaļiFORŋiyi ŋi kaGDA ŋi iḑód DOSHCH.*	а мне сказали, что в Калифорнии никогда не идет дождь.
	Peter	
Who told you so?	*któ vám Eta skaZAL?*	Кто вам это сказал?
	Ivan	
A guy from California.	*chilaV̧EK is kaļiFORŋiyi.*	Человек из Калифорнии.

---

*Not on record.

Before you go through the *Basic Sentences* a second time, study the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation

1. Russian *c*.

Russian *c* sounds like English *ts* in *hats*. In English this sound is common at the end of a word, but it never comes at the beginning of a word. In Russian, however, it comes in all positions. Russian *c* is one of the three Russian consonants (the other two are *sh* and *zh*) which have no similar palatal consonant to match them. The combination *ts*, as in *paznaKOɱitsa*, differs from *c* (and from English *ts*) in having a slight break between the *t* and the *s*. Here are four words with *c* and then two with *ts*. Listen carefully and try to imitate.

PRACTICE 1

Unit 5, Record Side 3, after 1st spiral. (78 RPM)

(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 5, after 1st spiral.

aŢEC	отец	*father*
afiCYANT	официант	*waiter*
ļiCO	лицо	*face*
ciNA	цена	*price*
BRATsa	браться	*to take up*
saḐITsa	садиться	*to sit down*

2. Russian *sh* and *zh*.

Russian *sh* resembles English *sh* as in *shall*, and Russian *zh* resembles English *z* as in *azure*, but the Russian sounds are less palatal. You can get this effect by lowering the front of the tongue and by slightly rounding the lips. Repeat each word right after the Guide or the record.

PRACTICE 2

Unit 5, Record Side 3, after 2nd spiral. (78 RPM)

SHTO	что	*what*
SHEŞŢ	шесть	*six*
MLATshiy	младший	*younger*
zhiNA	жена	*wife*
MUzha	мужа	*of the husband*
ZHIŢ	жить	*to live*

3. Russian *ch*.

Russian *ch* is like English *ch* in *cheap*. It counts in Russian as a palatal consonant, because the middle of the tongue is raised up against the palate, in the characteristic palatal position. Russian *ch* is one of the two Russian palatal consonants (the other being *y*) that have no similar plain consonants to match them. Now imitate the Guide or the record.

PRACTICE 3

Unit 5, Record Side 3, after 3rd spiral. (78 RPM)

MAĻchik	мальчик	*little boy*
CHAsta	часто	*often*
chiTIŗi	четыре	*four*
DOCH	дочь	*daughter*

4. Russian *shch*.

In the combination *shch*, the Russian *ch* keeps its palatal sound, and the preceding *sh* takes on this palatal quality; that is, you start raising the middle part of the tongue into palatal position at the beginning of the whole combination, instead of raising it just for the *ch*. Most speakers, including the speaker on our record, turn the whole combination into a kind of long palatal *sh*-sound. There is also a palatal combination of *zhdzh* (or long palatal *zh* with the *d* almost or quite dropping out); the speaker on our record used this once in the word *DOZHDZH* 'rain', beside his usual pronunciation *DOSHCH*. This sound always appears in *daZHDZHI* 'rains'.

Now listen carefully to the following examples of Russian *shch* and try to imitate.

PRACTICE 4

Unit 5, Record Side 3, after 4th spiral. (78 RPM)

taVAŗishch	товарищ	*comrade*
SHCHI	щи	*cabbage soup*
yiSHCHO	еще	*still, yet, as yet*

5. Russian *y*.

Russian *y* is like English *y* in *yes*, but it occurs in more different positions, for instance after a vowel at the end of a word or before a consonant. Russian *y* is always a palatal consonant; there is no plain consonant to match it.

PRACTICE 5

Unit 5, Record Side 3, after 5th spiral. (78 RPM)

YEXaţ	ехать	*to ride or drive*
STOyiţ	стоить	*to cost*
CHAY	чай	*tea*
yiYO	ее	*her*
yá yíx ZNAyu	я их знаю	*I know them*
anGĻIYsķiy yiZIK	английский язык	*the English lanugage*

Now go twice through the Basic Sentences, once with book open and once with book closed.

SECTION 5—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

A. COMMENT ON THE BASIC SENTENCES

Variation in consonant sounds. You have probably noticed how the consonants of some words vary. For instance, *MUSH* (occasionally *MUZH*) 'husband', but genitive *MUzha* (*yá ņi ZNAyu yiyó MUzha*) 'I don't know her husband'). Most Russian consonants belong to a class called *mutes*. The mutes go in pairs; one in each pair is called *voiced*, the other *unvoiced:*

Mutes

voiced:	*b*	*b̧*	*d*	*ḑ*	*dz*	*dzh*	*g*	*gh*	*v*	*v̧*	*z*	*z̧*	*zh*	*zhdzh*
unvoiced:	*p*	*p̧*	*t*	*ţ*	*c*	*ch*	*k*	*x*	*f*	*f̧*	*s*	*ş*	*sh*	*shch*

When a voiced mute comes at the end of a word, it is sometimes kept unchanged, but this is done only in slow, careful speech, and not by all speakers. Mostly a voiced mute at the end of a word is replaced by the corresponding unvoiced mute, as in the table above.

two friends	*DVA DRUga*	два друга
a friend	*DRUK (DRUG)*	друг
three times	*TŖI RAza*	три раза
many times	*MNOga RAS (RAZ)*	много раз
two husbands	*DVA MUzha*	два мужа
the husband	*MUSH (MUZH)*	муж
rains	*daZHDZHI*	дожди
rain	*DOSHCH (DOZHDZH)*	дождь

An unvoiced mute in general does not change at the end of a word:

two little boys	*DVA MAĻchika*	два мальчика
a little boy	*MAĻchik*	мальчик

But if the next word begins with a voiced mute (other than *v*), then, in rapid speech, a final unvoiced mute becomes voiced:

he (she, it) goes	*iḐOT*	идет
It's raining.	*iḐOD DOSHCH.*	Идет дождь.

Variation in vowel sounds. Unstressed vowels are slurred and weakened.

At the end of a word, *e* when unstressed is weakened to *i*. Example: ending *-e*, *f pişME* (in the letter), but unstressed *-i*, *f SLOv̧i* (in the word).

At the end of a word, *o* when unstressed is weakened to *a*. Example: ending *-o*, *malaKO* (milk), *maYO* (mine), but unstressed *P̧Iva* (beer), *VAsha* (yours).

Within a word, *a*, *e*, and *o*, when unstressed, after a palatal consonant or *c*, *sh*, *zh*, are weakened to *i*. Examples: ending *-ax*, *ab atCAX* (about their fathers), *na vagZAlax* (at the stations), but *a ĻUḑix* (about the people), *v gaŞŢIņicix* (in the hotels);

stem *cen-*, *CEni* (prices), but *ciNA* (price);

stem *zhon-* *ZHOni* (wives), but *zhiNA* (wife);

stem *şostr-*, *ŞOstri* (sisters), but *şiSTRA* (sister);

ending *-ot*, *iḐOT* (is going), but *YEḑit* (is riding).

Within a word, *o*, when unstressed, after a plain consonant (except *c*, *sh*, *zh*) is weakened to *a*. Example: stem *xolod-*, *XOlat* (the cold), but *xalaDA* (cold spells); compare also *xaLOdnay* (cold).

Within a word, *i*, when unstressed, after a plain consonant (except *c*, *sh*, *zh*) is weakened to *a* in certain positions:

In a syllable after the accent. Example: ending *-ix*, *baļNIX* (of sick people), but *TRUdnax* (of difficult ones).
Two or more syllables before the accent. Example: stem *sin-*, *SIN* (son), but *sanaỴYA* (sons).
The *i* is weakened (but not changed to a) in the syllable just before the accent. Example: *siNOK* (little son).
Do not try to memorize these statements. We give them because they will answer occasional questions.

Rain, snow. In Russian they say 'the rain goes', 'the snow goes':

It's raining.	*DOSHCH iḐOT.*	Дождь идет.
	iḐOD DOSHCH.	Идет дождь.
It's snowing.	*ŞŅEK iḐOT.*	Снег идет.
	iḐOT ŞŅEK.	Идет снег.

I like. Notice that the Russian says 'it pleases me' where we say 'I like it':

I like this hotel.	*mņé NRAv̦itsa Eta gaŞŢIņica.*	Мне нравится эта гостиница.

The form of the pronoun *MŅE* in these sentences is a case form (called *Dative*) which we shall study later. For the present, just learn to say the following sentences.

How do you like Moscow?	*KAK vám NRAv̦itsa maSKVA?*	Как вам нравится Москва?
We don't like this hotel.	*nám ņi NRAv̦itsa éta gaŞŢIņica.*	Нам не нравится эта гостиница.
He likes this weather.	*yimú NRAv̦itsa éta paGOda.*	Ему нравится эта погода.
She likes this house.	*yéy NRAv̦itsa état DOM.*	Ей нравится этот дом.
They like Moscow.	*yím NRAv̦itsa maSKVA.*	Им нравится Москва.

Sick people. The word for a sick person that we have been hearing, is not a noun, but an adjective. Later on we shall explain the forms. For the present, learn the following sentences:

He is sick.	*ón BOļin.*	Он болен.
She is ill.	*aná baļNA.*	Она больна.

They are ill.	*aņi baļNI.*	Они больны.
The patient (male) is in the hospital now.	*baļNOY ţiP̧EŖ v GOspitaļi.*	Больной теперь в госпитале.
The patient (female) was in the hospital.	*baļNAya bilá v GOspitaļi.*	Больная была в госпитале.
The patients are in the hospital.	*baļNIya v GOspitaļi.*	Больные в госпитале.

The preposition *ḑļa* 'for' is followed by the Genitive case:

Here's a letter for you!	*VOT p̧işMO ḑļa VAS!*	Вот письмо для вас!
Here are some letters for your friend!	*VOT P̧IŞma dļa váshiva taVAŗishcha!*	Вот письма для вашего товарища!

B. NEW NOUNS

Here are the new nouns of this Unit. We give each one in the Nominative Singular, and then add the other case forms which we have studied. We use the following abbreviations:

N.S.: Nominative Singular
A.S.: Accusative Singular
G.S.: Genitive Singular
N.P.: Nominative Plural
A.P.: Accusative Plural
G.P.: Genitive Plural

Masculine nouns:

N.S.	G.S.	N.P.	G.P.
ḐEŅ (day)	*ḐŅA*	*ḐŅI*	*ḐŅEY*
DOZHDZH (rain)	*daZHDZHA*	*daZHDZHI*	*daZHDZHEY*
ŞEv̧ir (north)	*ŞEv̧ira*	——	——
ŞŅEG (snow; plural, snowfalls)	*ŞŅEga, ŞŅEgu*	*şņiGA*	*şņiGOF*
vaSTOK (east)	*vaSTOka*	——	——
XOlad (cold; plural, cold spells)	*XOlada*	*xalaDA*	*xalaDOF*
YUG (south)	*YUga*	——	——
ZApad (west)	*ZApada*	——	——

Feminine nouns:

N.S.	A.S.	G.S.	N.P.	G.P.
gaRA (mountain)	*GOru*	*gaRI*	*GOri*	*GOR*
NOCH (night)	=N.S.	*NOchi*	*NOchi*	*naCHEY*
Oşiŋ (autumn)	=N.S.	*Oşiŋi*	*Oşiŋi*	*Oşiŋiy*
paGOda (weather)	*paGOdu*	*paGOdi*	——	——
raŞIya (Russian)	*raŞIyu*	*raŞIyi*	——	——
ɣiSNA (spring)	*ɣiSNU, ƔOsnu*	*ɣiSNI*	*ƔOsni*	*ƔOşin*
ʐiMA (winter)	*ƵImu*	*ʐiMI*	*ƵImi*	*ƵIM*

Neuter nouns:

N.S.	G.S.	N.P.	G.P.
ĻEta (summer	*ĻEta*	*ļiTA*	*ĻET*
VŖEɱa (time)	*VŖEɱiŋi*	*vŗiɱiNA*	*vŗiⱮON*

This last word has the stem *vŗiɱon-*, but the N.S. and G.S. are entirely irregular.

C. LOCATIVE CASE

They are now living in Moscow.	*aŋí ţiƤEŖ zhiVUT v maSKƔE.*	Они теперь живут в Москве.
In this letter there are many hard words.	*v Etam pişME MNOga TRUdnax SLOF.*	В этом письме много трудных слов.
I'll meet you at the station.	*yá vás FSTŖEchu na vagZAļi.*	Я вас встречу на вокзале.
We were talking about your father.	*mí gavaŖIļi a váshim atCE.*	Мы говорили о вашем отце.

Study these sentences in the usual way until you can say the Russian fluently. Then go over them and observe the following things.

The nouns in these sentences have the ending *-, e;* when this ending is unstressed it is weakened to *-, i.* The comma which we write here means that a preceding plain consonant becomes palatal. This can happen only if the plain consonant has a palatal consonant to match it: the plain consonants *sh*, *zh*, *c* cannot become palatal.

This form of nouns is the *Locative* case form.

The Locative case is used only after certain prepositions, namely:

a, when it means 'around' or 'about'. Before a vowel this word has the form *ab:*

Now they are talking about the army.	*ţiP̦EŖ gavaŖAT ab ARɱiyi.*	Теперь говорят об армии.

na, when it means 'on, at, in', telling *where* someone or something is. Recall that *na* takes the Accusative case when it means 'onto, to', telling *whereto* someone or something goes:

They are driving to the station.	*aŋí YEdut na vagZAL.*	Они едут на вокзал.
They are now at the station.	*aŋí ţiP̦EŖ na vagZAļi.*	Они теперь на вокзале.

v (sometimes *va*), when it means 'in, at', telling *where* someone or something is. Recall that *v* takes the Accusative case when it means 'into, to', telling *whereto* someone or something goes:

The children are walking to school.	*ḐEţi iDUT f SHKOlu.*	Дети идут в школу.
The children are now in school.	*ḐEţi ţiP̦EŖ f SHKOļi.*	Дети теперь в школе.
They often eat in that big restaurant.	*aŋí CHAsta KUshiyut v Etam baļSHOM ŗistaRAŋi.*	Они часто кушают в этом большом ресторане.
I'm talking about one of my comrades.	*yá gavaŖU ab aDNOM maYOM taVAŗishchi.*	Я говорю об одном моем товарище.
In your letter you said nothing about [your] brother.	*v váshim pişM̦E ví ŋi chiVO ŋi skaZAļi a BRAţi.*	В вашем письме вы ничего не сказали о брате.

Adjectives in the Masculine and Neuter have the ending *-om* (unstressed *-am*, *-im*) for the Locative case: *baļSHOM, maYOM, aDNOM, Etam, NAshim, VAshim.*

We are living in that big hotel.	*mí zhiVOM v Etay baļSHOY gaŞŢIŋici.*	Мы живем в этой большей гостинице.

Is he now in the Russian army or in ours?	*ón ţiPEŖ v KUskay ARm̧iyi íļi v NAshiy?*	Он теперь в русской армии или в нашей?
We are talking about one of your (woman) friends.	*mí gavaŖIM ab aDNOY váshiy p̧ŗiYAţiļņici.*	Мы говорим об одной вашей приятельнице.

Adjectives in the Feminine have the ending *-oy* (unstressed *-ay*, *-iy*) for the Locative case: *baļSHOY*, *aDNOY*, *RUskay*, *NAshiy*, *VAshiy*. This is like the Genitive.

What did she say about my mother?	*SHTO aná skaZAla a mayéy MAţiŗi?*	Что она сказала о моей матери?

The special adjective *MOY* has the ending *-ey* in the Feminine Locative. This is like the Genitive.

Many people live in these houses.	*v Eţix daMAX zhiYOT MNOga ļuḐEY.*	В этих домах живет много людей.
In American schools there are many women teachers.	*v am̧iŗiKANsķix SHKOlax MNOga uCHIţiļņic.*	В американских школах много учительниц.
I don't want even to talk about those people.	*ab Eţix ĻUḑix yá i gavaŖIŢ ņi xaCHU.*	Об этих людях я и говорить не хочу.

Plural nouns have the ending *-ax* in the Locative case. When unstressed, *-ax* is weakened to *-ix* after palatal consonants and *sh*, *zh*, *c*.

In the big hotels there are now many Americans.	*v baļSHIX gaŞŢIņicix ţiPEŖ MNOga am̧iŗiKANcif.*	В больших гостиницах теперь много американцев.
What did she say about my children?	*SHTO aná skaZAla a mayíx ḐEţix?*	Что она сказала о моих детях?
Did he talk much about our friends?	*ón MNOga gavaŖIL a náshix druZ̧YAX?*	Он много говорил о наших друзьях?

Locative Plural adjectives have the ending *-ix*. This is the same as the Genitive Plural.

In winter they live in these two big houses.	*z̧iMOY aŋí zhiVUT v Eţix DVUX baļSHIX daMAX.*	Зимой они живут в этих двух больших домах.
Dr. Terentyev works in three hospitals.	*dóktar ţiŖENţyif raBOtayit f TŖOX GOspitaļix.*	Доктор Терентьев работает в трех госпиталях.
We work in four different places.	*mí raBOtayim na chitiŖOX RAzŋix ɱisTAX.*	Мы работаем на четырех разных местах.
I don't know anything about your five roubles.	*ya ŋi chiVO ŋi ZNAyu a váshix p̧iŢI ruBĻAX.*	Я ничего не знаю о ваших пяти рублях.
Our armies are now in eight places.	*náshi ARɱiyi ţiP̧EŖ v vaşM̧I ɱiSTAX.*	Наши армии теперь в восьми местах.

The numbers from 2 on have the same endings in the Locative as in the Genitive: *DVUX*, *TŖOX*, *chitiŖOX*, *p̧iŢI*, and so on. The adjectives and nouns that go with them are in the Locative Plural form.

What were you talking about?	*a CHOM ví gavaŖIļi?*	О чем вы говорили?
About whom are you talking?	*a KOM ví gavaŖIţi?*	О ком вы говорите?
About him.	*a ŊOM.*	О нем.
About her.	*a ŊEY.*	О ней.
About them.	*a ŊIX.*	О них.
About you.	*a VAS.*	О вас.
They are always talking about us.	*aŋí fşiGDA gavaŖAT a NAS.*	Они всегда говорят о нас.

The Locative forms of the pronouns are as above.

What did she say about me?	*SHTO aná aba MŊE skaZAla?*	Что она обо мне сказала?
There's nothing (of) Russian about me.	*va MŊE RUskava ŋi chiVO ŊET.*	Во мне русского ничего нет.

The Locative of *YA* is *MŊE*. Before this word the prepositions have the longer forms *aba* and *va*.

D. SOME VERBS

Here are some more verbs of Type 1. Notice that in the Present tense a plain consonant gets palatal before the endings that begin with -, *o* (unstressed -, *i*). Notice also that the Past tense of the verb *iŢI* is irregular and that the accent shifts in the Past tense of some verbs.

ZHIŢ	to live
zhiVU	I live
zhiYOSH	you live (familiar)
zhiYOT	he (she, it) lives
zhiYOM	we live
zhiYOţi	you live
zhiVUT	they live
ZHIL	he lived (also: I lived, man speaking, etc.)
zhiLA	she lived (also: I lived, woman speaking, etc.)
ZHIla	it lived
ZHIļi	they lived (also: we lived, you lived)
iŢI	to be going (on foot), walking
iDU	I am going
iḐOSH	you are going (familiar)
iḐOT	he (she, it) is going
iḐOM	we are going
iḐOţi	you are going
iDUT	they are going
SHOL	he was going
SHLA	she was going
SHLO	it was going
SHĻI	they were going
YExaţ	to be going (not on foot), riding, driving, traveling
YEdu	I am riding
YEḑish	you are riding (familiar)
YEḑit	he (she, it) is riding
YEḑim	we are riding
YEḑiţi	you are riding
YEḑut	they are riding
YExal	he was riding
YExala	she was riding
YExala	it was riding
YExaļi	they were riding
BIŢ	to be
BUdu	I'll be
BUḑish	you'll be (familiar)
BUḑit	he (she, it) will be
BUḑim	we'll be

BUḑiţi	you'll be
BUdut	they'll be
BIL	he was
biLA	she was
BIla	it was
BIļi	they were
ƝE bil	he was not
ɲi biLA	she was not
ƝE bila	it was not
ƝE biļi	they were not

Here are some more Verbs of Type **2**:

paftaŖIŢ	to repeat
paftaŖU	I'll repeat
paftaŖISH	you'll repeat (familiar)
paftaŖIT	he (she, it) will repeat
paftaŖIM	we'll repeat
paftaŖIţi	you'll repeat
paftaŖAT	they'll repeat
paftaŖIL	he (I) repeated
paftaŖIla	she (it, I) repeated
paftaŖIļi	they (we, you) repeated
paznaKOɱiţ	to make acquainted, to introduce
paznaKOmļu	I'll introduce
paznaKOɱish	you'll introduce
paznaKOɱit	he (she, it) will introduce
paznaKOɱim	we'll introduce
paznaKOɱiţi	you'll introduce
paznaKOɱit	they'll introduce
paznaKOɱil	he (I) introduced
paznaKOɱila	she (it, I) introduced
paznaKOɱiļi	they (we, you) introduced

The verb *xaŢEŢ* 'to want' has an irregular Present:

xaCHU	I want
XOchish	you want (familiar)
XOchit	he (she, it) wants
xaŢIM	we want
xaŢIţi	you want
xaŢAT	they want
xaŢEL	He (I) wanted
xaŢEla	she (it, I) wanted
xaŢEļi	they (we, you) wanted

2. Covering English and Russian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering first the English, then the Russian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences.*

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Russian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

1. Your friend Ignatyev takes you into a hotel restaurant. You like the looks of the place. You say:
   a. *mŋé NRAv̦itsa vásha DOCH.*
   b. *mŋé NRAv̦itsa état ŗistaRAN.*
   c. *yá xachú KUshiţ v étam ŗistaRAŋi.*
2. Mr. Ignatyev points to a seat and asks if you would like to sit there. You would; so you say:
   a. *DA, mŋé NRAv̦itsa vásha DOCH.*
   b. *spaŞIba, yá xachú P̦Iva.*
   c. *DA, éta M̦Esta mŋé NRAv̦itsa.*
3. Mr. Ignatyev wants to know whether you like Moscow. He asks:
   a. *GD̦E ví zhiV̦Oţi v maSKV̦E?*
   b. *kák vám NRAv̦itsa maSKVA?*
   c. *kaGDA ví p̦ŗiYExaļi v maSKVU?*
4. You like it very much in Moscow. You say:
   a. *yá ŋi DAvna p̦ŗiYExal v maSKVU.*
   b. *yá p̦ŗiYExal v maSKVU fchiRA.*
   c. *mŋé Ochiŋ NRAv̦itsa maSKVA.*

5. You want to know what sort of a hotel you are in. You ask:
   a. *kaKOY état ŗistaRAN?*
   b. *kaKAya éta gaŞŢIņica?*
   c. *kaKOya éta M̧Asa?*

6. Mr. Ignatyev wants to know how the summers are in America. He asks:
   a. *z̧iMOY kaKAya paGOda v aM̧Eŗiķi?*
   b. *v̧iSNOY kaKAya u vás tám paGOda?*
   c. *ĻEtam kaKAya u vás v aM̧Eŗiķi paGOda?*

7. You want to tell him that it is hot in summer in your country. You say:
   a. *Oşiņyu u nás praXLAdna.*
   b. *ĻEtam u vás ZHARka.*
   c. *ĻEtam u nás ZHARka.*

8. You want to add that it is cold there in winter. You say:
   a. *z̧iMOY u vás XOladna.*
   b. *z̧iMOY u nás XOladna.*
   c. *z̧iMOY u nás MNOga ŞŅEga.*

9. Mr. Ignatyev thinks cold winter weather is bad for people. He says:
   a. *Z̧Imņiya xalaDA ņi xaraSHI ḑļa ļuḐEY.*
   b. *z̧iMOY z̧ḑéş MNOga ļuḐEY.*
   c. *z̧iMOY z̧ḑéş MNOga baļNIX.*

10. You tell him that Americans are healthy people. You say:
    a. *am̧iŗiKANci, xaROshiya ĻUḑi.*
    b. *am̧iŗiKANci MNOga KUshiyut.*
    c. *am̧iŗiKANci, zdaROvaya ĻUḑi.*

11. Mr. Ignatyev doesn't know where Boston is. You tell him:
    a. *yá ņi kaGDA ŅE bil v baSTOņi.*
    b. *baSTON na vaSTOķi aM̧Eŗiķi.*
    c. *mayá şiSTRA zhiV̧OT v baSTOņi.*

12. You look out of the window and see that it is raining. You say:
    a. *ţiP̧EŖ iḐOT ŞŅEK.*
    b. *CHAsta iḐOT DOSHCH.*
    c. *ţiP̧EŖ iḐOT DOSHCH.*

Section D—Listening In

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Russian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Russian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Russian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat each conversation, if necessary; then take parts and carry on the conversation.

1. *Ivan and Boris talk about Ivan's brother.*

Unit 5, Record Side 4, beginning. (78 RPM)

iVAN: *ZDRAstvuyţi taVAŗishch!*
KAK VI?

baŖIS: *xaraSHO, spaŞIba.*
a VI?
mŋé skaZAļi shtó vásh STARshiy BRAT p̧ŗiYExal v OTpusk iz maSKVI.

iVAN: *DA, ón p̧ŗiYExal iz maSKVI.*

baŖIS: *yimu NRAy̧itsa maSKVA?*

iVAN: *DA, Ochiŋ.*
TAM MNOga xaROshix ŗistaRAnaf i p̧ŗiYAtnix ḐEvushik.

baŖIS: *DA; ḐEvushķi tám p̧ŗiYAtnaya,*
nó paGOda ŋi óchiŋ p̧ŗiYAtnaya.
z̧iMOY tám MNOga baļNIX.

(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 5, after 2nd spiral.

iVAN: *DA.*
móy BRAT TO zhi bíl BOļin.
ón bíl v GOspitaļi.
ţiP̧EŖ yimú NAda YExaţ na YUK.

baŖIS: *kuDA ón YEḑit v OTpusk?*

iVAN: *mayá şiSTRA zhiŊOT v gaRAX.*
ón paYEḑit tuDA.

baŖIS: *v gaRAX óchiŋ XOladna.*

iVAN: *ŊET; ŋi Ochiŋ.*

baŖIS: *KAK ŋi XOladna?*
tám ŞŊEK.

iVAN: *DA; nó aNA ŋi zhiŊOT TAM gḑe ŞŊEK.*
v gaRAX NOchyu XOladna nó ḐŊOM ţiPLO.

baŖIS: *yá ZHIL v gaRAX v aⱮEŗiķi, f kaļiFORŋiyi, i TAM bíla XOladna.*

iVAN: *DA, nó ŋi ĻEtam.*
yá xachú payéxaţ tuDA POşļi vayNI.

2. *Ivan and George run into each other at the station.*

Unit 5, Record Side 4, after 1st spiral. (78 RPM)

iVAN: *ZDRAstvuy, ģiORģiy!*
GḐE tí BIL?

ģiORģiy: *yá bíl v GOspitaļi.*
móy DRUK tám.

iVAN: *SHTO ón tám ḐElayit?*

ģiORģiy: *ŋi chiVO ŋi ḐElayit.*
ón baļNOY.

iVAN: *ZHALka.*
yá ŋi ZNAL.

ģiORģiy: *kaŊEchna tí ŋi ZNAL.*
YA ţiḃé ŋi skaZAL.

iVAN: *z̧ḑéş daVOĻna XOladna.*

ģiORģiy: *DA.*
na vagZAļi fşiGDA XOladna z̧iMOY,
a ĻEtam ZHARka.

iVAN: *MŊE paGOda z̧ḑéş ŋi NRAv̧itsa.*
yá Ochiŋ xaCHU uYExaţ.

baŖIS: *izv̧iNIţi, paZHALsta;*
VOT móy DRUK.
mí iḑóm na vagZAL.

ģiORģiy: *kuDA tí XOchish uYExaţ?*

iVAN: *tuDA gḑé fşiGDA v̧iSNA i ĻEta,*
i fşigdá ţiPLO,
i pŗiYAtnaya paGOda.

ģiORģiy: *GḐE fşigdá ţiPLO i pŗiYAtna?*
tí ZNAyish GḐE?

iVAN: *YA ŋi ZNAyu.*

ģiORģiy: *ZHALka.*
AX, kák pŗiYAtna bíla bi paYExaţ tuDA!

iVAN: *kák xaraSHO bíla bi ZHIŢ tám gḑé ţiPLO ḐŊOM i praXLAdna NOchyu!*

ģiORģiy: *DA, i ŋi MNOga daZHDZHA,*
ŞŊEK tóļka inaGDA.

iVAN: *NU, daVOĻna daVOĻna!*
mí ŋi ZNAyim shtó mí gavaŖIM.

ģiORģiy: *DA; yá ŋi zdaROF.*
Z̧ḐEŞ XOladna.
payḐOM!

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Russian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Russian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Russian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Russian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the models outlined below fairly closely; then change the situations somewhat. By now you have a fair amount of material that you can bring into your conversations. Invent new combinations of subject matter.

Work through these situations, saying in Russian whatever fits the situation, taking parts as you have done in previous units.

1. Two members of the group compare the weather of different regions—the north, south, east, or west. Compare the weather at different seasons of the year, whether it rains much or not, how cold, and the like.
2. Two friends discuss their plans for the next vacation or furlough (both words are *OTpusk* in Russian). They tell where they were the last time. Compare the weather, whether or not there are mountains, and the like.
3. You meet a friend and ask him how he is. He says he's not so good. You ask if he's sick, and he says he isn't well. You say it is rather cold where you two are, and that cold weather isn't good for sick people. He says, he is very warm; it is hot there. You tell him he's sick and should go to the hospital or to a doctor. You offer to go there with him.
4. A friend tells you he is going to U.S.S.R. (in Russian the es-es-es-ér—same form for all cases.) You tell him it is very cold there and it snows a lot. He says that people are healthy in the mountains, and it is cold there and there's snow, too. You tell him that they have heavy rains in the U.S.S.R. He says he is going to the mountains in the south of Russia. Sick people go there on leave, so he is pleased at going there.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

a, ab, aba **(о, об, обо)** about

baļNOY **(больной)** sick; sick person
BOļin **(болен)** he is sick
baļNA **(больна)** she is sick
baļNI **(больны)** they are sick

CHAsta **(часто)** often

daVOĻna **(довольно)** enough
ḐEŊ **(день)** day
ḐYOM **(днем)** in daytime; in the afternoon
ḑļa **(для)** for
DOSHCH, DOZHDZH **(дождь)** rain

fchiRA **(вчера)** yesterday
fşiGDA **(всегда)** always
FŞO **(все)** all; *fşo VŖEɱa* **(все время)** all the time

gaRA **(гора)** mountain

iḐOT **(идет)** is going; *DOSHCH iḐOT, iḐOD DOSHCH* **(дождь идет, идет дождь)** it's raining
inaGDA **(иногда)** sometimes

kaKOY **(какой)** what kind of

ĻEta **(лето)** summer;
ĻEtam **(летом)** in summer

MOzhna **(можно)** it is possible; one can

NAda **(надо)** it is necessary: *yimu NAda* **(ему надо)** he has to

NOCH **(ночь)** night
NOchyu **(ночью)** at night
NRAv̧itsa **(нравится)** it is pleasing; *mŋé NRAv̧itsa* **(мне нравится)** I like it

Oşiŋ **(осень)** autumn
Oşiŋyu **(осенью)** in autumn

paGOda **(погода)** weather
praXLAdna **(прохладно)** it is cool
pŗiYAtnay **(приятный)** pleasant

raŞIya **(Россия)** Russia
RAznay **(разный)** various

ŞEv̧ir **(север** the north
SHOL **(шел)** he was going; *SHOL DOSHCH* **(шел дождь)** it was raining

ŞŅEK, *ŞŅEG* **(снег)** snow; *iḐOT ŞŅEK*, *ŞŅEK iḐOT* **(идет снег, снег идет)** it is snowing

ţiPLO **(тепло)** it is warm
TOĻka **(только)** only

va **(во)** in, longer form of **v (в)**
vaSTOK **(восток)** the east
v̧iSNA **(весна)** spring
    v̧iSNOY **(весной)** in spring
VŖEm̧a **(время)** time; *va VŖEm̧a* **(во время)** at the time

xaraSHI **(хороши)** they are good

XOlat, *XOlad* **(холод)** cold weather, the cold
XOladna **(холодно)** it is cold
YUK, *YUG* **(юг)** the south

ZApat, *ZApad* **(запад)** the west
zdaROvay **(здоровый)** healthy
z̧iMA **(зима)** winter
    z̧iMOY **(зимой)** in winter
Z̧IMņiy **(зимний)** of winter, wintry
ZHARka **(жарка)** it is hot

UNIT 6

REVIEW

SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN RUSSIAN?

To the Group Leader: This unit is intended to furnish the group with a thorough review of all the work done to date: understanding of vocabulary, use of vocabulary, and grammar. Pronunciation should be the object of attention whenever the students are talking. Either the Guide or, if there is no Guide, the Leader and other students should correct faulty pronunciation.

Section A is a true-and-false quiz which is to be read to the group by the Guide or the phonograph records. Each student is to write the numbers from 1 to 80 on a sheet of paper. After hearing each statement in Russian, the students are to mark T opposite the number of that statement if they consider it a true statement, and F if they consider it false. If the students understand the Russian they will have no difficulty in deciding whether or not the statements are true or false.

Use the first item in the quiz as a practice item. When you are ready to start, announce "Statement 1," and give the signal to the Guide to begin, or put on the phonograph record. The Guide or record will then read the Russian statement: "ɼistaRAN, ɲi kaGDA ɲi na vagZAȴi" and will repeat the statement once more. Explain to the group that, since the meaning of this statement is: "A restaurant is never at a railway station" they should write an F after the figure 1 on their papers. Then announce "Statement 2" and continue with the Guide or phonograph record. Each statement in Russian is to be presented twice. When working with a Guide, continue to call the number of each statement throughout the quiz so that the students will have no trouble keeping the proper place. Take the quiz with the rest of the group.

In the back of the Guide's manual you will find a list giving the correct answers (T or F) for the Russian items, together with the English translations. After the quiz is over, read to the group the correct answers, T or F for each item. The students are to check their papers. Find the average number of correct answers per student for your group and include your own answers. Any student who gets less than the average number of answers or less than 80% (whichever is higher) correct, needs more thorough study and review of the preceding units.

Use the rest of the period to repeat the Russian expressions for which students had the wrong answer and give the English equivalents of these statements if they wish to have them. Be sure that the students understand the meaning of all the items which they got wrong; those are the items on which their vocabulary is weak and needs further study.

This unit provides several tests which will help you to make sure that you have thoroughly covered the work of the first five *Learning Units* of the course. They will show you what you may need to restudy or review.

Section A is a true-false quiz. After you have marked the numbers 1 to 80 on a sheet of paper, your Leader will have the Guide read, or will play the phonograph records containing a number of statements in Russian. As you hear each sentence, decide whether the statement it makes is true or false. Decide whether the statement is *usually* true or *usually* false. Do not go into particular cases. If you think the statement is true, mark *T* opposite the number corresponding to the number of the sentences that has just been spoken. If you think it is false, mark *F* opposite the number. The first item will be a practice item and will show you just how you are to proceed with the rest of the sentences.

After you have done this work, the Leader will go through your answers with you as a group, and will tell you which statements are true and which are false. Score your paper, counting one for each correct answer. The Leader will figure out the average score for your group. If your score falls below the average of the group as a whole, you need more study and review of the previous units.

Use the rest of the period to go over the sentences again with your Guide or records. For each item on which you are wrong, be sure that you understand why you are wrong, and what the true meaning of the item is.

If you come out well on this quiz, that indicates that you have a pretty good understanding of practically all the work you have covered to date.

Section B—How Would You Say It?

(Individual Study)

Go through the following English sentences and prepare to say the equivalents for the English at your next group meeting. *Do not write anything down*, but say the Russian equivalents out loud and keep practicing them aloud until you have the Russian down so cold that when the English is fired at you point-blank you can fire the Russian right back without any hesitation.

I

1. How d'you do, Mr. Ivanov?
2. How are you?
3. I'm fine, thank you; and you?
4. I don't understand.

5. Please speak slowly.
6. Excuse me; where is the railroad station, please?
7. The railroad station is to the right.
8. I want cigarettes and matches, please.
9. Do you want some tea or coffee?
10. This costs three roubles.

II

1. Where are you going (on foot)?
2. Where are you driving to?
3. I'm driving to the railway station.
4. My brother is at the railway station.
5. My older son is in the army.
6. I want to meet him.
7. He has a furlough.
8. He'll meet me here.
9. My wife isn't here.
10. Please give me a match.

III

1. Do you know that girl?
2. I want to introduce you to her.
3. She speaks English well.
4. Who is that young man?
5. That is her older brother.
6. He does not know that I'm here.
7. He has gone off to the hospital.
8. Let's go into the restaurant.
9. Give us some tea, please.
10. I want some milk and some sugar, please.

IV

1. My sisters are going to America.
2. Do they know John Smith?
3. He is one of my friends.
4. He has recently arrived from America.
5. I am studying Russian.
6. They are in Moscow.
7. What are they doing there?
8. I am going to Moscow.
9. That will be very pleasant.
10. My mother has been in America many times.

V

1. It's rather cool here in spring, but it's hot in summer.
2. It's cold in winter, but warm in the fall.
3. There are big mountains there.
4. It's raining.

5. It's snowing.
6. Cold weather in winter is not good for sick people.
7. Boston is in the east.
8. San Francisco is in the west.
9. In the north it is cold.
10. In the south it is hot.

Section C—How Did You Say It?

To the Group Leader: Simply follow the directions given below.

This Section is a drill on the work you have done in Section B of this unit. Keep your book closed. The Leader will call on members of the group (but not in any fixed order) to speak the Russian equivalents of the English sentences given in Section B. The work must be kept moving rapidly, and interest should never lag. If the Guide is present he is to listen and correct your pronunciation and expressions.

This section is intended to give you a check on your ability to use the vocabulary you have learned.

Section D—How Would You Say It? (*Cont.*)

(Individual Study)

Go through these English sentences and prepare to say the equivalents for the English, just as you did in Section B of this unit. Do not write anything down, but have everything well fixed in your mind, and ready to speak in the next group meeting.

I

1. What do you want to eat?
2. I want soup, meat, and potatoes.
3. I haven't any matches.
4. How much does this cost?
5. There is a restaurant to the right.
6. I have the cigarettes.
7. I have some cigarettes.
8. There is no beer.
9. I want a cigarette.
10. Gi[illegible] a match, please.

II

1. I don't understand you.
2. The Russian language is difficult.
3. I have one rouble.
4. My wife speaks Russian.
5. Is this letter yours?
6. Here's cold milk!
7. These young people are Russians.
8. These letters are mine.
9. Where's the hotel?—Here it is!
10. Where's the letter?—Here it is!

III

1. Give me a glass of water.
2. There are lots of big houses here.
3. I have lots of cigarettes.
4. My brother has the letter.
5. How many children have you?
6. He has two sisters.
7. She has five roubles.
8. She hasn't five roubles.
9. I haven't two roubles.
10. There aren't any good restaurants here.

IV

1. Do you know our younger sister?
2. We'll meet our daughter there.
3. I want to drink tea.
4. Give us three cups of coffee.
5. Give us five cups of coffee.
6. I met one of your friends there.
7. I know those two girls.
8. I know them well.
9. Do you understand me?
10. Will you meet us at the restaurant?

V

1. Who told you that?
2. Now they are talking about the army.
3. They often eat in that big restaurant.
4. I don't even want to talk about those people.
5. I don't know anything about your five roubles.
6. What are you talking about?
7. We're talking about the Russian army.
8. About whom are you talking?
9. We're talking about my brother.
10. You're always talking about him.

SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT? (*Cont.*)

To the Group Leader: Simply follow the directions given below.

As in Section C, the Leader will go around the group and ask various members to supply (with books closed) the Russian equivalents for the sentences given in Section D. If the Guide is present, he will listen and correct pronunciation and expressions.

This section is intended to give you a check on your understanding of the way the language is built and functions.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION

The members of the group will carry on short conversations lasting not more than 1 to 2 minutes, in which the entire contents of the preceding units should be used. Everyone should have a chance to take part as many times as possible. The situations of the conversations should be varied and combined as much as possible. Each conversation should begin with greetings and inquiries after each other's health, and should end with formal leave-taking. Here are just a few out of many possibilities for conversations:

1. Ask someone where you can find a hotel, restaurant school, etc. He tells you, but you have difficulty understanding, so you ask him to repeat and to speak slower. He tells you again, perhaps adding a few more definite directions. You thank him and say goodbye.
2. You meet a friend and ask him if he'd like to have something to eat or drink with you. He accepts and suggests a restaurant. You say there is a good hotel to the right or left; you want to go there. He agrees. You go in and order dinner.
3. After having ordered, you ask him about his family. His brother has just come from Moscow. He was working there in a hotel or a hospital. You tell him your brother is in the army, but now he is on leave. He asks where he is and you tell him—(Florida, California, the east, west, north or south).
4. He asks you about your sisters. One is ill, the other is a teacher of English or Russian in a school in Moscow, Boston, or some other place. He tells you that he is studying English too. A friend of his has been to America many times, and they have been speaking English together. You call the waitress and ask how much your meal or drinks cost. She tells you and you pay.
5. You run into a friend of yours and his sister. He

introduces you. She asks if you are an American. You tell her you are, and she asks from what part of the country you come. You tell her the section of the country. Your friend then asks what the weather is like there. You tell him. He asks if there are mountains in that part and you answer him. The sister then says she's hungry, and you go off to a restaurant.

6. You meet an older man, a friend of your parents'. He asks you about your family. You tell him about their health, and ask him about his wife and children. He tells you one is in the army, one is in Moscow, one is in America, etc. You tell him about your family and what they are doing—in school, working in a hotel, or restaurant or hospital—a teacher, waiter, or doctor.
7. You meet someone on the street and ask him where he is going. He is going to Moscow. His brother is very sick. You say you heard his brother went off to the army. He says he was on furlough, but now he is in the hospital. The doctor told him that it would be good for the brother to go to the mountains.
8. Someone comes up to you and asks you where the hospital is. He says he wants a doctor. You ask him if he is not well. He says he is sick. His friend had told him he would be here, but he isn't. You tell him how to find the hospital and ask if you may (*mózhna*) go with him. He thanks you, and asks if you know Giorgiy Ivanov. You do, so he asks you to tell him that he is in the hospital. You say you will.
9. You meet a friend from America. You start talking about how wonderful the weather was there. You compare notes on the different seasons, the different parts of the country. He says that Russia is a big country too, and they have all kinds of weather there.
10. Someone comes up to you and asks if you have a match. You offer him one and he asks if you'd like a cigarette. You accept, and he suggests a drink. You go off to order beer. He tells you he was meeting his sister here, but she isn't there yet. You ask him what she does. He says she works in Moscow and goes to school at night. You say it isn't good for people to work all the time. He says she's healthy, and she likes Moscow very much. You ask him if she knows where he is, and he replies that she always knows that where there's beer, there's her brother.

PART TWO

UNIT 7

AT THE AIRPORT

In this unit you will get your first *Hints on Spelling*. Notice that the *Conventional Spelling* is now given in the middle column and the *Aids to Listening* in the right hand column. From this unit on you will pay more attention to the ordinary Russian spelling.

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Go once through the *Basic Sentences* in unison, concentrating on the *Aids to Listening*, as you have done before. Then go through the *Hints on Spelling and Pronunciation*. Go once through the *Basic Sentences* individually trying to follow the *Conventional Spelling* as much as possible. The last time through individually, you should be able to follow the *Conventional Spelling* without any trouble.

1. Basic Sentences

Mr. Ilyin sees Mr. Stone hurrying down the street.

Unit 7, Record Side 1, beginning. (78 RPM) **(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 7, beginning.**

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING	AIDS TO LISTENING
	Ilyin	
why	почему́	*pa chiMU*
so	та́к	*TAK*
(you) are hurrying	спеши́те	*spiSHIţi*
(you) are going away	уезжа́ете	*uyiZHDZHAyiţi*
Why are you in such a hurry?	Почему́ вы́ та́к спеши́те?	*pa chiMU ví TAK spiSHIţi?*
Are you going away?	Вы́ уезжа́ете?	*ví uyiZHDZHAyiţi?*

	Stone	
because	потому́ что́	*pa taMU shtó*
(it is) necessary	на́до	*NAda*
tomorrow	за́втра	*ZAftra*
in Stalingrad	в Сталингра́де	*f staļinGRAḑi*
Yes, I'm in a hurry because I have to be in Stalingrad tomorrow.	Да́, я́ спешу́, потому́ что́ мне́ на́до бы́ть за́втра в Сталингра́де.	*DA, yá sp̧iSHU, pa tamú shtó mņé NAda bíţ ZAftra f staļinGRAḑi.*
	Ilyin	
(you) can	мо́жете	*MOzhiţi*
(to) be on time	успе́ть	*uSP̧EŢ*
today*	сего́дня	*şiVO ḑņa*
But you can't make it today!	Но́ вы́ не мо́жете успе́ть сего́дня!	*nó ví ņi MOzhiţi uSP̧EŢ şiVO ḑņa!*
train	по́езд	*POyist, POyizd*
leaves	отхо́дит	*atXOḑit*
at 2:17	в два́ семна́дцать	*v DVA şimNATciţ*
now	сейча́с	*şéy CHAS, şi CHAS*
already	уже́	*uZHE*
after two o'clock ('the third hour')	тре́тий ча́с	*TŖEţiy CHAS*
The train for Stalingrad leaves at 2:17, and (now) it's already after two.	По́езд в Сталингра́д отхо́дит в два́ семна́дцать, а сейча́с уже́ тре́тий ча́с.	*POyist f staļinGRAT atXOḑit v DVA şimNATciţ, a şi CHAS uzhé TŖEţiy CHAS.*
	Stone	
Is it?	Да́?	*DA?*

---

*Not on the record.

Ilyin

minutes (G.P.)	мину́т	*ɱiNUT*
(of the) third (hour)	тре́тьего	*TŖEţyiva*
Yes, it's (already) five minutes past two.	Да́, уже́ пя́ть мину́т тре́тьего.	*DA; uzhé P̧AŢ ɱinút TŖEţyiva.*

Stone

(by) airplane	самолётом	*samaĻOtam*
But I'm going there by airplane. (and) not by train.	Но́ я́ е́ду туда́ не по́ездом, а самолётом.	*nó yá YEdu tudá ŋi POyizdam, a samaĻOtam.*

Ilyin

Oh, you don't say!	Да́, что́ вы́ говори́те!	*DA SHTO ví gavaŖIţi!*
wanted	хоте́л	*xaŢEL*
(to) fly	лета́ть	*ļiTAŢ*
I've always wanted to fly.	Я всегда́ хоте́л лета́ть.	*yá fşiGDA xaţél ļiTAŢ.*

Stone

I've flown a lot.	Я мно́го ра́з лета́л.	*YA MNOga ráz ļiTAL.*

Unit 7, Record Side 2, beginning. (78 RPM)

I like it very much.	Мне́ это о́чень нра́вится.	*mŋé éta Ochiŋ NRAyitsa.*

Ilyin

well!	ну́!	*NU!*
Oh well, you'll have time.	Ну́, вы́ успе́ете!	*NU, ví uSP̧Eyiţi!*
(have) bought	купи́ли	*kuP̧Iļi*
ticket	биле́т	*b̧iĻET*
Have you bought [your] ticket yet?	Вы́ уже́ купи́ли биле́т?	*ví uzhé kuP̧Iļi b̧iĻET?*

	Stone	
No, that's why I'm hurrying.	Нéт, вóт почемý я спешý.	*NET; VOT pa chimú yá spiSHU.*
flies off	отлетáет	*aţļiTAyit*
twelve	двенáдцать	*dv̧iNATciţ*
The plane leaves at three twelve.	Самолёт отлетáет в трú двенáдцать.	*samaĻOT aţļiTAyit f TŖI dv̧iNATciţ.*
	Ilyin	
would be	бы́ли бы	*BIļi bi*
at half past eight ('at half of the ninth')	в половúне девя́того	*f palaYIni ḑiYAtava*
By train you wouldn't be in Stalingrad until half past eight ('you would be in S. only at half of the ninth').	Пóездом вы́ бы́ли бы в Сталингрáде тóлько в половúне девя́того.	*POyizdam ví bíļi bi f staļinGRAḑi tóļka f palaYIņi ḑiYAtava.*
without	бéз	*B̧EZ, B̧ES*
quarter, quarter hour*	чéтверть	*CHEtv̧irţ*
quarter to five	без чéтверти пя́ть	*b̧is CHEtv̧irţi P̧AŢ*
But by plane you'll be there at a quarter to five.	А самолётом вы́ тáм бýдете в без чéтверти пя́ть.	*a samaĻOtam ví tám BUḑiţi v b̧is CHEtv̧irţi P̧AŢ.*
	Stone	
(they) are sold	продаю́тся	*pradaYUTsa*
in town	в гóроде	*v GOraḑi*
Do they sell tickets in town?	Продаю́тся билéты в гóроде?	*pradaYUTsa b̧iĻEti v GOraḑi?*

---

*Not on the record.

	Ilyin	
(at the) ticket office	в ка́ссе	*f KAşşi*
(at the) airport	на аэродро́ме	*na airaDROm̧i*
No; only in the ticket office at the airport.	Не́т; то́лько в ка́ссе на аэродро́ме.	*ŅET; TOĻka KAşşi na airaDROm̧i.*
Can [I] go with you?	Мо́жно с ва́ми пойти́?	*MOzhna s vam̧i payŢI?*
	Stone	
Of course; let's go!	Коне́чно; пойдём!	*kaŅEshna; payḐOM!*
At the airport.		
	Ilyin	
Here's the ticket office.	Во́т ка́сса.	*VOT KAssa.*
	Stone	
Good!	Хорошо́!	*xaraSHO!*
Wait for me a minute, please.	Подожди́те меня́ мину́ту, пожа́луйста.	*padaZHḐIţi m̧iņá m̧iNUtu, paZHALsta.*
(I) will buy	куплю́	*kuPĻU*
then *or* next	пото́м	*pa TOM*
(to) drink up (to take a drink)	вы́пить	*VIpiţ*
I'll buy the ticket, and then we'll go and have a beer together.	Я куплю́ биле́т, а пото́м мы́ вме́сте пойдём вы́пить пи́ва.	*YA kupļú b̧iĻET, a pa TOM mí M̧Eşţi payḐOM VIpiţ P̧Iva.*

Unit 7, Record Side 3, beginning. (78 RPM)

	Ilyin	
Fine; I'll wait for you.	Хорошо́, я́ ва́с подожду́.	*xaraSHO; yá vás padaZHDU.*
You'll make it, of course?	Вы́ успе́ете, коне́чно?	*ví uSP̧Eyiţi kaņéshna?*

	Stone	
Yes; we'll have twenty-five minutes.	Дá, у нác бýдет двáдцать пя́ть минýт.	*DA; u nás búḑit DVATciţ P̧AŢ ɱiNUT.*
In the ticket office.		
	Stone	
Give me a ticket to Stalingrad, please.	Дáйте мнé, пожáлуйста, билéт в Сталингрáд.	*DAYţi mŋé, paZHALsta, b̧iĻET f staļinGRAT.*
How much is it?	Скóлько óн стóит?	*SKOĻka ón STOyit?*
	Ticket Seller	
forty	сóрок	*SOrak*
[That's] 21 roubles and 47 kopeks.	Двáдцать оди́н рýбль сóрок сéмь копéек.	*DVATciţ aḐIN RUBĻ, SOrak ŞEM̧ kaP̧Eyik.*
He pays and joins Ilyin.		
The ticket costs 21 roubles.	Билéт стóит двáдцать оди́н рýбль.	*b̧iĻET stóyit DVAtciţ aḐIN RUBĻ.*
Why didn't I go by train?	Почемý я́ не поéхал пóездом?	*pa chiMU yá ŋi paYExal POyizdam?*
	Ilyin	
Come and have some beer with me.	Пойдёмте со мнóй вы́пить пи́ва.	*payḐOMţi sa MNOY VIpiţ P̧Iva.*
	Stone	
Thanks;	Спаси́бо,	*spaŞIba;*
I'm really thirsty, but we [will] have to hurry.	я́ óчень хочý пи́ть, нó нáм нáдо спеши́ть.	*yá Ochiŋ xachú P̧IŢ, nó nám NAda spiSHIŢ.*

Before you go through the *Basic Sentences* a second time, read the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation and Spelling

Up to now you have not been asked to pay any particular attention to the regular or conventional spelling. All you needed was something that would remind you as accurately as possible of the sounds you heard, and for that purpose the simplified spelling was better. Beginning with this unit, however, you should start learning the regular Russian spelling. To keep the two separate, where there might be confusion, we shall put the simplified spelling in square brackets, like this: Я очень хочу пить [*yá Ochiŋ xachú P̧IŢ*]. Don't be in too much of a hurry to learn the conventional spelling. In this and the next four units you will still have the simplified spelling to help you out; after that you will get it only for new words.

The first time you go through the *Basic Sentences* in this and the next few units, keep your eyes on the simplified spelling, since it more nearly represents the sounds you hear. The second time through, try to follow the conventional spelling, unless it tends to throw you off on the pronunciation. By the third repetition you should be able to watch only the conventional spelling, and still pronounce the words as you have up to this point. The most important thing for you to remember is that YOU ALREADY KNOW HOW TO PRONOUNCE RUSSIAN. Don't let the different appearance of familiar words change your pronunciation the least bit.

Here is the Russian alphabet as it appears in ordinary printing. In the left-hand column we give the capital letters, in the second column the small letters, in the third column the names of the letters, and in the right-hand column the sound that is most commonly represented by each letter. The two left-hand columns contain Russian letters. The two right-hand columns contain directions about sounds; therefore they are printed in our simplified phonetic alphabet, and enclosed in square brackets.

CAPITAL	SMALL	RUSSIAN NAME	USUAL SOUND VALUE
А	а	[*A*]	[*a*]
Б	б	[*B̧E*]	[*b*]
В	в	[*V̧E*]	[*v*]
Г	г	[*ÇE*]	[*g*]
Д	д	[*Ḑ E*]	[*d*]

CAPITAL	SMALL	RUSSIAN NAME	USUAL SOUND VALUE
Е	е	[*YE*]	[*ye, yo*]
Ж	ж	[*ZHE*]	[*zh*]
З	з	[*Z̧E*]	[*z*]
И	и	[*I*]	[*yi*]
Й	й	[*I s KRAtkay*]	[*y*]
К	к	[*KA*]	[*k*]
Л	л	[*EL*]	[*l*]
М	м	[*EM*]	[*m*]
Н	н	[*EN*]	[*n*]
О	о	[*O*]	[*o*]
П	п	[*P̧E*]	[*p*]
Р	р	[*ER*]	[*r*]
С	с	[*ES*]	[*s*]
Т	т	[*ŢE*]	[*t*]
У	у	[*U*]	[*u*]
Ф	ф	[*EF*]	[*f*]
Х	х	[*XA*]	[*x*]
Ц	ц	[*CE*]	[*c*]
Ч	ч	[*CHE*]	[*ch*]
Ш	ш	[*SHA*]	[*sh*]
Щ	щ	[*SHCHA*]	[*shch*]
Ъ	ъ	[*TYORday znák*]	———
Ы	ы	[*yiRI*]	[*i*]
Ь	ь	[*M̧AXķiy znák*]	———

CAPITAL	SMALL	RUSSIAN NAME	USUAL SOUND VALUE
Э	э	[*E abaROtnaya*]	[*e*]
Ю	ю	[*YU*]	[*yu*]
Я	я	[*YA*]	[*ya*]

1. Accent.

Russian writing and printing is like English in failing to show which syllables are accented. For instance, in English conventional spelling the noun *convict* ('The convict escaped') and the verb *convict* ('They will convict him of treason') look alike, though they are stressed on different syllables. In the same way, in Russian, *GLAza* Genitive Singular 'of the eye' (*DVA GLAza* 'two eyes') and *glaZA* Nominative Plural 'eyes' are both written глаза. This does not often disturb a native, but for foreigners who are learning the language it is very troublesome and often leads them to mispronounce words.

In Units One to Six the Russian conventional spelling in the right-hand column is printed as the Russians print, with no marks to show the place of accent. If you thoroughly know all the words and phrases with their accent (as shown in the *Aids to Listening*), you can read aloud from the right-hand column; if you don't know the words and phrases, you can't pronounce from the right-hand column, because it does not show the accent. In this and the following Units, where you will be paying attention to the Russian conventional spelling, we shall put accent marks on the vowel letters of accented syllables, as follows:

We put two dots over the letter е when it represents accented [*O, ó*] or [*YO, yó*]; for instance жёны [*ZHOni*] wives', её [*yiYO*] 'her'.

We put an accent mark over all other letters that represent accented vowels; for instance: двá глáза [*DVA GLAza*] 'two eyes', глазá [*glaZA*] 'eyes', хорошó [*xaraSHO*] 'good', мéсто [*ⱮEsta*] 'place', нé было [*ƝE bila*] 'it was not'.

2. Variation of vowels.

Russian conventional spelling does not show the ordinary variation of vowels which is due to their slurring or weakening when they are unaccented. Each vowel is represented as though it were always stressed. Take for instance the preposition [*OT*] 'from'. This is the way it sounds when it is stressed, and the conventional spelling (от) fits this sound: óт роду [*OT radu*] 'from birth', óтпуск [*OTpusk*] 'furlough'. When it is unstressed it has the sound [*at*], but the conventional spelling fails to show this variation: от вокзáла [*at vagZAla*] 'from the station', отъезжáет [*atyiZHDZHAyit*] 'he (she, it) leaves'.

Another example: the word холодá [*xalaDA*] 'cold spells' in conventional spelling is written with the letter o in the first two syllables. Russian conventional spelling writes the o in the first syllable because in related words in which this syllable is stressed, the vowel is really [*O*]; for instance, хóлодно [*XOladna*] 'it is cold'. In the same way, the second syllable is conventionally written with the letter o on account of related forms like холóдный [*xaLOdnay*] 'cold'.

So even if we know which vowel to stress in a Russian word, the conventional spelling is still likely to mislead us by making us use the wrong vowel sounds in unstressed syllables. We have to get the habit of weakening and slurring all the unstressed vowels.

Always listen to the Guide or the record and imitate. The *Aids to Listening* will help you do this. The conventional Russian spelling does not show the actual sounds.

3. Variation of consonants.

Russian conventional spelling does not show the ordinary variation of sound between voiced and unvoiced mutes.

A voiced mute becomes unvoiced usually at the end of a word and always before an unvoiced mute. [illegible] Russian conventional spelling does not show th[illegible]hus, [*MUSH*, *MUZH*] 'husband' is spelled мýж because of forms like [*MUzha*] мýжа Genitive Singular: [*DVA MUzha*] двá мýжа 'two husbands'. And they use the letter з not only for forms like [*glaZA*] глазá 'eyes', but also for [*GLAS*, *GLAZ*] глáз 'eye' and [*GLAşķi*] глáзки 'little eyes'.

An unvoiced mute becomes voiced before a voiced mute (except [*v*]), but the spelling does not show this. For instance, the word [*TAK*] так 'thus, so' is written with the letter к always, even in a combination like [*TAG zhi*] тáкже 'also'.

4. Use of the vowel letters.

The letters а, э, ы, о, у represent vowels. Apart from the slurring of unstressed vowels, their values are as follows:

а	[*a*]:	там	[*TAM*] 'there'
э	[*e*]:	э́то	[*Eta*] 'this'
ы	[*i*]:	мы	[*MI*] 'we'
о	[*o*]:	он	[*ON*] 'he'
у	[*u*]:	ну	[*NU*] 'well now'

The letters я, е, и, ё, ю represent the same vowels, but usually tell also something about a preceding sound.

At the beginning of a word, after a vowel letter, and after the letters ь and ъ, these letters mean *y* plus vowel:

я [*ya*]: я́ [*YA*] 'I', моя́ женá [*mayá zhiNA*] 'my wife', друзья́ [*druȤYA*] 'friends'.

е [*ye*]: éду [*YEdu*] 'I am riding', моéй жены́ [*mayéy zhiNI*] 'of my wife', отъéхать [*atYExaţ*] 'to depart'.

и [*yi*]: и́м [*YIM*] 'to them', мои́ словá [*mayí slaVA*] 'my words', трéтьим пóездом [*TŖEţyim POyizdam*] 'by the third train'.

ё [*yo*]: ёлка [*YOLka*] 'Christmas tree', моё мéсто [*mayó M̦Esta*] 'my place', пьёт [*P̦YOT*] 'he drinks'.

ю [*yu*]: ю́г [*YUK*] 'the south', стою́ [*staYU*] 'I stand', пью́ [*P̧YU*] 'I drink'.

However, conventional spelling does not put the two dots on the ё; hence in ordinary Russian printing, the letter е has two different values, [*ye*] and [*yo*].

The letter и is used at the beginning of words for [*i*] as well as for [*yi*]. This causes no confusion, because (except for words with slurred vowels) only three Russian words begin with the sounds [*yi*]: и́м, и́ми, и́х [*YIM*, *YImi*, *YIX*]; all three forms of the pronoun 'they'. The letter ы is not used at the beginning of words.

The letters я, е, и, ё, ю coming after a consonant letter mean that this consonant is palatal:

я	[*a*]:	пя́ть	[*P̧AŢ*] 'five'
е	[*e*]:	не́т	[*ŅET*] 'no'
и	[*i*]:	пи́ть	[*P̧IŢ*] 'to drink'
ё	[*o*]:	самолёт	[*samaĻOT*] 'airplane'
ю	[*u*]:	говорю́	[*gavaŖU*] 'I speak'

The letters е, и, ё are used also after ш, ж, which represent the consonants [*sh*, *zh*] that are never palatal. In this case, the letters е, и, ё represent simple [*e*, *i*, *o*]: шесть [*SHEŞŢ*] 'six', жить [*ZHIŢ*] 'to live', жёны [*ZHOni*] 'wives'. In the same way, е and и are used after ц which is never palatal: це́ны [*CEni*] 'prices', отцы́ [*atCI*] 'fathers'.

5. The letters ь and ъ.

The letter ь is used after consonant letters; it means that the preceding consonant is palatal: ма́ть [*MAŢ*] 'mother', пью́ [*P̧YU*] 'I drink'. In some words the letter ь is written also after ш and ж, which represent the sounds [*sh*, *zh*] that are never palatal; in such words the ь means nothing: зна́ешь [*ZHAyish*] 'you (familiar) know', ро́жь [*ROSH*, *ROZH*] 'rye', мужья́ [*muZHYA*] 'husbands'. In this last example, the letter ь serves to satisfy the rule that я after ь means [*ya*].

The letter ъ is used after consonant letters to show that the consonant is not palatal even though the sound [*y*] follows: объясни́ть [*abyiŞŅIţ*] 'to explain', отъе́хать [*atYExaţ*] 'to depart', съе́сть [*SYEŞŢ*] 'to eat up'.

6. Numbers.

As an exercise in pronunciation and reading, we shall now give some of the higher numbers and some of the ordinal numbers (*first*, *second*, and so on). Listen to the Guide or the record and imitate carefully. After you have learned to say the words fluently and correctly, study the conventional spelling.

Unit 7, Record Side 3, after 1st spiral. (78 RPM) **(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 7, after 2nd spiral.**

eleven	оди́ннадцать	*aḐINnaciţ*
twelve*	двена́дцать	*dyiNATciţ*

---

*Not on the record.

thirteen	тринáдцать	*ţŗiNATciţ*
fourteen	четы́рнадцать	*chiTIRnaciţ*
fifteen	пятнáдцать	*p̧itNATciţ*
sixteen	шестнáдцать	*shisNATciţ*
seventeen*	семнáдцать	*şimNATciţ*
eighteen	восемнáдцать	*vaşimNATciţ*
nineteen	девятнáдцать	*ḑiy̧itNATciţ*
twenty*	двáдцать	*DVATciţ*
thirty	три́дцать	*TŖITciţ*
forty*	сóрок	*SOrak*
first	пéрвый	*P̧ERvay*
second	вторóй	*ftaROY*
third*	трéтий	*TŖEţiy*
fourth	четвёртый	*chiTY̧ORtay*
fifth	пя́тый	*P̧Atay*
sixth	шестóй	*shiSTOY*
seventh	седьмóй	*şiḐMOY*
eighth	восьмóй	*vaŞMOY*
ninth*	девя́тый	*ḑiY̧Atay*
tenth	деся́тый	*ḑiŞAtay*
eleventh	оди́ннадцатый	*aḐINnacitay*
twelfth	двенáдцатый	*dy̧iNATcitay*

---

*Not on the record.

7. Palatal [ţ].

Russian palatal [ţ] is quite different from any English sound. Keep the tongue in palatal position: the middle of the tongue pressed up against the front part of the roof of the mouth. Try to imitate the Guide or the record.

PRACTICE 1

Unit 7, Record Side 3, after 2nd spiral. (78 RPM)

налéво	*na ĻEva*	to the left
рýбль	*RUBĻ*	rouble
бы́ли	*BIļi*	they were
тóлько	*TOĻka*	only
хлéб	*XĻEP, XĻEB*	bread
мáльчик	*MAĻchik*	little boy
англи́йский	*anGĻIYsķiy*	English
гóспиталь	*GOspitaļ*	hospital
пóсле	*POşļi*	after

8. Palatal [*ŗ*].

Russian palatal [*ŗ*] is like Russian plain [*ŗ*], a vibrating sound made with the tip of the tongue, but in the palatal sound the middle of the tongue is raised at the same time, so as to add a y-like color to the trilling sound of the [*r*]. Imitate carefully.

PRACTICE 2

Unit 7, Record Side 3, after 3rd spiral. (78 RPM)

Мáрья	*MAŗya*	Mary
говори́ли	*gavaŖIļi*	they were talking
три́	*TŖI*	three
прия́тно	*pŗiYAtna*	it is pleasant
америкáнец	*aɱiŗiKAɲic*	American (man)

9. Russian [*k, g, x*] and [*gh*].

Russian [*k, g, x*] are peculiar in being plain or palatal according to a fixed rule: they are always palatal before the vowels [*e*] and [*i*] and they are always plain in any other position.

By [*gh*] we mean a peculiar sound, the voiced mate of [*x*]. The [*gh*] is a weak h-like sound, voiced (buzzing) instead of being breathy like [*x*]. Russian [*gh*] is always palatal before [*e*] or [*i*] and plain everywhere else. Many Russians use this sound instead of [*g*] in the word for 'God' and in a few other words. Some Russians use this sound instead of final [*x*] when the next word begins with a voiced mute (other than *v*). It is not necessary to learn to make this sound, but it will be well to hear it a few times, so that you won't be thrown off when you run into speakers who use it. We shall now listen to such a speaker. To give you the general background, he gives first some words with plain and with palatal [*k, g, x*] and then a few with plain and with palatal [*gh*]. You need not imitate this speaker. If you have a Guide; follow the Guide's pronunciation.

PRACTICE 3

Unit 7, Record Side 4, beginning. (78 RPM)

дру́га	*DRUga*	of the friend
Гео́ргий	*giORgiy*	George
карто́шки	*karTOshķi*	some potato
ке́м	*ĶEM*	with whom
ку́шать	*KUshiţ*	to eat
хо́чет	*XOchit*	he wants
хихи́кать	*xiX̧Ikaţ*	to snicker
Бо́га	*BOgha, BOga*	of God
о Бо́ге	*a BOghi, a BOgi*	about God
Я и́х зна́ю.	*yá yígh ZNAyu, yá yíx ZNAyu*	I know them
но́вых друзе́й	*nóvagh druZ̧EY, nóvax druZ̧EY*	of new friends

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

A. COMMENT ON THE BASIC SENTENCES

Ticket office. The word касса [*KASsa*] means the part of a room or building where money is handled: the cashier's desk of a shop, hotel, or restaurant and the ticket window or ticket office of a theatre, movie, and so on.

Preposition. The preposition бéз [βEZ] ‘without’ takes the Genitive.

You can't ride without a ticket.	Вы́ не мóжете éхать без билéта.	*ví ŋi MOzhiƫi YExaƫ ᶀéz ᶀiĻEta.*

Special adjective. The word трéтий [*ŢŖEƫiy*] ‘third’ is a special adjective. The stem is [*ƫŗeƫy-*] and the Masculine Nominative has no ending; the [*i*] is an inserted vowel. The endings are like those of [*VASH*], as: [*vásha şiSTRA*] ‘your sister’, [*ŢŖEƫya şiSTRA*] ‘the third sister’; [*vasha M̡Esta*] ‘your place’, [*ŢŖEƫya M̡Esta*] ‘the third place’.

The other ordinal numbers (‘first’, ‘second’, and so on) are regular adjectives.

Higher numbers. The numbers from 11 to 30, given in this Unit, have the Accusative like the Nominative. The Genitive and Locative have the ending [*-i*], stressed in [*dvaciŢI, ƫŗiciŢI*] and unstressed in the others: [*aḐINnaciƫi*] and so on. Nouns and adjectives that go with them are treated as after [*P̡AŢ*]:

Over there are those twelve houses.	Вóт тáм э́ти двенáдцать домóв.	*VOT TAM Eƫi dᶌiNATciƫ daMOF.*
They live in those twelve houses.	Они́ живýт в э́тих двенáдцати домáх.	*aŋí zhiVUT v Eƫix dᶌiNATciƫi daMAX.*
Over there are twenty big houses.	Вóт тáм двáдцать больши́х домóв.	*VOT TAM DVATciƫ baļSHIX daMOF.*
They live in twenty big houses.	Они́ живýт в двадцати́ больши́х домáх.	*aŋí zhiVUT v dvaciŢI baļSHIX daMAX.*

The number 40 is [*SOrak*] in the Nominative and Accusative; in the other case forms it is [*saraKA*]:

Here there are forty big houses.	Здéсь сóрок больши́х домóв.	*Z̧ḐEŞ SOrak baļSHIX daMOF.*
They live in forty big houses.	Они́ живýт в сорокá больши́х домáх.	*aŋí zhiVUT f saraKA baļSHIX daMAX.*

Compound numbers. In a compound number (such as ‘twenty-one’) each part takes its own endings. Nouns and adjectives are treated according to the last part of the compound number:

Over there are twenty-one houses.	Вóт тáм двáдцать оди́н дóм.	*VOT TAM DVATci, aḐIN DOM.*
They live in twenty-one houses.	Они́ живýт в двадцати́ однóм дóме.	*aŋí zhiVUT v dvaciŢI aDNOM DOŋi.*

Here there are thirty-two big houses	Здéсь три́дцать два́ больши́х до́ма.	*Z̦ḐEŞ TŖITciţ DVA baļSHIX DOma.*
They live in thirty-two big houses.	Они́ живу́т в тридцати́ двýх больши́х дома́х.	*aņí zhiVUT f triciŢI DVUX baļSHIX daMAX.*
Here are twenty-eight houses.	Во́т два́дцать во́семь домо́в.	*VOT DVATciţ VOşim̦ daMOF.*
They live in twenty-eight houses.	Они́ живу́т в двадцати́ восьми́ дома́х.	*aņí zhiVUT v dvaciŢI vaşMI daMAX.*

Compound numbers that end in [*aḐIN*] 'one' have the Accusative forms like those of [*aḐIN*]:

They bought twenty-one big houses.	Они́ купи́ли два́дцать оди́н большо́й до́м.	*aņí kuP̦Iļi DVAciţ aḐIN baļSHOY DOM.*
We met thirty-one girls.	Мы́ встре́тили три́дцать одну́ де́вушку.	*mí FSTŖEţiļi TŖITciţ aDNU ḐEvushku.*
We met forty-one little boys.	Мы́ встре́тили сорока́ одного́ ма́льчика.	*mí FSTŖEţiļi saraKA adnaVO MAĻchika.*

Compound numbers that do not end in [*aḐIN*] have the Accusative like the Nominative:

They bought twenty-two big houses.	Они́ купи́ли два́дцать два́ больши́х до́ма.	*aņí kuP̦Iļi DVATciţ DVA baļSHIX DOma.*
We met thirty-three girls.	Мы́ встре́тили три́дцать три́ де́вушки.	*mí FSTŖEţiļi TŖITciţ TŖI ḐEvushķi.*
We met forty-two little boys.	Мы́ встре́тили со́рок два́ ма́льчика.	*mí FSTŖEţiļi SOrak DVA MAĻchika.*
We met twenty-five little boys.	Мы́ встре́тили два́дцать пя́ть ма́льчиков.	*mí FSTŖEţiļi DVATciţ P̦AŢ MAĻchikaf.*

B. NEW NOUNS

Masculine:

	N.S.	G.S.	N.P.	G.P.
airport	*airaDROM*	*airaDROma*	*airaDROmi*	*airaDROmaf*
ticket	*þiĻET*	*þiĻEta*	*þiĻEti*	*þiĻEtaf*
hour	*CHAS*	*CHAsa, chiSA*	*chiSI*	*chiSOF*
city	*GOrat*	*GOrada*	*garaDA*	*garaDOF*
train	*POyist*	*POyizda*	*payiZDA*	*payiZDOF*
airplane	*samaĻOT*	*samaĻOta*	*samaĻOti*	*samaĻOtaf*

Feminine:

	N.S.	A.S.	G.S.	N.P.	G.P.
quarter	*CHEtɣirʈ*	*CHEtɣirʈ*	*CHEtɣirʈi*	*CHEtɣirʈi*	*chitɣirŢEY*
ticket office	*KASsa*	*KASsu*	*KASsi*	*KASsi*	*KASS*
minute	*ɱiNUta*	*ɱiNUtu*	*ɱiNUti*	*ɱiNUti*	*ɱiNUT*
half	*palaƲIna*	*palaƲInu*	*palaƲIni*	*palaƲIni*	*palaƲIN*

C. NEW VERBS

For each verb we give the Infinitive, the Present tense forms for 'I' and 'he (she, it)', and the Past tense form for the Masculine. Additional forms are given to show the place of accent.

Present Type 1:

	Infinitive	I	he, she, it	Pst Masculine
to fly	*ļiTAŢ*	*ļiTAyu*	*ļiTAyit*	*ļiTAL*
to be able	*MOCH*	*maGU*	*MOzhit*	*MOK*

other forms: *MOzhim, MOzhiʈi, MOgut—maGLA, maGLO, maGĻI*

to sell	*pradaVAŢ*	*pradaYU*	*pradaYOT*	*pradaVAL*
to be on time	*uSP̧EŢ*	*uSP̧Eyu*	*uSP̧Eyit*	*uSP̧EL*
to depart	*uyiZHDZHAŢ*	*uyiZHDZHAyu*	*uyiZHDZHAyit*	*uyiZHDZHAL*

The compound *atļiTAŢ* 'to fly away' goes like the simple verb *ļiTAŢ*. The compound *VIpiţ* 'to drink up' goes like the simple verb *P̧IŢ*, but with the accent on the syllable *vi-*: *VIpyit* 'he'll drink it up'.

Present Type 2:

	Infinitive	I	he, she, it	Past Masculine
to go away	*atxaḐIŢ*	*atxaZHU*	*atXOḑit*	*atxaḐIL*
other forms: *atXOḑim*, *atXOḑiţi*, *atXOḑit* ('they go away')				
to buy	*kuP̧IŢ*	*kuP̧ĻU*	*KUp̧it*	*kuP̧IL*
other forms: *KUp̧im*, *KUp̧iţi*, *KUp̧it* ('they will buy')				
to hurry	*sp̧iSHIŢ*	*sp̧iSHU*	*sp̧iSHIT*	*sp̧iSHIL*

D. TIME BY THE CLOCK

What time is it? ('Which hour now?')	Кото́рый тепе́рь ча́с?	*kaTOray ţiP̧EŖ CHAS?*

In telling time by the clock one uses the word [*CHAS*] 'hour'.

It is one o'clock now.	Тепе́рь ча́с.	*ţiP̧EŖ CHAS.*

For 'one o'clock' one says simply [*CHAS*] 'hour'.

It's three o'clock.	Три́ часа́.	*TŖI chiSA.*

After the numbers 2, 3, 4 one uses the Genitive Singular [*chiSA*], with accent on the ending.

It is five o'clock.	Пя́ть часо́в.	*P̧AŢ chiSOF.*

After 5 and higher numbers, the Genitive Plural is used, in accordance with the general rule.

The train leaves at 7:48.	По́езд отхо́дит в се́мь со́рок во́семь.	*Poyist atXOḑit f ŞEM̧ SOrak VOşim̧.*

Railway time is stated by simple numbers.

[It is] now between 12 and 1 ('the first hour').	Тепе́рь пе́рвый ча́с.	*ţiP̧EŖ P̧ERvay CHAS.*
[It is] between 1 and 2 ('the second hour').	Второ́й ча́с.	*ftaROY CHAS.*
[It is] between 6 and 7.	Седьмо́й ча́с.	*şiḑMOY CHAS.*
[It is] between 11 and 12.	Двена́дцатый ча́с.	*dv̧iNATcitay CHAS.*

For time between full hours they say 'the so-manieth hour'. For instance, the 'third hour' is the hour from two o'clock to three o'clock, and so on.

[It is] now 2 minutes after 12 ('2 minutes of the first').	Тепе́рь две́ мину́ты пе́рвого.	*ţip̧eŗ DYE m̧iNUti P̧ERvava.*
[It is] 10 minutes after 1.	Де́сять мину́т второ́го.	*ḐEşiţ m̧iNUT ftaROva.*
[It is] quarter past 2.	Че́тверть тре́тьего.	*CHEtv̧irţ TŖEţyiva.*
[It is] 25 minutes past 3.	Два́дцать пя́ть мину́т четвёртого.	*DVATciţ P̧AŢ m̧iNUT chiTYOrtava.*
[It is] half past 4.	Полови́на пя́того.	*palaYIna P̧Atava.*

To tell the exact time they say that so many minutes (or a quarter hour or half an hour) have passed of the so-manieth hour. Thus, at 3:10, for instance, ten minutes of the fourth hour have passed; at 3:30 it is (there has passed) 'half of the fourth'.

The Genitive forms are regular: [*shiSTOva*, *siḑMOva*, *vaşMOva*, *ḑiYAtava*, *ḑiŞAtava*, *aḐINnacitava*, *dv̧iNATcitava*].

This way of talking is used up to the half hour. Occasionally they also use it of 'three quarters':

It's quarter to six ('three fourths of the sixth').	Три́ че́тверти шесто́го.	*TŖI CHEv̧irţi shiSTOva.*

[It is] now 25 minutes to 1 ('without 25 an hour').	Тепéрь без двадцати́ пяти́ чáс.	*ţipéŗ b̧iz dvaciŢI p̧iŢI CHAS.*
[It is] 20 minutes to 2.	Без двадцати́ двá.	*b̧iz dvaciŢI DVA.*
[It is] quarter to six.	Без чéтверти шéсть.	*b̧is CHEtv̧irţi SHEŞŢ.*
[It is] 12 minutes to seven.	Без двенáдцати сéмь.	*b̧iz dv̧iNATciţi ŞEM̧.*
It is now 2 minutes to one.	Тепéрь без двýх минýт чáс.	*ţipéŗ b̧iz DVUX m̧inút CHAS.*
It is 3 minutes to 2 (o'clock).	Без трёх минýт двá (часá).	*b̧is TŖOX m̧inút DVA (chiSA).*
It is 4 minutes to 3.	Без четырёх минýт три́.	*b̧is chitiŖOX m̧inút TŖI.*

After the half hour, they say that it is 'without so many minutes (or without a quarter-hour) so much o'clock'. For 'without' they use [*B̧EZ*] with the Genitive case.

At what time will you come?	В котóром часý вы́ придёте?	*f kaTOram chiSU ví p̧ŗiḐOţi?*
I'll come between 3 and 4.	Я придý в трéтьем часý.	*yá p̧ŗiDU f TŖEţyim chiSU.*
Here they eat between 7 and 8.	Здéсь кýшают в восьмóм часý.	*Z̧ḐEŞ KUshiyut v vaşMOM chiSU.*

For 'at what time?' they say 'in what hour?' The preposition is [*v*] with the Locative case. The noun [*CHAS*] in this expression has an irregular Locative form with the ending [-*ú*], accented. Similarly, they say, for instance, 'in the third hour' for 'between two and three o'clock'.

I'll come at 1 o'clock.	Я придý в чáс.	*yá p̧ŗiDU f CHAS.*
She'll come at 3 o'clock.	Онá придёт в три́ часá.	*aná p̧ŗiḐOT f TŖI chiSA.*
He'll come at 1:15.	Он придёт в чéтверть вторóго.	*ón p̧ŗiḐOT f CHEtv̧irţ ftaROva.*

In telling exactly at what time, they use the preposition [*v*] followed by the Accusative case.

Come at half past six.	Приди́те в полови́не седьмóго.	*p̧ŗiḐIţi f palaYIni şiḑMOva.*
He arrived at half past twelve.	Он приéхал в полови́не пéрвого.	*ón p̧ŗiYExal f palaYIņi P̧ERvava.*

However, after the preposition [*v*] they mostly use the Locative case of [*palaYIna*] 'half' for the half-hour.

I'll meet you here at 1:45.	Я ва́с встре́чу зде́сь без че́тверти два́.	*yá vás FSTŖEchu ȥḑéş b̦is CHEţyirţi DVA.*
The train leaves at 10 minutes to 3.	По́езд отхо́дит без десяти́ три́.	*POyist atXOḑit b̦iz ḑişiŢI TŖI.*

Before the phrases with [*B̦EZ*] the preposition [*v̦*] is usually omitted.

I have to buy a watch.	Мне́ на́до купи́ть часы́.	*mŋé náda kup̦IŢ chiSI.*
My watch is fast.	Мои́ часы́ спеша́т.	*mayí chiSI sp̦iSHAT.*

The Plural [*chiSI*] means also 'watch' or 'clock'.

2. Covering English and Russian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering first the English, then the Russian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences.*

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences*, covering up the English and reading aloud the Russian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Read aloud each of the following and then pick out the expressions you think most suitable:

1. You meet your friend Petrov on the street. He seems to be in a hurry. You ask him:

a. Где́ вы́ живёте?	*GḐE ví zhiYOţi?*
b. Куда́ вы́ спеши́те?	*kuDA ví sp̦iSHIţi?*
c. Кото́рый ча́с тепе́рь?	*kaTOray CHAS ţiP̦EŖ?*

2. He says he is going to the railway station. He says:	
a. Я е́ду в Москву́.	*yá YEdu v maSKVU.*
b. Мне́ на́до спеши́ть.	*mņé náda sp̧iSHIŢ.*
c. Я иду́ на вокза́л.	*yá iDU na vagZAL.*
3. He says he is going to Moscow. He says:	
a. Я е́ду в Москву́.	*yá YEdu v maSKVU.*
b. Я живу́ в Москве́.	*yá zhiVU v maSKY̧E.*
c. Я прие́хал из Москвы́.	*yá p̧ŗiYExal iz maSKVI.*
4. He says the train is leaving at quarter after five. He says:	
a. По́езд отхо́дит в че́тверть пя́того.	*POyist atXOḑit f CHEty̧irţ P̧Atava.*
b. По́езд отхо́дит в че́тверть шесто́го.	*POyist atXOḑit f CHEty̧irţ shiSTOva.*
c. По́езд отхо́дит без че́тверти ше́сть.	*POyist atXOḑit b̧is CHEty̧irţi SHEŞŢ.*
5. He asks you the time. He says:	
a. Кото́рый тепе́рь ча́с?	*kaTOray ţip̧eŗ CHAS?*
b. В кото́ром часу́ вы́ ку́шаете?	*f kaTOram chiSU ví KUshiyiţi?*
c. У ва́с мно́го вре́мени?	*u vás MNOga VŖEm̧iņi?*
6. It is twelve minutes to five. You say:	
a. Без оди́ннадцати пя́ть.	*b̧iz aḐINnaciţi P̧AŢ.*
b. Двена́дцать мину́т пя́того.	*dy̧iNATciţ m̧inút P̧Atava.*
c. Без двена́дцати мину́т пя́ть.	*b̧iz dy̧iNATciţi m̧inút P̧AŢ.*
7. You tell him he has lots of time. You say:	
a. У ва́с ма́ло вре́мени.	*u vás MAla VŖEm̧iņi.*
b. У ва́с мно́го вре́мени.	*u vás MNOga VŖEm̧iņi.*
c. У ва́с не́т вре́мени.	*u vás ŅET VŖEm̧iņi.*

8. You tell him he'll be in time for the train. You say:

a.	По́езд подождёт.	*POyist padaZHḐOT.*
b.	По́езд идёт ме́дленно.	*POyist iḐOT M̦Edļina.*
c.	Вы́ успе́ете на по́езд.	*vɨ́ uSP̦Eyiţi na POyist.*

9. He says he has to buy a ticket. He says:

a.	Мне́ на́до продава́ть биле́ты.	*mņé NAda pradaVAŢ b̦iĻEti.*
b.	Мне́ на́до купи́ть биле́т.	*mņé NAda kuP̦IŢ b̦iĻET.*
c.	Мне́ на́до да́ть ва́м биле́т.	*mņé NAda DAŢ vám b̦iĻET.*

10. You want to know how much a ticket costs. You say:

a.	Ско́лько копе́ек в рубле́?	*SKOĻka kaP̦Eyik v ruBĻE?*
b.	Ско́лько у ва́с рубле́й?	*SKOĻka u vás ruBĻEY?*
c.	Ско́лько сто́ит биле́т?	*SKOĻka STOyit b̦iĻET?*

11. He says it costs 20 roubles and 30 kopeks. He says:

a.	Двена́дцать рубле́й и три́дцать копе́ек.	*ḑviNATciţ ruBĻEY i TŖITciţ kaP̦Eyik.*
b.	Два́дцать рубле́й и три́дцать копе́ек.	*DVATciţ ruBĻEY i TŖITciţ kaP̦Eyik.*
c.	Два́дцать рубле́й и трина́дцать копе́ек.	*DVATciţ ruBĻEY i ţriNATciţ kaPEyik.*

12. He says tickets are sold both in town and at the ticket window in the station. He says:

a.	Биле́ты продаю́тся то́лько в ка́ссе на вокза́ле.	*b̦iĻEti pradaYUTsa TOĻka f KAŞşi na vagZAļi.*
b.	В го́роде и в ка́ссе на вокза́ле продаётся мно́го биле́тов.	*v GOraḑi i f KAŞşi na vagZAļi pradaYOTsa MNOga b̦iĻEtaf.*
c.	Биле́ты продаю́тся в го́роде и в ка́ссе на вокза́ле.	*b̦iĻEti pradaYUTsa v GOraḑi i f KAŞşi na vagZAļi.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Russian for each of the exercises in the preceding sections, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Russian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Russian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat each conversation if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

Anna meets Ivan on his way to the airport.

Unit 7, Record Side 4, after 1st spiral. (78 RPM)

(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 7, after 2nd spiral.

Анна:	Куда́ вы́ спеши́те, граждани́н Ивано́в?	*kuDA ví spiSHIţi, grazhdaŋín ivaNOF?*
Ивано́в:	Я е́ду в Москву́.	*yá YEdu v maSKVU.*
Анна:	Ва́м нра́вится Москва́?	*vám NRAy̧itsa maSKVA?*
Ивано́в:	Да́, о́чень.	*DA, Ochiŋ.*
	Моя́ сестра́ та́м.	*mayá şiSTRA TAM.*
Анна:	Че́м она́ занима́ется?	*CHEM aná zaŋiMAyitsa?*
Ивано́в:	Она́ учи́тельница.	*aná uCHIţiļŋica.*
	Она́ рабо́тает в хоро́шей шко́ле.	*aná raBOtayit f xaROshiy SHKOļi.*
Анна:	Вы́ е́дете по́ездом?	*ví YEḑiţi POyizdam?*
Ивано́в:	Не́т, самолётом.	*ŊET; samaĻOtam.*

Анна:	Ах, я́ всегда́ хоте́ла лета́ть!	*AX, yá fşiGDA xaŢEla ļiTAŢ!*
Ивано́в:	Я сейча́с иду́ на аэродро́м.	*yá şi ÇHAS iDU na airaDROM.*
	Вы́ хоти́те пойти́ туда́ со мно́й?	*ví xaŢIţi payŢI tuDA sa MNOY?*
Анна:	Спаси́бо.	*spaŞIba.*
	Я та́м никогда́ не была́.	*yá tám ŋi kaGDA ŋi biLA.*
Ивано́в:	На́м на́до спеши́ть.	*nám náda spiSHIŢ.*
Анна:	Хорошо́.	*xaraSHO.*
They arrive at the airport.		
Ивано́в:	Извини́те, мне́ на́до пойти́ купи́ть биле́т.	*iz̧iŊIţi; mŋé NAda payŢI kuP̧IŢ b̧iĻET.*
	Где́ продаю́тся биле́ты?	*GḐE pradaYUTsa b̧iĻEti?*
Анна:	Во́т ка́сса.	*VOT KASsa.*
	Я ва́с подожду́ зде́сь.	*yá vás padaZHDU Z̧ḐEŞ.*
Ивано́в:	Спаси́бо.	*spaŞIba.*
In the ticket office.		
Ивано́в:	Я хочу́ биле́т в Москву́.	*yá xachú b̧iĻET v maSKVU.*
	Ско́лько о́н сто́ит?	*SKOĻka ón STOyit?*
Clerk:	Я ва́м скажу́ в одну́ мину́ту.	*yá vám skaZHU v aDNU ɱiNUtu.*
	Три́дцать два́ рубля́ и двена́дцать копе́ек.	*TŖITciţ DVA ruBĻA i dz̧iNATciţ kaP̧Eyik.*
	Вы́ коне́чно зна́ете, что́ самолёт отлета́ет в три́ со́рок.	*ví kaŊEshna ZNAyiţi shtó samaĻOT atļiTAyit f TŖI SOrak.*
Ивано́в:	Спаси́бо.	*spaŞIba.*
	Сейча́с четвёртый ча́с.	*şi CHAS chiTYORtay CHAS.*
Clerk:	Да́, три́ пя́ть.	*DA; TŖI P̧AŢ.*

Outside.		
Иванóв:	Вóт билéт.	*VOT b̦iĻET.*
	У меня́ три́дцать пя́ть минýт.	*u ɱiņá TŖITciţ P̦AŢ ɱiNUT.*
	Здéсь хóлодно.	*ȤḐEŞ XOladna.*
	Пойдёмте на аэродрóм.	*payḐOMţi na airaDROM.*
Анна:	На аэродрóме и на вокзáле всегдá хóлодно.	*na airaDROɱi i na vagZAļi fşiGDA XOladna.*
	Тепéрь я́ хочý вы́пить чáю.	*ţiP̦EŖ yá xachú víp̦iţ CHAyu.*
Иванóв:	Хорошó, пойдём.	*xaraSHO, payḐOM.*
Over the tea.		
Анна:	Почемý вы́ уезжáете?	*pa chiMU ví uyiZHDZHAyiţi?*
Иванóв:	Мнé нрáвится Москвá.	*mņé NRAv̦itsa maSKVA.*
Анна:	Я былá тáм в шкóле.	*yá bilá tám f SHKOļi.*
	Мнé тóже нрáвится Москвá.	*mņé TO zhi NRAv̦itsa maSKVA.*
	Тáм больши́е ресторáны.	*tám baļSHIya ŗistaRAni.*
Иванóв:	Конéчно, и мнóго молоды́х дéвушек.	*kaŅEshna, i MNOga malaDIX ḐEvushik.*
Анна:	Вóт почемý óн тудá спеши́т!	*VOT pa chimú ón tudá spiSHIT!*
Иванóв:	Конéчно, нéт!	*kaŅEshna ŅET!*
	Сейчáс три́ чéтверти четвёртого.	*şi CHAS TŖI CHEv̦irţi chiTY̦ORtava.*
Анна:	Ах, нéт!	*AX, ŅET!*
	У вáс дéсять минýт.	*u vás ḐEşiţ ɱiNUT.*
Иванóв:	Мнé нáдо итти́.	*mņé NAda iŢI.*
Анна:	До свидáнья!	*da sv̦iDAņya!*
Иванóв:	До свидáнья!	*da sv̦iDAņya!*

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Cover the Russian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Russian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Russian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Russian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the models outlined below fairly closely; then change the situations somewhat. Invent new combinations of subject matter.

1. You are packing for a trip. A friend comes in and asks you where you are going. You tell him where you are going, and he asks if you like it there. You tell him you do and why, or that you have never been there, but you have heard . . . etc. Tell something about the place, the weather, hotels, friends or relatives living there, etc.
2. You ask someone where he is going. He says he is going to the station to buy a [illegible] ask him if he can buy a ticket in town. [illegible] says they are sold only in the ticket-office [illegible] station. You ask him when the train leaves. He tells you, and you say that if he doesn't hurry, he won't make it on time. He says no; he has twenty-five minutes.
3. You meet a friend, and he asks where you are hurrying. You say you are not hurrying, that you are going to the airport. He asks if you are going away. You say you are not, but a nice girl works there. You met her yesterday. He asks if he can go to the airport with you. He has always wanted to fly. You tell him whether you have flown often or never. He asks again why you are hurrying. You tell him you wanted to meet her at half past four, but it's past five now.
4. Two men discuss the advantages of trains and planes—the cost of a ticket between one city and another, the time one leaves and arrives by train and by plane. Use both the conversational and the time-table forms for telling time.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

From now on, all words will be listed alphabetically according to their conventional spelling. For Numbers, see above under *A2.6* in this Unit.

аэродро́м [*airaDROM*] flying field

бе́з [*B̧EZ*] without
биле́т [*b̧iĻET*] ticket

второ́й [*ftaROY*] the second

вы́пить [*VIpiţ*] to drink up, to take a drink; **выпью** [*VIp̧yu*] I'll take a drink

го́род [*GOrat*] city

за́втра [*ZAftra*] tomorrow
ка́сса [*KASsa*] cash desk, ticket window
кото́рый [*kaTOray*] which
купи́ть [*kuP̧IŢ*] to buy; **куплю́** [*kuPĻU*] I'll buy
лета́ть [*ļiTAŢ*] to fly

мину́та [*m̧iNUta*] minute

мо́чь [*MOCH*] to be able; **могу́** [*maGU*] I can;
  мо́жет [*MOzhit*] he (she, it) can

на́до [*NAda*] it is necessary, one must
ну́ [*NU*] well; come on!

отлета́ть [*atļiTAŢ*] to fly away
отходи́ть [*atxaḐIŢ*] to go away, to depart

по́езд [*POyist*] train
  по́ездом [*POyizdam*] by train

полови́на [*palaYIna*] half; half an hour
пото́м [*pa TOM*] after that; then
потому́ [*pa taMU*] on account of that
  потому́ что [*pa taMU shtó*] because
почему́ [*pa chiMU*] on account of what? why?
продава́ть [*pradaVAŢ*] to sell
  продаю́тся [*pradaYUTsa*] they are sold

самолёт [*samaĻOT*] air plane
  самолётом [*samaĻOtam*] by plane
сего́дня [*şiVO dna*] today
сейча́с [*şi CHAS*] just now; right away
спеши́ть [*spiSHIŢ*] to hurry
Сталингра́д [*staļinGRAT*] Stalingrad

та́к [*TAK*] in this way, so, thus, as

уезжа́ть [*uyiZHDZHAŢ*] to go away (riding or driving), to depart (by train or car)

уже́ [*uZHE*] already
успе́ть [*uSP̧EŢ*] to succeed, to get somewhere on time;
  успе́ю [*uSP̧Eyu*] I'll get there; I'll make it
ча́с [*CHAS*] hour; **часы́** [*chiSI*] watch, clock
че́тверть [*CHEtv̧irţ*] a fourth, a quarter; quarter of an hour

UNIT 8

LAUNDRY AND BARBER

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Go once through the *Basic Sentences* in unison, concentrating on the *Aids to Listening*, as you have done before. Then go through the *Hints on Pronunciation and Spelling*. Go once through the *Basic Sentences* individually trying to follow the *Conventional Spelling* as much as possible. The last time through individually, you should be able to follow the *Conventional Spelling* without any trouble.

1. Basic Sentences

Boris needs a shave, a haircut, a pair of shoes, and is down to his last clean shirt.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING	AIDS TO LISTENING
Unit 8, Record Side 1, beginning. (78 RPM)		**(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 8, beginning.**
	Boris	
(I) can	могу	*maGU*
to find	найти́	*nayŢI*
laundry (A.S.)	пра́чечную	*PRAchishnuyu*
laundress (A.S.)	пра́чку	*PRACHku*
Where can I find a laundry or a laundress?	Где́ я́ могу́ найти́ пра́чечную и́ли пра́чку?	*GḐE yá magú nayŢI PRAchishnuyu ļi PRACHku?*
one (G.F.)*	одно́й	*aDNOY*
clean (G.F.)	чи́стой	*CHIstay*
shirt (G.)	руба́шки	*ruBAshķi*

---

*F. = Feminine; M. = Masculine; N. = Neuter; L. = Locative.

I haven't even one clean shirt.	У меня́ не́т ни одно́й чи́стой руба́шки.	*u ɱiɲá NET ɲi aDNOY CHIstay ruBAshķi.*
	Marya	
(I) will send	пришлю́	*priSHĻU*
Pasha (woman's nickname)**	Па́ша	*PAsha*
I'll send you Pasha.	Я ва́м пришлю́ Па́шу.	*yá vám priSHĻU PAshu.*
	Pasha	
to wash	стира́ть	*şţiRAŢ*
I'm the laundress.	Я — пра́чка.	*YA, PRACHka.*
What do you need to have washed?	Что́ ва́м на́до стира́ть?	*shtó vám NAda şţiRAŢ?*
	Boris	
all	всё	*FŞO*
dirty (N.)	гря́зное	*GŖAznaya*
clothes *or* underwear	бельё	*b̦iĻYO*
bed (L.)	посте́ли	*paŞŢEļi*
All the dirty clothes are on the bed.	Всё гря́зное бельё на посте́ли.	*FŞO GŖAznaya b̦iĻYO na paŞŢEļi.*
	Pasha	
I'll count	посчита́ю	*pashchiTAyu*
Good; I'll count it.	Хорошо́, я́ посчита́ю.	*xaraSHO; yá pashchiTAyu.*
eleven	оди́ннадцать	*aḐINnaciţ*
handkerchiefs (G.P.)	носовы́х платко́в	*nasaVIX platKOF*
Eleven handkerchiefs.	Оди́ннадцать носовы́х платко́в.	*aḐINnaciţ nasaVIX plaTKOF.*

**Not on the record.

shirt (G.)	рубáшки	*ruBAshķi*
Four shirts.	Четы́ре рубáшки.	*chiTIŗi ruBAshķi.*
pairs (G.P.)	пáр	*PAR*
socks (G.P.)	носóк	*naSOK*
Ten pairs of socks.	Дéсять пáр носóк.	*ḐEşiţ PAR naSOK.*
receipt	распи́ска	*raSP̧Iska*
And here's the receipt.	И вóт распи́ска.	*i VOT raSP̧Iska.*
	Boris	
when	когдá	*kaGDA*
you will bring back*	вернёте	*ɣirŊOţi*
When will you bring my laundry back?	Когдá вы́ вернёте моё бельё?	*kaGDA ví ɣirŊOti mayó þiĻYO?*

Unit 8, Record Side 2, beginning. (78 RPM)

	Pasha	
not earlier	не рáньше	*ŋi RAŊshi*
week (G.S.)	недéли	*ŋiḐEļi*
Not sooner than a week [from now].	Не рáньше недéли.	*ŋi RAŊshi ŋiḐEļi.*
	Boris	
hurry	поспеши́те	*paspiSHIţi*
bring back*	верни́те	*ɣirŊIţi*
(a bit) earlier	порáньше	*paRAŊshi*
Please hurry and get the laundry back as soon as you can.	Пожáлуйста, поспеши́те, и верни́те бельё порáньше.	*paZHALsta, paspiSHIţi, i ɣirŊIţi þiĻYO paRAŊshi.*

---

*The English on the record is an error.

remained (M.)	остáлся	*aSTALşa*
I haven't any clean clothes left.	Я остáлся без чúстого бельá.	*yá aSTALşa ᶀis CHIstava ᶀiĻYA.*
	Pasha	
I'll try	постарáюсь	*pastaRAyuş*
All right, I'll try.	Хорошó, постарáюсь.	*xaraSHO, pastaRAyuş.*
	Boris	
shoemaker	сапóжник	*saPOzhŋik*
Tell me, please; where's there a shoemaker?	Скажúте, пожáлуйста, гдé сапóжник?	*skaZHIţi, paZHALsta; GḐE saPOzhŋik?*
	Pasha	
not far	недалекó	*ŋi daļiKO*
barber shop (G.)	парикмáхерской	*paŗikMAx̧irskay*
The shoemaker is not far from the barber shop.	Сапóжник недалекó от парикмáхерской.	*saPOzhŋik ŋi daļiKO at paŗikMAx̧irskay.*
	Boris	
to repair	починúть	*pachiŊIŢ*
two (F.)	двé	*DV̡E*
pair (G.S.)	пáры	*PAri*
shoes (G.P.)	ботúнок	*baŢInak*
That's good.	Это хорошó.	*éta xaraSHO.*
I need to have two pairs of shoes fixed.	Мнé нáдо починúть двé пáры ботúнок.	*MŊE náda pachiŊIŢ DV̡E PAri baŢInak.*
	Pasha	
it seems	кáжется	*KAzhitsa*
to the barber	к парикмáхеру	*k paŗikMAx̧iru*
It seems to me you need to go to the barber, too.	Вáм, кáжется, к парикмáхеру тóже нáдо.	*VAM, KAzhitsa, k paŗikMAx̧iru TOzhi NAda.*

	Boris	
to get a haircut	постричься	*paSTŖICHsa*
to (get a) shave	побриться	*paBŖITsa*
Yes, I need to get a haircut and a shave.	Да́, мне́ на́до пострѝчься и побри́ться.	*DA, mŋé náda paSTŖICHsa i paBŖITsa.*
	Pasha	
I'll bring	принесу́	*p̧riŋiSU*
as possible	как мо́жно	*kak MOzhna*
sooner	скоре́е	*skaŖEyi*
Goodbye.	До свида́нья.	*da sv̧iDAŋya.*
I'll bring the clothes as soon as possible	Я принесу́ бельё как мо́жно скоре́е.	*yá p̧riŋiSU b̧iĻYO kak MOzhna skaŖEyi.*
	Boris	
Goodbye and thanks.	До свида́нья, и спаси́бо.	*da sv̧iDAŋya, i spaŞIba.*

Before you go through the *Basic Sentences* a second time, read the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation and Spelling

The vowel [*e*]

The Russian vowel [*e*] before a palatal consonant sounds almost like the English vowel of a word like *day*. This effect is especially striking if there is also a palatal consonant before the vowel. At the end of a word or before a plain consonant, the Russian [*e*] sounds more like the English vowel in a word like *met;* in fact, it is something between the vowel of *met* and the vowel of *mat*.

Russian [*e*] hardly ever occurs unstressed.

Now listen to the speaker on the record or to the Guide and try to imitate exactly.

PRACTICE 1

Unit 8, Record Side 3, beginning. (78 RPM) **(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 8, after 1st spiral.**

хоте́ть	*xaŢEŢ*	to want
встре́тить	*FSTŖEţiţ*	to meet

тепéрь	*ţiP̧EŖ*	now
éсли	*YEşļi*	if
э́то	*Eta*	this
дешéвле	*ḑiSHEvļi*	cheaper
éду	*YEdu*	I am riding

The vowel [*a*]

The Russian vowel [*a*] when accented is pretty close to the English accented vowel in a word like *father*. However, between palatal consonants it is almost like the English vowel of *fat*. .

Unstressed [*a*] after a palatal consonant or [*c*, *sh*, *zh*] occurs only at the end of a word, and it there sounds somewhat like the *a* of *fat*.

Unstressed [*a*] occurs very commonly at the beginning of a word and after plain consonants other than [*c*, *sh*, *zh*]. In the syllable just before the accent or at the end of a word it sounds like the *a* in *father*. In other syllables (that is, after the accented syllable, or two or more syllables before the accent) it has a weak, obscure, and very short sound, something like the *a* in *sofa*.

Now listen and imitate.

PRACTICE 2

Unit 8, Record Side 3, after 1st spiral. (78 RPM)

кудá	*kuDA*	whereto
кáк	*KAK*	how
тáм	*TAM*	there
пя́ть	*P̧AŢ*	five
изучáть	*izuCHAŢ*	to study
дя́дя	*ḐAḑa*	uncle
молодáя	*malaDAya*	a young one (F.)
хорóшая	*xaROshiya*	a good one (F.)
хорошó	*xaraSHO*	it is good

The vowels [*o*] and [*u*]

The vowel [*o*] occurs only in stressed syllables. The vowel [*u*] occurs in all positions. Remember to round your lips for both these vowels.

PRACTICE 3

Unit 8, Record Side 3, after 2nd spiral. (78 RPM)

рабо́тать	*raBOtaţ*	to work
пьёте	*P̧YOţi*	you drink
ушёл	*uSHOL*	he went away
уйдёте	*uyḐOţi*	you'll go away
живу́т	*zhiVUT*	they live
ию́нь	*iYUŅ*	June
дру́г	*DRUG, DRUK*	friend (male)
лю́ди	*ĻUḑi*	people
но́вую	*NOvuyu*	a new one (A.S.F.)
учени́к	*uchiŅIK*	pupil (male)
узна́ю	*uZNAyu*	I'll find out

More numbers

We now give some higher numbers, from 50 on. Imitate and practice saying them.

fifty	пятьдеся́т	*pid ḑiŞAT*
sixty	шестьдеся́т	*shiz ḑiŞAT*
seventy	се́мьдесят	*ŞEM ḑişit*
eighty	во́семьдесят	*VOşim ḑişit*
ninety	девяно́сто	*ḑiv̧iNOsta*
one hundred	сто́	*STO*
two hundred	две́сти	*DV̧E şţi*
three hundred	три́ста	*TŖI sta*

four hundred	четы́реста	*chiTIŗi sta*
five hundred	пятьсо́т	*p̧it SOT*
six hundred	шестьсо́т	*shist SOT, shis SOT*
seven hundred	семьсо́т	*şim SOT*
eight hundred	восемьсо́т	*vaşim SOT*
nine hundred	девятьсо́т	*ḑiv̧it SOT*
one thousand	ты́сяча	*TIşicha*
million*	миллио́н	*miĻYON*
Here there are fifty big houses.	Зде́сь пятьдеся́т больши́х домо́в.	*Z̧ḐEŞ p̧id ḑiŞAT baļSHIX daMOF.*
They live in fifty big houses.	Они́ живу́т в пяти́десяти больши́х дома́х.	*aņí zhiVUT f p̧iŢI ḑişiţi baļSHIX daMAX.*
Without eighty roubles I can't travel.	Без восьми́десяти рубле́й я́ не могу́ е́хать.	*b̧iz vaşM̧I ḑişiţi ruBĻEY yá ņi maGU YExaţ.*

The numbers 50, 60, 70, 80 consist of the words 5, 6, 7, 8 and a queer special form of the word 10. Note that in these combinations one of the two words always loses its accent. In the case forms other than the Nominative and Accusative, the words 5, 6, 7, 8 and 10 have their ordinary forms. Nouns and adjectives are treated as with [*P̧AŢ*].

I know a hundred Russian people here.	Я зна́ю зде́сь сто́ ру́сских люде́й.	*yá ZNAyu z̧ḑéş STO RUsķix ļuḐEY.*
There aren't one hundred Russian people here.	Зде́сь не́т ста́ ру́сских люде́й.	*Z̧ḐEŞ ŅET STA RUsķix ļuḐEY.*
Here there are ninety big houses.	Зде́сь девяно́сто больши́х домо́в.	*Z̧ḐEŞ ḑiv̧iNOsta baļSHIX daMOF.*

---

*Not on the record.

They live in ninety big houses.	Они́ живу́т в девяно́ста больши́х дома́х.	*aņí zhiVUT v ḑiv̦iNOsta baļSHIX daMAX.*

The number 100 has the ending [*-a*] in cases other than the Nominative and Accusative. The number 90 is the same throughout. The conventional spelling writes *-o* in the Nominative and Accusative and *-a* in the other case forms, but since the vowel is unstressed, the sound is always just [*-a*]. Nouns and adjectives are treated as with [*PAŢ*].

We know two hundred Russian people here.	Мы́ зна́ем зде́сь две́сти ру́сских людéй.	*mí ZNAyim z̧ḑéş DV̦E şţi RUsķix ļuḐEY.*
There aren't two hundred Russian people.	Зде́сь не́т двухсо́т ру́сских людéй.	*z̧ḑéş ŅET dvux SOT RUsķix ļuḐEY.*
They live in two hundred big houses.	Они́ живу́т в двухста́х больши́х дома́х.	*aņí zhiVUT v dvux STAX baļSHIX daMAX.*
They live in eight hundred big houses.	Они́ живу́т в восьмиста́х больши́х дома́х.	*aņí zhiVUT v vaşm̦i STAX baļSHIX daMAX.*

The numbers from 200 to 900 consist of the numbers from 2 to 9 and forms of the word [*STO*]. One part is always unstressed. In [*DV̦E şţi*] both parts have an odd shape. In [*TŖI sta*] and [*chiTIŗi sta*] the second part is the Genitive Singular of [*STO*]. In 500 to 900 the second part [*SOT*] is the Genitive Plural of [*STO*] treated as a Neuter noun (no ending and an inserted vowel).

In cases other than the Nominative and Accusative, the numbers 2 to 9 have their usual forms, and 100 is treated as a Plural: Genitive [*SOT*], Locative [*STAX*].

Nouns and adjectives are treated as with [*PAŢ*].

Here is a thousand roubles.	Во́т ты́сяча рублéй.	*VOT TIşicha ruBĻEY.*
Give me a thousand roubles.	Да́йте мне ты́сячу рублéй.	*DAYţi mņé TIşichu ruBĻEY.*
Without a thousand roubles he can't travel.	Без ты́сячи рублéй о́н не мо́жет е́хать.	*b̦is TIşichi ruBĻEY ón ņi MOzhit YExaţ.*

There are two thousand people living there.	Та́м живу́т две́ ты́сячи люде́й.	*TAM zhiVUT DŢE TIşichi ļuḐEY.*
Here there are eight thousand big houses.	Зде́сь во́семь ты́сяч больши́х домо́в.	*ȤḐEŞ VOşiɱ TIşich baļSHIX daMOF.*
They live in eight thousand big houses.	Они́ живу́т в восьми́ ты́сячах больши́х домо́в.	*aŋí zhiVUT v vaşM̧I TIşichix baļSHIX daMOF.*
They live in one thousand big houses.	Они́ живу́т в ты́сяче больши́х домо́в.	*aŋí zhiVUT f TIşichi baļSHIX daMOF.*
One million people live in this city.	В э́том го́роде живёт миллио́н люде́й.	*v Etam GOraḑi zhiYOT miĻYON ļuḐEY.*
In New York the people live in a million houses.	В Нью-Йо́рке лю́ди живу́т в миллио́не домо́в.	*v ŋyu YORķi ĻUḑi zhiVUT v miĻYOŋi daMOF.*
They live in two million houses.	Живу́т в дву́х миллио́нах домо́в.	*zhiVUT v DVUX miĻYOnax daMOF.*

The word [*TIşicha*] is a Feminine noun and the word [*miĻYON*] is a Masculine noun. Hence [*TIşicha*] has the Accusative form [*TIşichu*]. With these words the nouns and adjectives that tell what is counted are usually in Genitive Plural form. (Some speakers treat them as after *P̧AŢ*).

Hints on spelling.

Кого́ вы́ зде́сь встре́тите? — Моего́ мла́дшего бра́та.	*kaVO ví ȥḑéş FSTŖEţiţi?—mayivó MLATshiva BRAta.*	Whom are you going to meet here?— My younger brother.

The Genitive Masculine and Neuter ending of adjectives and pronouns [*óva, -ava, -iva, -avó, -ivó*] is spelled with the letter г: -ого, -его.

Когда́ вы́ уезжа́ете?	*kaGDA ví uyiZHDZHAyiţi?*	When are you leaving?
Не́т дождя́.	*ŊET daZHDZHA.*	It isn't raining.

There is no letter for the sound [*ZHDZH*]. It is written with two letters, such as зж, жд.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

A. COMMENT ON THE BASIC SENTENCES

I haven't even one clean shirt.	У меня́ не́т ни одно́й чи́стой руба́шки.	*u m̧iņá ŅET ņi aDNOY CHIstay ruBAshķi.*
I haven't ever told anyone anything about that.	Я никогда́ никому́ ничего́ не сказа́л об э́том.	*yá ņi kaGDA ņi kaMU ņi chiVO ņi skaZAL ab Etam.*

If the main part of a sentence, such as the verb, has a negative ([*ņi*, *ņét*]), certain other words also have negatives.

I have to go to the post office.	Мне́ на́до на по́чту.	*mņé ņáda na POchtu.*
I have to go to the barber's.	Мне́ на́до к парикма́херу.	*mņé náda k paŗikMAx̧iru.*
I have to go there.	Мне́ на́до туда́.	*mņé náda tuDA.*
Where are you going?	Куда́ вы́?	*kuDA ví?*

When a sentence contains an expression that means whereto ('to the post office'), a verb meaning 'to go' is often unnecessary.

Walk faster.	Иди́те скоре́е.	*iḐIţi skaŖEyi.*
Bring back my laundry fairly soon.	Верни́те моё бельё поскоре́е.	*v̧irŅIţi mayó b̧iĻYO paskaŖEyi.*
I can't bring it back earlier than in a week.	Я не могу́ верну́ть его́ ра́ньше неде́ли.	*yá ņi maGU v̧irNUŢ yivó RAŅshi ņiḐEļi.*
He's older than I.	Он ста́рше меня́.	*ón STARshi m̧iņá.*

The *comparative* form of adjectives ('more, faster, older') has various endings like [*-éyi*] or [*-shi*]. With [*pa-*] prefixed it means 'a little more'.

With a comparative, the Genitive case means 'than'.

I'll come back as soon as possible.	Я верну́сь как мо́жно скоре́е.	*yá v̧irNUŞ kak MOzhna skaŖEyi.*

With [*kak MOzhna*] 'as possible' they use the comparative.

B. NEW NOUNS

Masculine:

	N.S.	G.S.	N.P.	G.P.
sock	*naSOK*	*naSKA*	*naSĶI*	*naSOK, naSKOF*
barber	*paŗikMAx̧ir*	*paŗikMAx̧ira*	*paŗikMAx̧iri*	*paŗikMAx̧iraf*
kerchief	*plaTOK*	*plaTKA*	*plaTĶI*	*plaTKOF*
shoemaker	*saPOzhŋik*	*saPOzhŋika*	*saPOzhŋiķi*	*saPOzhŋikaf*

Feminine:

	N.S.	A.S.	G.S.	N.P.	G.P.
shoe	*baŢINka*	*baŢINku*	*baŢINķi*	*baŢINķi*	*baŢInak*
week	*ŋiḐEļa*	*ŋiḐEļu*	*ŋiḐEļi*	*ŋiḐEļi*	*ŋiḐEļ*
pair	*PAra*	*PAru*	*PAri*	*PAri*	*PAR*
Pasha (nickname)	*PAsha*	*PAshu*	*PAshi*	——	——
bed	*paŞŢEĻ*	*paŞŢEĻ*	*paŞŢEļi*	*paŞŢEļi*	*paŞŢEļiy*
laundress	*PRACHka*	*PRACHku*	*PRACHķi*	*PRACHķi*	*PRAchik*
receipt	*raSP̧Iska*	*raSP̧Isku*	*raSP̧Isķi*	*raSP̧Isķi*	*raSP̧Isak*
shirt	*ruBAshka*	*ruBAshku*	*ruBAshķi*	*ruBAshķi*	*ruBAshik*

Neuter:

	N.S.	G.S.
linens, washing	*b̧iĻYO*	*b̧iĻYA*

Note that the words [*paŗikMAx̧irskaya*] 'barber shop' and [*PRAchishnaya*] 'laundry' are not nouns but adjectives in Feminine form.

C. VERBS

Imperative form.

Count the laundry (familiar form).	Посчитáй бельё.	*pashchiTAY b̧iĻYO.*

Count the laundry, please (ordinary form).	Посчитáйте бельё, пожáлуйста.	*paschiTAYţi p̧iļYO, paZHALsta.*

The *Imperative* form of the verb is used in commands. There is a familiar form and an ordinary form. The ordinary form is made by adding the ending [*-ţi*] to the familiar form.

If the Present stem of the verb ends in [y] the familiar imperative adds no ending:

Present: [*pashchiTAyu*] familiar Imperative: [*pashchiTAY*]
Present stem: [*pashchitáy-*] ordinary Imperative: [*pashchiTAYţi*]

Drink the milk (familiar).	Пéй молокó.	*P̧EY malaKO.*
Have some tea, please (ordinary form).	Пéйте чáй, пожáлуйста.	*P̧EYţi CHAY, paZHALsta.*

If the Present stem ends in [y] with another consonant before it, the vowel [*e*] is inserted:

Present: [*P̧YU*] familiar Imperative: [*P̧EY*]
Present stem: [*p̧y-*] ordinary Imperative: [*P̧EYţi*]

Please tell me what time it is.	Скажúте, пожáлуйста, котóрый тепéрь чáс?	*skaZHIţi, pazhalsta, kaTOray ţip̧éŗ CHAS?*
Please bring me a cup of coffee.	Принесúте мнé, пожáлуйста, чáшку кóфе.	*p̧riņiŞIţi mņé, paZHALsta, CHAshku KOfi.*
Buy this house.	Купúте этот дóм.	*kuP̧Iţi état DOM.*

If the Present stem does not end in [y], and if it accents any endings, the Imperative has the ending [*-ʼi*]:

Present: [*skaZHU*] 'I'll say', [*p̧riņiSU*] 'I'll bring'. Present stems: [*skazh-, p̧riņis-, kup-*]
[*kuPĻU, KUpit*] 'I'll buy, he'll buy' Imperative: [*skaZHIţi, p̧riņiŞIţi, kuP̧Iţi*]

Introduce me to your sister.	Познакóмьте меня́ с вáшей сестрóй.	*paznaKOM̧ţi m̧iņá s váshiy şiSTROY.*
Meet me here at half past five.	Встрéтьте меня́ здéсь в половúне шестóго	*FSTŖEŢţi m̧iņá ZD̦EŞ f palaYIņi shiSTOva.*

If the Present stem does not end in [y] and accents no endings, the Imperative is made with [-,]; that is, it takes no ending, but the last consonant gets palatalized:

Present: [*paznaKOmļu, paznaKOm̧iţ*] 'I'll make acquainted, he'll make acquainted', [*FSTŖEchu, FSTŖEţit*] 'I'll meet, he'll meet'

Present stems: [*paznakóm-, fsţŗét-*]
Imperative: [*paznaKOM̧ţi, FSTŖEŢţi*]

Please clean my shoes.	Пожáлуйста, почúстите моú ботúнки.	*paZHALsta, paCHIşţiţi mayí baŢINķi.*

Instead of the form with no ending and [-,], the ending [-,*i*], unstressed, is used when the stem ends in two consonants.

Present: [*CHIshchu, CHIşţit*] 'I clean, he cleans' Present stem: [*chíst-*] Imperative: [*CHIşţiţi*]

Drive to the left.	Поезжáйте налéво.	*payiZHDZHAYţi na ĻEva.*

The verb [*YExaţ*] has no Imperative forms; the command 'ride, drive, go (not on foot)' is made from a longer verb.

Reflexive forms.

Please shave me.	Пожáлуйста, побрéйте меня́.	*paZHALsta, paBŖEYţi m̧iņá.*
I'll shave you right away.	Я вáс сейчáс побрéю.	*yá vás şi CHAS paBŖEyu.*
I have to shave (myself).	Мнé нáдо побрúться.	*m̧ņé náda paBŖITsa.*
Cut my hair, please.	Постригúте меня́, пожáлуйста.	*pastŗiĢIţi m̧iņá, paZHALsta.*
I must get my hair cut.	Мнé нáдо пострúчься.	*m̧ņé náda paSTRICHsa.*
He has had his hair cut.	Он пострúгся.	*ón paSTŖIKsa.*
Get a shave and a haircut.	Побрéйтесь и постригúтесь.	*paBREYţiş i pastŗiĢIţis.*
You've got a shave and a haircut, it seems.	Вы́, кáжется, побрúлись и пострúглись.	*VI, KAzhitsa, paBŖIļiş i paSTŖIģļiş.*
I'll soon bring back your laundry.	Я скóро верну́ вáше бельё.	*yá SKOra ŗirNU vásha b̧iĻYO.*
I'll soon come back.	Я скóро верну́сь.	*yá SKOra ŗirNUŞ.*

The reflexive forms, as we have seen, add [-*şa*] or [-*sa*] to the verb form after a consonant, and [-*ş*] or [-*s*] after a vowel. The meanings of Reflexive forms vary greatly.

It seems to me you aren't well.	Мнé кáжется, вы́ нездорóвы.	*mņé KAzhitsa, ví ņi zdaROvi.*
Will you stay here?	Вы́ здéсь остáнетесь?	*vi ȤḐEŞ aSTAņiţiş?*

Some verbs occur only in the Reflexive form.

Compound verbs.

I drank lots of water.	Я пи́л мнóго воды́.	*yá P̧IL MNOga vaDI.*
I drank [up] three glasses of water.	Я вы́пил три́ стакáна воды́.	*yá VIp̧iļ TŖI staKAna vaDI.*
The little boy is already walking.	Мáльчик ужé хóдит.	*MAĻchik uzhé XOḑit.*
The train leaves at quarter past two.	Пóезд отхóдит в чéтверть трéтьего.	*POyist atXOḑit f CHEtv̧irţ TŖEţyiva.*
He's just now coming into the restaurant.	Он как рáз вхóдит в ресторáн.	*ón kak RAS FXOḑit v ŗistaRAN.*

Verbs are compounded with various prefixes, such as [*vi-*, *at-*, *v-*]. Most of these have the same shape as prepositions. The forms of a compound verb are like those of the simple verb. The meaning is sometimes slightly different and sometimes very different.

I have to go now.	Мнé нáдо тепéрь итти́.	*mņé NAda ţip̧éŗ iŢI.*
I have to find a laundress.	Мнé нáдо найти́ прáчку.	*mņé NAda nayŢI PRACHku.*
He has to leave right away.	Емý нáдо сейчáс уйти́.	*yimú NAda şi CHAS uyŢI.*

After a prefix, the [*i*] of the verb [*iŢI*] becomes [*y*].

I have to go to the third floor of this house to look for one of my friends.	Мнé нáдо пойти́ на трéтий этáж э́того дóма, искáть одногó моегó товáрища.	*mņé NAda payŢI na TŖEţiy eTASH étava DOma, iSKAŢ adnaVO mayivó taVAŗishcha.*
Come to the third floor; I live on the third floor.	Пойди́те на трéтий этáж; я́ живý на трéтьем этажé.	*paḐIţi na TŖEţiy eTASH; yá zhiVU na TŖEţyem etaZHE.*

The compound [*payŢI*] has the irregular Imperative [*paḐIţi*], with loss of [*y*].

New verbs.

We give the new verbs of this Unit in their shortest form, leaving off prefixes and the Reflexive endings wherever possible.

		Present of Type 1:		
	Infinitive	I	he, she, it	Past
to shave	*BŖIŢ*	*BŖEyu*	*BŖEyit*	*BŖIL*
to read	*chiTAŢ*	*chiTAyu*	*chiTAyit*	*chiTAL*
	Compounds: *shchiTAŢ*, *pashchiTAŢ* 'to count'			
to look for	*iSKAŢ*	*iSHCHU*	*Ishchit*	*iSKAL*
to be going (on foot)	*iŢI*	*iDU*	*iḐOT*	*SHOL, SHLA,* *SHLO, SHĻI*
	Compounds: *nayŢI* 'to find', *payŢI* 'to go to a place'.			
to seem	*kaZATsa*	*kaZHUŞ*	*KAzhitsa*	*kaZALsa*
	Compound: *skaZAŢ* 'to tell'.			
to carry	*niŞŢI*	*ŋiSU*	*niŞOT*	*ŊOS, ŋiSLA,* *ŋiSLO, ŋiSĻI*
	Compound: *pŗiŋiŞŢI* 'to bring'.			
to send	*SLAŢ*	*SHĻU*	*SHĻOT*	*SLAL*
	Compound: *pŗiSLAŢ* 'to send up, over'.			
to try hard	*staRATsa*	*staRAyuş*	*staRAyitsa*	*staRALsa*
to begin	*STAŢ*	[illegible]	*STAŋit*	*STAL*
	Compound: *aST*[illegible] to stay, remain, be left'.			

to wash (clothes)	*şţiRAŢ*	*şţiRAyu*	*şţiRAyit*	*şţiRAL*
to cut (hair)	*STŖICH*	*stŗiGU*	*stŗiZHOT*	*STŖIK, STŖIgla*
to bring back	*şirNUŢ*	*şirNU*	*şirŅOT*	*şirNUL*

Reflexive: *şirNUTsa* 'to come back, go back'.

Present of Type 2.

to repair	*chiŅIŢ*	*chiŅU*	*CHIņit, chiŅIT*	*chiŅIL*
to clean	*CHIşţiţ*	*CHIshchu*	*CHIşţit*	*CHIşţil*
to walk	*xaḐIŢ*	*xaZHU*	*XOḑit*	*xaḐIL*

Compound: *fxaḐIŢ* 'to go in, to come in'.

D. DATIVE CASE

Give this young man five roubles.	Да́йте пя́ть рубле́й э́тому молодо́му челове́ку.	*DAYţi PAŢ ruB̦ĻEY étamu malaDOmu chilaV̦Eku.*

Masculine and Neuter nouns have the ending [*-u*] in the *Dative* case form. Masculine and Neuter adjectives have the ending [*-ómu*]. The accent is the same as in the Genitive.

When a verb has two objects, a person and a thing, the person is in the Dative case and the thing in the Accusative.

I have given the letter to one of my friends.	Я да́л письмо́ одному́ моему́ това́рищу.	*yá dal pişMO adnamú mayimú taVAŗishchu.*

The special adjectives [*MOY*] and [*aḐIN*] have the ending [*-amú*] in the Dative Masculine and Neuter.

Give the laundry to this young girl.	Да́йте бельё э́той молодо́й де́вушке.	*DAYţi b̦iĻYO étay malaDOY ḐEvushķi.*
I've given the letters to your wife.	Я да́л пи́сьма ва́шей жене́.	*yá DAL PIŞma váshiy zhiŅE.*

Feminine nouns in the Dative case have the ending [*-,e*], unstressed [*-,i*]; Feminine adjectives have the ending [*-oy*]. This is the same as the Locative.

Give the receipt to my sister.	Да́йте распи́ску мое́й сестре́.	*DAYţi raSP̧Isku mayéy şiSTŖE.*

The special adjective [*MOY*] has the ending [*-éy*] in the Dative Feminine. This is the same as the Locative.

I gave the tickets to your sons.	Я да́л биле́ты ва́шим сыновья́м.	*yá dál b̧iĻEti váshim sanaV̧YAM.*
They are selling the house to these young people.	Они́ продаю́т до́м э́тим молоды́м людям.	*aŋí pradaYUT DOM éţim malaDIM ĻUḑim.*

Plural nouns in the Dative case have the ending [*-am*]; adjectives [*-im*].

Give me a receipt.	Да́йте мне́ распи́ску.	*DAYţi mŋé raSP̧Isku.*
Give us the tickets.	Да́йте на́м биле́ты.	*DAYţi nám b̧iĻEti.*
I'll find a laundress for you.	Я ва́м найду́ пра́чку.	*yá vám nayDU PRACHku.*
Give him the letter.	Да́йте ему́ письмо́.	*DAYţi yimú p̧işMO.*
Give her some tea.	Да́йте е́й ча́ю.	*DAYţi yéy CHAyu.*
Give them five roubles.	Да́йте и́м пя́ть рубле́й.	*DAYţi yím P̧AŢ ruBĻEY.*
To whom did you give the letters?	Кому́ вы́ да́ли пи́сьма?	*kaMU ví DAļi P̧IŞma?*
Why do you say that?	Почему́ вы́ та́к говори́те?	*pa chiMU ví TAK gavaŖIţi?*

The Dative forms of the pronouns are [*kaMU, chiMU, MŊE, NAM, VAM, yiMU, YEY, YIM*]. The familiar form for 'you' in the Dative is [*ţiB̧E*].

She gave a thousand roubles to her two daughters, and nothing to her three sons.	Она́ дала́ ты́сячу рубле́й дву́м дочеря́м, а трём сыновья́м ничего́.	*aná daLA TIşichu ruBĻEY DVUM dachiŖAM, a TŖOM sanaV̧YAM ŋi chiVO.*
We gave the tickets to four friends of ours.	Биле́ты мы́ да́ли четырём на́шим друзья́м	*b̧iĻEti mí dáļi chitiŖOM náshim druZ̧YAM.*

The Dative forms of 2, 3, 4 are [*DVUM, TŖOM, chitiŖOM*]. Nouns and adjectives that go with them are Dative Plural.

They gave tickets to five people.	Они́ да́ли биле́ты пяти́ лю́дям.	*aŋí dáļi ƀiĻEti piŢI ĻUḑim.*

The numbers from 5 on have the Dative like the Genitive and Locative.

He has already told this to a thousand people.	Он уже́ сказа́л э́то ты́сяче люде́й.	*ón uzhé skaZAL éta TIşichi ļuḐEY.*
You are talking to a million people now.	Вы́ тепе́рь говори́те миллио́ну люде́й.	*ví ţipéŗ gavaŖIţi miĻYOnu ļuḐEY.*

The words [*TIşicha*] and [*miĻYON*] are nouns.

Don't talk to me about that.	Не говори́те мне́ об э́том.	*ŋi gavaŖIţi mŋé ab Etam.*
Tell me, please: what time it is now?	Скажи́те мне́, пожа́луйста: кото́рый тепе́рь ча́с?	*skaZHIţi mŋé paZHALsta: kaTOray ţipéŗ CHAS?*

The verbs [*gavaŖIŢ*] and [*skaZAŢ*] have an object (the person to whom one talks) in the Dative case.

How do you like Moscow?	Ка́к ва́м нра́вится Москва́?	*kák vám NRAv̧itsa maSKVA?*
It seems to me that she is not well.	Мне́ ка́жется, что́ она́ нездоро́ва.	*mŋé KAzhitsa shtó aná ŋi zdaROva.*

The verbs [*NRAv̧itsa*] and [*kaZATsa*] take an object in the Dative case; this object is the person to whom something is pleasing or to whom something seems to be so and so.

I'll like that very much ('That will be very pleasant for me').	Это мне́ бу́дет о́чень прия́тно.	*éta mŋé buḑit Ochiŋ p̧riYAtna.*
We shall have to go to the post office ('it will be necessary for us').	На́м на́до бу́дет пойти́ на по́чту.	*nám NAda búḑit payŢI na POchtu.*
I'm thirsty ('to me there is want to drink').	Мне́ хо́чется пи́ть.	*mŋé XOchitsa P̧IŢ.*
I feel cold ('To me it's cold').	Мне́ хо́лодно.	*mŋé XOladna.*
Do you feel warm here?	Ва́м зде́сь тепло́?	*vám z̧ḑéş ţiPLO?*

I feel very sorry for him ('To me it is very much too bad of him').	Мне́ о́чень жа́лко его́.	*mŋé Ochiņ ZHALka yivó.*
Why don't you go there? ('Why not for you to go?')	Почему́ ва́м не пойти́?	*pa chiMU vám ŋi payŢI?*
What am I to do?	Что́ мне́ де́лать?	*SHTO mŋé ḐElaţ?*
I don't know what to do.	Я не зна́ю, что́ мне́ де́лать.	*yá ŋi ZNAyu SHTO mŋé ḐElaţ.*

The Dative case is used with many expressions where something acts on a person. With an Infinitive the Dative means that the action is suggested for a person ('it's up to him to do it').

I'm going to the barber's.	Я иду́ к парикма́херу.	*yá idú k paŗikMAẋiru.*
I'll go to the second floor, to my friends'.	Я пойду́ на второ́й эта́ж, к мои́м друзья́м.	*yá payDU na fţaROY eTASH, k mayím druẒYAM.*
I [am] now [going] to their place.	Я тепе́рь к ни́м.	*yá ţipéŗ k ŊIM.*
Why are you doing that?	Почему́ вы́ де́лаете это?	*pa chiMU ví ḐElayiţi Eta?*

The preposition [*k*] takes the Dative case. In some meanings the preposition [*pa*] takes the Dative case.

2. **Covering English and Russian of Word Study** (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering first the English, then the Russian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. **Review of Basic Sentences**

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. **Review of Basic Sentences** (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the Basic Sentences covering up the English and reading aloud the Russian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Read aloud each of the following and then pick out the expression you think most suitable.

1. You want to know where there is a laundry. You ask:

a.	В э́том зда́нии пра́чечная?	*v Etam ZDAŋiyi PRAchishnaya?*
b.	Где́ я́ могу́ найти́ пра́чку?	*GḐE yá magú nayŢI PRACHku?*
c.	Где́ я́ могу́ найти́ пра́чечную?	*GḐE yá magú nayŢI PRAchishnuyu?*

2. Your friend answers that there isn't any good laundry in the place. She says:

a.	Я не зна́ю, где́ пра́чечная.	*yá ŋi ZNAyu gḑé PRAchishnaya.*
b.	Зде́сь не́т ни одно́й хоро́шей пра́чечной.	*Z̧ḐEŞ ŅET ŋi aDNOY xaROshiy PRAchishnay.*
c.	Я не могу́ вам сказа́ть, где́ пра́чечная.	*yá ŋi maGU vám skaZAŢ gḑé PRAchishnaya.*

3. You don't know what to do. You say:

a.	Я не зна́ю, что́ мне́ де́лать.	*yá ŋi ZHAyu SHTO mŋé ḐElaţ.*
b.	Я не зна́ю, где́ купи́ть руба́шки.	*yá ŋi ZNAyu GḐE kuP̧IŢ ruBAshķi.*
c.	Я не зна́ю, где́ носовы́е платки́.	*yá ŋi ZNAyu GḐE nasaVIya plaTĶI.*

4. You haven't a single clean shirt. You say:

a.	У меня́ то́лько две́ чи́стых руба́шки.	*u ɱiŋá tóļka DV̧E CHIstix ruBAshķi.*
b.	У меня́ то́лько одна́ чи́стая руба́шка.	*u ɱiŋá tóļka aDNA CHIstaya ruBAshka.*
c.	У меня́ не́т ни одно́й чи́стой руба́шки.	*u ɱiŋá ŅET ŋi aDNOY CHIstay ruBAshķi.*

5. Your friend says she will send you a good laundress. She says:

a. Я ва́м пришлю́ хоро́шего парикма́хера.	*yá vám p̧ŗiSHĻU xaROshiva paŗikMAx̧ira.*
b. Я ва́м пришлю́ хоро́шую пра́чку.	*yá vám p̧ŗiSHĻU xaROshuyu PRACHku.*
c. Я ва́м пришлю́ чи́стых руба́шек.	*yá vám p̧ŗiSHĻU CHIstix ruBAshik.*

6. The laundress comes and asks whether you have counted your laundry. She says:

a. Ва́м на́до бу́дет посчита́ть бельё?	*vám NAda búḑit pashchiTAŢ b̧iĻYO?*
b. Вы́ уже́ посчита́ли бельё?	*ví uzhé pashchiTAļi b̧iĻYO?*
c. Вы́ и́щете хоро́шую пра́чку?	*ví Ishchiţi xaROshuyu PRACHku?*

7. You have twelve soiled shirts. You say:

a. У меня́ две́сти гря́зных руба́шек.	*u m̧iņá DV̧E şţi GŖAznix ruBAshik.*
b. У меня́ два́дцать гря́зных руба́шек.	*u m̧iņá DVATciţ GŖAznix ruBAshik.*
c. У меня́ двена́дцать гря́зных руба́шек.	*u m̧iņá dv̧iNATciţ GŖAznix ruBAshik.*

8. You ask her when she can bring back your laundry. You say:

a. Вы́ принесёте мно́го белья́?	*ví p̧ŗiņiŞOţi MNOga b̧iĻYA?*
b. Когда́ вы́ вернёте моё бельё?	*kaGDA ví v̧irŅOţi mayó b̧iĻYO?*
c. Когда́ вы́ вернётесь?	*kaGDA ví v̧irŅOţiş?*

9. She can't bring back the laundry sooner than in a week. She says:

a. Я не могу́ верну́ть бельё ра́ньше неде́ли.	*yá ņi maGU v̧irNUŢ b̧iĻYO RAŅshi ņiḐEļi.*
b. Мне́ ка́жется, что́ вы́ о́чень гря́зный челове́к.	*m̧ņé KAzhitsa shtó ví Ochiņ GŖAznay chilaV̧EK.*
c. Я не хочу́ стира́ть э́то бельё.	*yá ņi xaCHU şţiRAŢ éta b̧iĻYO.*

10. You want her to bring the laundry to the second floor when she returns it. You say:

a. Когда́ вы́ вернёте бельё, принеси́те распи́ску.	*kaGDA ví v̧irŅOţi b̧iĻYO, p̧ŗiņiŞIţi raSP̧Isku.*
b. Когда́ вы́ вернёте бельё, да́йте мне́ девяно́сто копе́ек.	*kaGDA ví v̧irŅOţi b̧iĻYO, DAYţi m̧ņé ḑiv̧iNOsta kaP̧Eyik.*

c. Когда́ вы́ вернёте бельё, принеси́те его́ на второ́й эта́ж.	*kaGDA vɨ́ y̦irŅOţi b̦iĻYO, p̦ŗiņiŞIţi yivó na ftaROY eTASH.*

11. She asks whether you live on the second floor. She says:

a. Вы живёте зде́сь на второ́м этаже́?	*vɨ́ zhiY̦Oţi z̦ḑéş na ftaROM etaZHE?*
b. Вы́ живёте на тре́тьем этаже́ э́того до́ма?	*vɨ́ zhiY̦Oţi na ŢŖEţyim etaZHE Etava DOma?*
c. Вы́ живёте в большо́й гости́нице?	*vɨ́ zhiY̦Oţi v baļSHOY gaŞŢIņici?*

12. You tell her that of course you live here. You say:

a. Коне́чно я́ живу́ в большо́й гости́нице.	*kaŅEshna yá zhiVU v baļSHOY gaŞŢIņici.*
b. Коне́чно я́ хочу́ расписку	*kaŅEshna yá xaCHU raSP̦Isku.*
c. Коне́чно я́ зде́сь живу́.	*kaŅEshna yá z̦ḑéş zhiVU.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Russian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Russian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Russian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

1. *Boris has just moved into Mrs. Semeonov's house.*

Unit 8, Record Side 3, after 4th spiral. (78 RPM) **(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 8, after 2nd spiral.**

Boris:	Здра́вствуйте, гражда́нка Семео́нова!	*ZDRAstvuyţi, graZHDANka şiM̧Onava!*
Landlady:	Здра́вствуйте!	*ZDRAstvuyţi!*
Boris:	Мне́ всё зде́сь нра́вится.	*mņé FŞO z̧ḑéş NRAv̧itsa.*
	Скажи́те, пожа́луйста: где́ я́ могу́ найти́ пра́чку?	*skaZHIţi paZHALsta: GḐE yá magú nayŢI PRACHku?*
	У меня́ не́т чи́стого белья́.	*u m̧iŅA ŅET CHIstava b̧iĻYA.*
Landlady:	Вы́ хоти́те пра́чечную и́ли пра́чку?	*ví xaţiţi PRAchishnuyu ļi PRACHku?*
Boris:	Я хочу́ пра́чку.	*yá xachú PRACHku.*
Landlady:	Хорошо́, я́ ва́м пришлю́ Па́шу.	*xaraSHO; yá vám pŗiSHĻU PAshu.*
Boris:	Па́ша — пра́чка?	*PAsha, PRACHka?*
Landlady:	Да́, она́ о́чень хоро́шая пра́чка.	*DA; aná Ochiņ xaROshiya PRACHka.*
	Я ва́м её пришлю́ сего́дня.	*yá vám yiyó pŗiSHĻU şiVO ḑņa.*
Boris:	Я бу́ду на второ́м этаже́.	*yá búdu na ftaROM etaZHE.*
Landlady:	Она́ ва́с та́м найдёт.	*aná vás TAM nayḐOT.*

2. *Pasha comes in to get Boris's laundry.*

Unit 8, Record Side 4, beginning. (78 RPM)

Boris:	Кто́ та́м?	*KTO TAM?*
Pasha:	Это я́, Па́ша.	*éta YA, PAsha.*
Boris:	Пожа́луйста, входи́те.	*paZHALsta, fxaḐIţi.*
Pasha:	Гражда́нка Семео́нова мне́ сказа́ла, что́ вы́ и́щете пра́чку.	*graZHDANka şiM̧Onava mņé skaZAla shtó ví Ishchiţi PRACHku.*

Boris:	Да́, у меня́ мно́го гря́зного белья́.	*DA, u m̦iŋá MNOga GŖAznava b̦il̦YA.*
Pasha:	Ничего́.	*ŋi chiVO.*
	Где́ ва́ше бельё?	*GḐE vásha b̦il̦YO?*
Boris:	Во́т та́м на посте́ли.	*vót TAM na paŞŢEl̦i.*
Pasha:	Я посчита́ю.	*yá pashchiTAyu.*
	Двена́дцать носовы́х платко́в.	*ḑviNATciţ nasaVIX plaTKOF.*
	Пя́ть руба́шек.	*P̦AŢ ruBAshik.*
	Ше́сть па́р носо́к.	*SHEŞŢ pár naSOK.*
Boris:	Когда́ вы́ вернёте моё бельё?	*kaGDA ví z̦irŊOţi mayó b̦il̦YO?*
Pasha:	Не ра́ньше неде́ли.	*ŋi RAŊshi ŋiḐEl̦i.*
Boris:	Пожа́луйста, постара́йтесь пора́ньше.	*paZHALsta, pastaRAYţiş paRAŊshi.*
	Я оста́лся без чи́стого белья́.	*yá aSTALşa b̦is CHIstava b̦il̦YA.*
Pasha:	Это ничего́!	*éta ŋi chiVO!*
	Вы́ бу́дете зде́сь?	*ví búḑiţi Z̦ḐEŞ?*
	Гражда́нка Семео́нова мне́ сказа́ла, что́ ва́м всё здесь о́чень нра́вится.	*graZHDANka şiM̦Onava mŋé skaZAla shtó vám FŞO Z̦ḐEŞ Ochiŋ NRAz̦itsa.*
Boris:	А кто́ пойдёт рабо́тать в го́спитале?	*a KTO payḐOT raBOtaţ v GOspital̦i?*
Pasha:	Го́спиталь подождёт!	*GOspital̦ padaZHḐOT!*
Boris:	Не́т!	*ŊET!*
	Мне́ на́до туда́ пойти́.	*mŋé NAda tuDA payŢI.*
Pasha:	Ну́, хорошо́!	*NU, xaraSHO!*
	Верну́ ва́ше бельё в три́ дня́*.	*z̦irNU vásha b̦il̦YO f TŖI DŊA.*

---

*Not the usual expression.

Boris:	Спаси́бо, спаси́бо.	*spaŞIba, spaŞIba.*
	Скажи́те, пожа́луйста: далеко́ парикма́херская?	*skaZHIţi paZHALsta: daļiKO paŗikMAx̧irskaya?*
Pasha:	Не́т, недалеко́.	*ŅET, ņi daļiKO.*
Boris:	Я хочу́ хоро́шего парикма́хера.	*yá xachú xaROshiva paŗikMAx̧ira.*
	Мне́ на́до постри́чься и побри́ться	*mņé náda paSTŖICHsa i paBŖITsa.*
Pasha:	Парикма́херская недалеко́.	*paŗikMAx̧irskaya ņi daļiKO.*
	А почему́ ва́м не найти́ гражда́нку Петро́ву?	*a pa chiMU vám ņi nayŢI graZHDANku piTROvu?*
	Она́ всё зна́ет.	*aná FŞO ZNAyit.*
Boris:	Я её не зна́ю.	*yá yiyó ņi ZNAyu.*
	Я то́лько неда́вно с не́й познако́мился.	*yá tóļka ņi DAvna s ŅEY paznaKOm̧ilşa.*
Pasha:	Она́ не ва́ша прия́тельница?	*aná ņi VAsha p̧riYAţiļņica?*
Boris:	Не́т, но́ мы́ познако́мились на аэродро́ме.	*ŅET, nó mí paznaKOm̧iļiş na airaDROm̧i.*
	Она́ мне́ о́чень нра́вится, и она́ нашла́ мне́ э́ту гости́ницу.	*aná mņé Ochiņ NRAv̧itsa, i aná naSHLA mņé Etu gaŞŢIņicu.*
Pasha:	Это хорошо́, что́ вы́ зде́сь.	*éta xaraSHO shtó ví Z̧D̦EŞ.*
	Вы́ гражда́нке Семёновой то́же нра́витесь.	*ví graZHDANķi şiM̧Onavay TO zhi NRAv̧iţiş.*
Boris:	Спаси́бо, Па́ша.	*spaŞIba, PAsha.*
	Вы́ хоро́ший челове́к.	*ví xaROshiy chilaV̧EK.*
Pasha:	Ну́, хорошо́.	*NU xaraSHO.*
	Я принесу́ бельё как мо́жно скоре́е.	*yá p̧riņiSU b̧iĻYO kak MOzhna skaŖEyi.*

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Russian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Russian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Russian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Russian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the models outlined below fairly closely; then change the situations somewhat. Invent new combinations of subject matter.

1. You ask the landlady where you can find a laundry or laundress, because you need to have some clothes washed. She tells you there is a laundry not far away, and that a laundress will come today, at ten o'clock. You thank her and say that you will bring the dirty clothes when she comes. You say you need a shave and a haircut, too, and the landlady tells you where you can find a barber.
2. You are watching a friend pack and trying to help him. You are both counting things as you put them away, and commenting on whether they are clean or dirty, good or not so good. Socks, shirts, shoes (needing repairs or not), handkerchiefs. When he gets packed you ask him where he is going. He tells you and adds that his train leaves at quarter past four. You tell him to hurry, and say goodbye.
3. You meet a friend on the street. He tells you that he is going to buy a pair of shoes. You ask him why he doesn't go to the cobbler; he repairs shoes. Your friend says he can't find his second pair and he'd left without any shoes. You ask if he has only two pair. He says yes, his brother has one pair of his shoes and didn't return them when he told him he would. You say that then he really needs a pair.
4. The laundress comes and you give her your soiled clothes. She counts them, and you ask her when she'll bring them back. She says she will try to get them to you before a week's time. You ask if she can hurry. She says she can bring them tomorrow, but that costs three rubles seventy. You say that you will wait.

(Numbers are perhaps the hardest things to learn in a foreign language. If you really want to learn how to handle Russian numbers, do all your counting in Russian. You will be surprised how many times each day you have to do a bit of simple counting. Do this counting in Russian and you will quickly get the hang of Russian numbers.)

Section F—Conversation (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

бельё [*b̦iL̦YO*] washable clothing, linens; clothing to be washed, washing

боти́нка [*baȚINka*] shoe

верну́ть [*v̦irNUȚ*] to bring back; **верну́ться** to come back, to go back

входи́ть [*fxaḐIȚ*] to come in, to go in

гря́зный [*GŖAznay*] dirty

далеко́ [*dal̦iKO*] it is far

иска́ть [*iSKAȚ*] to look for

к to; **к парикма́херу** [*k par̦ikMAx̦iru*] to the barber's

каза́ться [*kaZATsa*] to seem

найти́ [*nayȚI*] to find

недалеко́ [*ņi dal̦iKO*] not far

неде́ля [*ņiḐEl̦a*] week

носово́й [*nasaVOY*] for the nose; **носово́й плато́к** [*nasavóy plaTOK*] handkerchief

носо́к [*naSOK*] sock

оста́ться [*aSTATsa*] to be left, to remain

па́ра [*PAra*] pair

парикма́хер [*par̦ikMAx̦ir*] barber

парикма́херская [*par̦ikMAx̦irskaya*] barber shop

Па́ша [*PAsha*] woman's nickname

плато́к [*plaTOK*] piece of cloth, kerchief

побри́ть [*paB̦RIȚ*] to give a shave; **побри́ться** [*paB̦RITsa*] to give oneself a shave; to get a shave

пойти́ [*payȚI*] to go to a place

пора́ньше [*paRAŅshi*] a bit earlier

поспеши́ть [*paspiSHIȚ*] to hurry

постара́ться [*pastaRATsa*] to make a hard try

посте́ль [*paŞȚEL̦*] (Feminine) bed

постри́чь [*poSTŖICH*] to give a haircut; **постри́чься** [*paSTŖICH*sa] to get a haircut

посчита́ть [*pashchiTAŢ*] to count up
почини́ть [*pachiŅIŢ*] to repair
почи́стить [*paCHIşţiţ*] to clean
пра́чка [*PRACHka*] laundress
пра́чечная [*PRAchishnaya*] laundry
принести́ [*pŗiņiŞŢI*] to bring
присла́ть [*priSLAŢ*] to send

ра́ньше [*RAŅshi*] earlier, sooner

распи́ска [*raSP̧Iska*] receipt
руба́шка [*ruBAshka*] shirt

сапо́жник [*saPOzhņik*] shoemaker
скоре́е [*skaŖEyi*] faster, sooner
стира́ть [*şţiRAŢ*] to wash (clothes)

чи́стый [*CHIstay*] clean

эта́ж [*eTASH*] storey

UNIT 9

FINDING A ROOM

Section A—Basic Sentences

Go once through the *Basic Sentences* in unison, concentrating on the *Aids to Listening*, as you have done before. Then go through the *Hints on Spelling and Pronunciation*. Go once through the *Basic Sentences* individually trying to follow the *Conventional Spelling* as much as possible. The last time through individually, you should be able to follow the *Conventional Spelling* without any trouble.

1. Basic Sentences

Smith, in Moscow, asks at the information desk about a room.

Unit 9, Record Side 1, beginning. (78 RPM)

(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 9, beginning.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING	AIDS TO LISTENING
	Smith	
room (A.)	ко́мнату	*KOmnatu*
Tell me, please, Miss, where can I find a room?	Скажи́те, пожа́луйста, гражда́нка, где́ я́ могу́ найти́ ко́мнату?	*skaZHIţi, paZHALsta, graZHDANka, GḐE yá magú nayţí KOmnatu?*
	Clerk	
(you) are looking for	и́щете	*Ishchiţi*
(in a) boarding house (L.)	в пансио́не	*f panŞYOņi*
Are you looking for a room in a hotel or (in) a boarding house?	Вы́ и́щете ко́мнату в гости́нице и́ли в пансио́не?	*ví Ishchiţi KOmnatu v gaŞŢIņici íļi f panŞYOņi?*

cheaper	дешéвле	*ḑiSHEvļi*
than	чéм	*CHEM*
more	бóлее	*BOļiyi*
(it is) comfortable	удóбно	*uDOBna*
A boarding house is cheaper than a hotel, but (in) a hotel (it) is (more) comfortable.	Пансиóн дешéвле чем гостúница, нó в гостúнице бóлее удóбно.	*panŞYON ḑiSHEvļi chém gaŞŢIŋica, nó v gaŞŢIŋici BOļiyi uDOBna.*
street (L.)	ýлице	*Uļici*
I know a very comfortable boarding house on my street.	Я знáю одúн óчень хорóший пансиóн на моéй ýлице.	*yá znáyu aḑín Ochiŋ xaROshiy panŞYON na mayéy Uļici.*
	Smith	
if	éсли	*YEşļi*
too [much]	слúшком	*ŞĻIshkam*
(it is) expensive	дóрого	*DOraga*
I'd like a room there, if it's not too expensive.	Я бы хотéл кóмнату тáм, éсли тáм не слúшком дóрого.	*yá bi xaŢEL KOmnatu TAM, yéşļi TAM ŋi ŞĻIshkam DOraga.*
	Clerk	
address	áдрес	*Adŗis*
Here's the address.	Вóт áдрес.	*VOT Adŗis.*
	Smith	
Thanks. Goodbye.	Спасúбо. До свидáния.	*spaŞIba. da sv̧iDAŋya.*
He goes to the address.		
	Smith	
The girl at the station gave (me) the address of your boarding house.	Дéвушка на вокзáле далá мнé áдрес вáшего пансиóна.	*ḐEvushka na vagZAļi daLA mŋé Adŗis váshiva panŞYOna.*

Landlady

come in	войди́те	*vayḐIţi*
free, vacant*	свобо́дный	*svaBOdnay*
floor (L.)	этаже́	*etaZHE*
Come in; I have a vacant room on the second floor.	Войди́те; у меня́ е́сть свобо́дная ко́мната на второ́м этаже́.	*vayḐIţi; u m̦iņá yéşţ svaBOdnaya KOmnata na ftaROM etaZHE.*
(take a look) see	посмотри́те	*pasmaTŖIţi*
Look, this is a good room.	Посмотри́те, это хоро́шая ко́мната.	*pasmaTŖIţi, Eta xaROshiya KOmnata.*
The bed is very comfortable.	Посте́ль о́чень удо́бная.	*paŞŢEĻ Ochiņ uDObnaya.*

Unit 9, Record Side 2, beginning. (78 RPM)

Smith

(I) see	ви́жу	*V̦Izhu*
(it is) furnished (F.)	обста́влена	*apSTAvļina*
Yes, I see (that) it's furnished very well.	Да́, я́ ви́жу, что́ она́ о́чень хорошо́ обста́влена.	*DA, yá V̦Izhu shtó aná Ochiņ xaraSHO apSTAvļina.*
table	сто́л	*STOL*
chairs	сту́лья	*STUļya*
window (G.)	окна́	*aKNA*
I like [the whole thing], the table, the chairs, and the three big windows.	Мне́ нра́вится — сто́л, сту́лья и три́ больши́х окна́.	*mņé NRAv̦i sa—STOL, STUļya, i TŖI baļSHIX aKNA.*

---

*Not on the record.

Landlady

bathroom	ва́нная	*VANnaya*
next door	ря́дом	*ŖAdam*
dining room	столо́вая	*staLOvaya*
downstairs	внизу́	*v ŋiZU*
The bathroom is next door, and the dining room is downstairs.	Ва́нная ря́дом, а столо́вая внизу́.	*VANnaya ŖAdam, a staLOvaya v ŋiZU.*
(we) have lunch*	за́втракаем	*ZAftrakayim*
(we) have dinner	обе́даем	*aβEdayim*
We have lunch* and dinner there.	Мы́ та́м за́втракаем и обе́даем.	*mɨ́ tám ZAftrakayim i aβEdayim.*
we'll look at	посмо́трим	*paSMOtŗim*
kitchen (A.)	ку́хню	*KUxŋu*
living room (A.)	гости́ную	*gaŞŢInuyu*
Let's look at the kitchen and then go to the living room.	Посмо́трим ку́хню, а пото́м пойдём в гости́ную.	*paSMOtŗim KUxŋu, a pa TOM payḐOM v gaŞŢInuyu.*

Smith

I like all this very much.	Мне́ всё э́то о́чень нра́вится.	*mŋé FŞO éta Ochiŋ NRAγitsa.*
How much does this room cost?	Ско́лько сто́ит э́та ко́мната?	*SKOĻka STOyit éta KOmnata?*

Landlady

per month	в ме́сяц	*v MEşic*
including	включа́я	*fkļuCHAya*
lunch *or* breakfast	за́втрак	*ZAftrak*
dinner	обе́д	*aβET*

---

*The English on the record is an error.

Fifty roubles a month; a hundred roubles including lunch* and dinner.	Пятьдеся́т рубле́й в ме́сяц; сто́ рубле́й включа́я за́втрак и обе́д.	*pid ḑiŞAT ruBĻEY v M̧Eşic; STO ruBĻEY fklucháya ZAftrak i aβET.*
	Smith	
That's expensive, but I like this room.	Это до́рого, но́ мне́ нра́вится э́та ко́мната.	*éta DOraga, nó mŋé NRAv̧itsa éta KOmnata.*
maybe	мо́жет бы́ть	*MOzhid biţ*
Maybe you have a cheaper room than this.	Мо́жет бы́ть у ва́с е́сть ко́мната деше́вле э́той.	*MOzhid bíţ u VAS yéşţ KOmnata ḑiSHEvļi Etay.*

Unit 9, Record Side 3, beginning. (78 RPM)

	Landlady	
such (N.F.)	така́я	*taKAyu*
Yes, I have, but it's not as comfortable.	Да́, е́сть, но́ она́ не така́я удо́бная.	*DA, YEŞŢ, nó aNA ŋi taKAya uDObnaya.*
	Smith	
(I) will take	возьму́	*vaz̧MU*
Well, o.k.; I'll take this room.	Ну́, хорошо́; я́ возьму́ э́ту ко́мнату.	*nú xaraSHO; yá vaz̧MU étu KOmnatu.*
Without lunch and dinner* that's fifty roubles?	Без за́втрака и обе́да она́ сто́ит пятьдеся́т рубле́й?	*b̧iz ZAftraka i aβEda aná stóyit pid ḑiŞAT ruBĻEY?*
Yes, that's not too expensive.	Да́; э́то не сли́шком до́рого.	*DA; Eta ŋi ŞĻIshkam DOraga.*
	Smith	
let's sign	подпи́шем	*patP̧Ishim*
papers	бума́ги	*buMAgi*
Let's sign the papers.	Подпи́шем бума́ги.	*patP̧Ishim buMAgi.*

---

*The English on the record is an error

	Landlady	
Of course. Here they are.	Конéчно. Вóт они́.	*kaƝEshna. VOT aɲí.*

Before you go through the *Basic Sentences* a second time, read the following:

2. Hints on Pronunciation and Spelling

1. Double consonants.

Notice that where our *Aids to Listening* write a double consonant the Russian speaker really pronounces a long or doubled sound. In English we do this when two words come together, as in *ten nights* or *pen-knife* with double *n, hot time* with double *t; this side* with double *s*. Observe the difference between double and single Russian consonants and try to imitate:

PRACTICE 1

Unit 9, Record Side 3, after 1st spiral. (78 RPM)

(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 9, after 1st spiral.

вáнная	*VANnaya*	bathroom
ресторáна	*ɼistaRAna*	of the restaurant
оттýда	*at TUda*	from there
потóм	*pa TOM*	after that
шестьсóт	*shis SOT*	six hundred
часóв	*chiSOF*	of hours
сы́на	*SIna*	of a son
мéдленно	*ⱮEdɭina, ⱮEdɭinna*	slowly
оди́ннадцать	*aƉINnaciʈ*	eleven
боти́нок	*baƬInak*	of shoes

2. Russian [*ts*] and [*tc*].

Russian [*c*] is like English *ts* in *hats*. Russian [*ts*] has a slight separation between the [*t*] and the [*s*], somewhat as in *that summer*. There is also a combination of [*t*] with [*c*]; it sounds like a long [*t*] with an [*s*] closely joined on at the end. Listen and imitate:

PRACTICE 2

Unit 9, Record Side 3, after 2nd spiral. (78 RPM)

отсю́да	*at SUda, at ŞUda*	from here
отца́	*atCA*	of the father
два́дцать	*DVATciţ*	twenty
бра́ться	*BRATsă*	to take hold
от сы́на	*at SIna*	from the son
от су́па	*at SUpa*	from the soup
от сапо́жника	*at saPOzhņika*	from the shoemaker

3. Russian [*y*] after consonants.

Russian [*y*] occurs after both plain and palatal consonants. These combinations are quite different from palatal consonants that are not followed by [*y*]; the little [*y*]-like glide sound on a palatal consonant is much weaker and shorter than a full-fledged [*y*].

Notice the conventional Russian spelling: after a plain consonant [*y*] is represented by the letter ъ, and after a palatal consonant by the letter ь, and the following vowel is written я, е, и, ю. Sometimes they write и instead of ь.

PRACTICE 3

Unit 9, Record Side 3, after 3rd spiral. (78 RPM)

чья́	*CHYA*	whose (F.)
ча́с	*CHAS*	hour
пьёт	*P̧YOT*	he drinks
Пётр	*P̧OTR*	Peter
рубля́	*ruBĻA*	of a rouble
для́	*ḐĻA*	for
отъе́зд	*atYEST, atYEZD*	departure

отéц	*aT̡EC*	father
обéд	*aB̡ET*, *aB̡ED*	dinner
объéзд	*abYEST*, *abYEZD*	detour
побьёт	*paB̡YOT*	he will beat
объём	*abYOM*	circumference

4. Vowel spellings.

Most Russian consonants occur in both plain and palatal varieties. Whether a consonant is plain or palatal is shown in Russian conventional spelling by the choice of the letter which represents the next vowel. By way of review, we give the following table; we take [b] as our sample consonant:

Plain consonant:

sound:	[*BA*	*BE*	*BI*	*BO*	*BU*]
spelling:	ба	бэ	бы	бо	бу

Palatal consonant:

sound:	[*B̡A*	*B̡E*	*B̡I*	*B̡O*	*B̡U*]
spelling:	бя	бе	би	бё	бю

When no vowel follows, palatal consonants are marked by the letter ь: [*P̡AT̡*] пять 'five', [*MAL̡chik*] мальчик 'little boy'.

The consonants [*y*, *ch*, *sch*] exist only in palatal form. The conventional spelling of [*y*] was explained in Unit 8. After [*ch*] and [*shch*] the conventional Russian spelling uses the vowel letters а, е, и, е, у:

sound:	[*CHA*	*CHE*	*CHI*	*CHO*	*CHU*]
spelling:	ча	че	чи	чё	чу

Examples: [*CHAY*] чай 'tea', [*CHEK*] чек 'check', [*SHCHI*] щи 'cabbage soup', [*a CHOM*] о чём 'about what', [*uCHU*] учу 'I teach'.

At the end of some words the conventional spelling adds the sign ь after [*ch*, *shch*]. They do this on the Nominative form of Feminine nouns: [*DOCH*] дочь 'daughter', [*V̡ESHCH*] вещь 'thing'; also on infinitives: [*STR̡ICH*] стричь 'to cut (hair)'. On other words they do not write ь: [*KL̡UCH*] ключ (M.) 'key', [*BORSHCH*] борщ (M.) 'beet soup'. An entirely irregular spelling is that of [*DOSHCH*, *DOZHDZH*] дождь (M.) 'rain'.

The consonants [*c*, *sh*, *zh*] exist only in plain form.

After [*c*] the conventional spelling uses the vowel letters а, е, ы, о, у:

sound:	[*CA*	*CE*	*CI*	*CO*	*CU*]
spelling:	ца	це	цы	цо	цу

Examples: [*at atCA*] от отца 'from the father', [*ab atCE*] об отце 'about the father', [*atCI*] отцы 'fathers', [*at atCOF*] от отцов 'from the fathers', [*k atCU*] к отцу 'to the father'. In a few words they write и instead of ы: [*CIRK*] цирк 'circus'.

After [*sh*, *zh*] Russian conventional spelling uses the vowel letters a, e, и, e, y.

sound:	[*SHA*	*SHE*	*SHI*	*SHO*	*SHU*]
spelling:	ша	ше	ши	ше	шу

Examples: [*ZHARka*] жарко 'it is hot', [*uZHE*] уже 'already', [*ZHIŢ*] жить 'to live', [*SHOL*] шел 'he was going', [*SHUM*] шум 'noise'.

At the end of some words they add the letter ь to [*sh*, *zh*]. They do this on the Nominative form of Feminine nouns: [*MISH*] мышь 'mouse'. Also on the familiar form of verbs: [*iḐOSH*] идешь 'you are going'. On most words they do not write ь: [*DUSH*] душ (M.) 'shower bath'. To indicate [*y*] after [*sh*, *zh*], they write ь instead of ъ: [*SHYOT*] шьет 'he sews' [*ruZHYO*] ружье 'gun'.

Section B—Word Study and Review of Basic Sentences

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

A. COMMENT ON THE BASIC SENTENCES

Than. In Unit 8 we saw one way of saying 'older than' or the like. We now see a second way, which is more usual: the word [*CHEM*]:

He is older than I.	Он стáрше меня́.	*óŋ STARshi ɱiŋá.*
	Он стáрше чем я́.	*ón STARshi chém yá.*

Instead of the comparative form of an adjective, the Russians often use the word [*BOļiyi*] 'more' with the ordinary form, just as we say *kinder* and *more kind:*

This chair is more comfortable.	Этот стýл удóбнее.	*Etat STUL uDOBŋiyi.*
	Этот стýл бóлее удóбный.	*Etat STUL BOĻiyi uDOBnay.*

Short forms of adjectives.

This is a very expensive hotel.	Это óчень дорогáя гости́ница.	*Eta Ochiŋ daraGAya gaŞŢIŋica.*
I can't live in such an expensive hotel.	Я не могý жи́ть в такóй дорогóй гости́нице.	*yá ŋi magú ZHIŢ f takóy daraGOY gaŞŢIŋici.*

They are always living in expensive hotels.	Они́ всегда́ живу́т в дороги́х гости́ницах.	*aŋí fşiGDA zhiVUT v daraĢIX gaŞŢIŋicix.*

Adjectives used with nouns have the endings which we have been studying right along. These endings are called the *long endings* of adjectives.

This restaurant is very expensive.	Этот рестора́н о́чень дорого́й.	*état ŗistaRAN Ochiŋ daraGOY.*
	Этот рестора́н о́чень до́рог.	*état ŗistaRAN Ochiŋ DOrak.*
This hotel is very expensive.	Эта гости́ница о́чень дорога́я.	*éta gaŞŢIŋica Ochiŋ daraGAya.*
	Эта гости́ница о́чень дорога́.	*éta gaŞŢIŋica Ochiŋ daraGA.*
Meat is now very dear.	Мя́со тепе́рь о́чень дорого́е.	*M̧Asa ţiP̧EŖ Ochiŋ daraGOya.*
	Мя́со тепе́рь о́чень до́рого.	*M̧Asa ţiP̧EŖ Ochiŋ DOraga.*
These rooms are too expensive.	Эти ко́мнаты сли́шком дороги́е.	*éţi KOmnati şļíshkam daraĢIya.*
	Эти ко́мнаты сли́шком до́роги.	*éţi KOmnati şļíshkam DOraģi.*
I have an inexpensive room.	У меня́ дешёвая ко́мната.	*u ɱiŋá ḑiSHOvaya KOmnata.*
This room is cheap.	Эта ко́мната дешёвая.	*éta KOmnata ḑiSHOvaya.*
	Эта ко́мната дешева́.	*éta KOmnata ḑishiVA.*
That's very cheap.	Это о́чень дёшево.	*éta Ochiŋ ḐOshiva.*

In meanings like 'is expensive', 'is so and so' (the *predicate* use of the adjective), they use the Nominative of the long form or else the *short forms* of the adjective. The short forms are Nominative only and have no ending for the Masculine, [*-a*] for the Feminine, [*-o*] for the Neuter, and [*-i*] for the Plural. The accent of many adjectives shifts in the short form; in many the Feminine is accented on the ending.

He speaks English very well.	Он о́чень хорошо́ говори́т по-англи́йски.	*ón Ochiŋ xaraSHO gavaŖIT pa anGĻIYsķi.*

The Neuter of the short form is used as an adverb ('dearly, well').

I feel fine now.	Мне́ тепе́рь хорошо́.	*mŋé ţipéŗ xaraSHO.*
It's very hot today.	Сего́дня о́чень жа́рко.	*şiVO dŋa Ochiŋ ZHARka.*

The Neuter of the short form is used to make a full sentence, like a verb ('it's good, it's hot').

He took a more expensive room.	Он взя́л бо́лее дорогу́ю ко́мнату.	*ón vz̧ál bóļiyi daraGUyu KOmnatu.*
This room is more expensive than mine.	Эта ко́мната бо́лее дорога́я чём моя́.	*Eta KOmnata bóļiyi daraGAya chém maYA.*
	Эта ко́мната доро́же мое́й.	*Eta KOmnata daROzhi maYEY.*
	Эта ко́мната доро́же чём моя́.	*Eta KOmnata daROzhi chém maYA.*

In meanings like 'more expensive' ('more so and so') they use [*BOļiyi*] 'more' with the long forms. For 'is more expensive' ('is more so and so') they use also the comparative form. The comparative form has only one ending [*-i*], but the preceding part of the word has various shapes (*skaŗEyi, BOļiyi, diSHEvļi, daROzhi*).

He is older than I.	Он ста́рше меня́.	*ón STARshi ŋiŋá.*
I have an older brother.	У меня́ ста́рший бра́т.	*u ŋiŋá STARshiy BRAT.*
She is younger than I.	Она́ моло́же меня́.	*aná maLOzhi ŋiŋá.*
She is my younger sister.	Она́ моя́ мла́дшая сестра́.	*anA mayá MLATshiya şiSTRA.*

Only a few adjectives have a long comparative form, with full adjective endings, beside the usual short comparative.

Meals. The Russian breakfast is mostly just tea and rolls or bread. They call it 'tea' or 'morning tea'.

We breakfast ('drink tea') at half past seven.	Мы́ пьём ча́й в полови́не восьмо́го.	*mí pyóm CHAY f palaYIŋi vaşMOva.*

A light meal in the earlier part of the day is called [*ZAftrak*]. An American breakfast (say, with ham and eggs or cereal) seems big to the Russians and they call it [*ZAftrak*]. Ordinarily, [*ZAftrak*] is a meal like our lunch.

We lunch at half past twelve.	Мы́ за́втракаем в полови́не пе́рвого.	*mí ZAftrakayim f palaYIŋi P̧ERvava.*
Lunch is at one o'clock.	За́втрак в ча́с.	*ZAftrak f CHAS.*

The principal meal of the day is called [*aβET*]. It may come anywhere from two to six or seven o'clock. It corresponds to our dinner.

Dinner is served.	Обе́д на столе́.	*aβET na staĻE.*
They eat dinner here at half past five.	Обе́дают здесь в полови́не шесто́го.	*aβEdayut z̧ḑéş f palaYIŋi shiSTOva.*

A lighter meal, later than the main meal, and often quite late in the evening, is called [*Uzhin*].

The supper at the restaurant was good but expensive.	У́жин в рестора́не бы́л хоро́ш, но́ до́рог.	*Uzhin v ŗistaRAŋi bíl xaROSH, nó DOrak.*
We had supper at half past ten.	Мы́ у́жинали в полови́не оди́ннадцатого.	*mí Uzhinaļi f palaYIŋi aḐINnacitava.*

Downstairs. The expression [*v ŋiZU*] 'downstairs' means literally 'in the low place'. The ending [*-ú*], always accented, is a second Locative form which some Masculine nouns have after the prepositions [*v*] and [*na*]. We have already met [*fP̧ERvam chiSU*] 'in the first hour'. Like many other expressions, [*v ŋiZU*] is written as one word in conventional Russian orthography; compare влево, направо, почему.

B. NEW NOUNS

	N.S.	G.S.	N.P.	G.P.
dinner	*AβET*	*aβEda*	*aβEdi*	*aβEdaf*
address	*Adŗis*	*Adŗisa*	*Adŗisi*	*Adŗisaf*
Alexander	*aļikSANDR*	*aļikSANdra*	——	——
Ivan	*iVAN*	*iVAna*	——	——
pencil	*karanDASH*	*karandaSHA*	*karandaSHI*	*karandaSHEY*
month	*M̧Eşic*	*M̧Eşica*	*M̧Eşici*	*M̧Eşicif*

low part	*ƝIS*	*ƝIza*	*ɲiZI*	*ɲiZOF*
boarding house	*panŞYON*	*panŞYOna*	*panŞYOni*	*panŞYOnaf*
row	*ŖAT*	*ŖAda*	*ŗiDI*	*ŗiDOF*
table	*STOL*	*staLA*	*staLI*	*staLOF*
chair	*STUL*	*STUla*	*STUļya*	*STUļyif*
supper	*Uzhin*	*Uzhina*	*Uzhini*	*Uzhinaf*
breakfast	*ZAftrak*	*ZAftraka*	*ZAftraķi*	*ZAftrakaf*

Feminine:

	N.S.	A.S.	G.S.	N.P.	G.P.
razor	*BŖItva*	*BŖItvu*	*BŖItvi*	*BŖItvi*	*BŖITF*
paper	*buMAga*	*buMAgu*	*buMAgi*	*buMAgi*	*buMAK*
room	*KOmnata*	*KOmnatu*	*KOmnati*	*KOmnati*	*KOmnat*
kitchen	*KUxɲa*	*KUxɲu*	*KUxɲi*	*KUxɲi*	*KUxaɲ*
apartment	*kvaRȚIra*	*kvaRȚIru*	*kvaRȚIri*	*kvaRȚIri*	*kvaRȚIR*
street	*Uļica*	*Uļicu*	*Uļici*	*Uļici*	*Uļic*

Neuter:

	N.S.	G.S.	N.P.	G.P.
window	*aKNO*	*aKNA*	*Okna*	*Okan*

Observe that [*gaŞȚInaya*] 'living room, parlor', [*staLOvaya*] 'dining room', [*VANnaya*] 'bathroom' are not nouns, but adjectives in Feminine form.

C. NEW VERBS

Present of Type 1:

	Infinitive	I	he, she, it	Past
to eat dinner	*aβEdaţ*	*aβEdayu*	*aβEdayit*	*aβEdal*
to write	*ƥiSAȚ*	*ƥiSHU*	*ƤIshit*	*ƥiSAL*

Compound: *patƥiSAȚ* 'to sign'.

to eat supper	*Uzhinaţ*	*Uzhinayu*	*Uzhinayit*	*Uz̧hinal*
to take	*VZ̧AŢ*	*vaz̧MU*	*vaz̧MOT*	*VZ̧AL, vz̧iLA,* *VZ̧Ala, VZ̧Aļi*
to breakfast	*ZAftrakaţ*	*ZAftrakayu*	*ZAftrakayit*	*ZAftrakal*

Present of Type 2:

to look	*smaTŖEŢ*	*smaTŖU*	*SMOtŗit*	*smaTŖEL*

Compound: *pasmaTŖEŢ* 'to take a look'.

to see	*YIḑiţ*	*YIzhu*	*YIḑit*	*YIḑil*

Note that [*vayŢI*] 'to come in, to go in' is a compound of [*iŢI*]; hence [*vayḐOT*] 'he will go in', [*vaSHOL*] 'he went in'.

D. INSTRUMENTAL CASE

He writes with a red pencil.	Он пи́шет кра́сным карандашо́м.	*ón P̧Ishiţ KRAsnam karandaSHOM.*
I always write with a fountain pen.	Я всегда́ пишу́ ве́чным перо́м.	*yá fşiGDA piSHU YEchnam piROM.*
Are you going by train, by auto, or by plane?	Вы́ е́дете по́ездом, автомоби́лем или самолётом?	*ví YEḑiţi POyizdam, aftamaB̧Iļim, íli samaĻOtam?*

Masculine and Neuter nouns have the ending [*-om*] in the *Instrumental* case. Masculine and Neuter adjectives have the ending [*-im*] (unstressed -im, -am). The *Instrumental* case tells *by means of what* something is done.

I can't write with this pen.	Я не могу́ писа́ть э́тим перо́м.	*yá ŋi maGU piSAŢ Eţim piROM.*
(To say it) in one word: I don't want to.	Одни́м сло́вом: я́ не хочу́.	*aDŊIM SLOvam: yá ŋi xaCHU.*

The adjectives [*aḐIN*], stem [*adŋ-*], and [*Etat*], stem [*eţ-*] take the ending [*-,im*] in the Masculine and Neuter Instrumental.

I shave with a safety razor.	Я бре́юсь безопа́сной бри́твой.	*yá BŖEyus b̧izaPAsnay BŖItvay.*
I always wash with cold water.	Я всегда́ мо́юсь холо́дной водо́й.	*yá fşiGDA MOyus xaLOdnay vaDOY.*

Feminine nouns and adjectives have the ending [*-oy*] in the *Instrumental* case. Sometimes, in slow speech, they use a longer ending [*-oyu*], as [*xaLOdnayu vaDOyu*].

You can shave with my razor.	Вы́ мо́жете бри́ться мое́й бри́твой.	*ví mózhiti BŖITsa maYEY BŖITvay.*

The adjective [*MOY*] has the ending [-*éy*] in the Feminine Instrumental.

I was talking with your brother.	Я говори́л с ва́шим бра́том.	*yá gavaŖIL s váshim BRAtam.*
Do you want potatoes with the meat?	Хоти́те карто́шку с мя́сом?	*xaŢIţi kaRTOshku s M̧Asam?*
He has gone to Moscow with my brother John.	Он пое́хал в Москву́ с мои́м бра́том Ива́ном.	*ón paYExal v maSKVU s mayím BRAtam iVAnam.*

The preposition [*s, sa*] with the Instrumental case means 'in company with, along with, together with'.

I want a clean room with a clean bed.	Я хочу́ чи́стую ко́мнату с чи́стой посте́лью.	*yá xachú CHIstuyu KOmnatu s CHIstay paŞŢEļyu.*
She is living in Moscow with her older daughter.	Она́ живёт в Москве́ со ста́ршей до́черью.	*aná zhiv̧ót v maSKV̧E sa STArshiy DOchiŗyu.*

Feminine nouns whose Nominative form ends in a consonant, such as [*paŞŢEĻ, DOCH*], have the ending [-*yu* in the Instrumental case.

He wants to talk with our friends.	Он хо́чет говори́ть с на́шими друзья́ми.	*ón XOchit gavaŖIŢ s náshim̧i druz̧YAm̧i.*
He is now working in a hotel, together with my brothers.	Он тепе́рь рабо́тает в гости́нице, вме́сте с мои́ми бра́тьями.	*ón ţipéŗ raBOtayit v gaŞŢIņici, v m̧éşţi s mayím̧i BRAţyim̧i.*

Plural nouns in the Instrumental case have the ending [-*am̧i*]; plural adjectives have the ending [-*im̧i*].

I don't even want to talk to those people.	С э́тими людьми́ я́ и говори́ть не хочу́.	*s Eţim̧i ļuḑM̧I yá i gavaŖIŢ ņi xaCHU.*
Mr. Ilyin has gone to America with his wife and children.	Граждани́н Ильи́н с жено́й и детьми́ пое́хал в Аме́рику.	*grazhdaņín iĻYIN zh zhiNOY i ḑiţM̧I paYExal v aM̧Eriku.*

The Plural nouns [*ḐEţi*] and [*ĻUḑi*] have the ending [-*m̧í*], accented, in the Instrumental case.

He lives there with two friends.	Он та́м живёт с двумя́ това́рищами.	*ón tám zhiYOT z dvuM̧A taVÁŗishchim̧i.*
I was dining with three friends.	Я обе́дал с тремя́ друзья́ми.	*yá aB̧Edal s tŗiM̧A druZ̧YAm̧i.*
She came with four friends.	Она́ пришла́ с четырьмя́ прия́тельницами.	*aná pŗiSHLA s chitirM̧A pŗiYAţiļņicim̧i.*

The numbers 2, 3, 4 have the Instrumental forms [*dvuM̧A, tŗiM̧A, chitirM̧A*].

They arrived with five children.	Они́ пришли́ с пятью́ детьми́.	*aņí priSHĻI s piŢYU ḑiţM̧I.*
He went away with the twenty roubles.	Он ушёл с двадцатью́ рубля́ми.	*ón uSHOL z dvaciŢYU ruBļAm̧i.*
With thirty roubles a week you can live very well here.	С тридцатью́ рубля́ми в неде́лю вы́ мо́жете о́чень хорошо́ жи́ть зде́сь.	*s tŗiciŢYU ruBĻAm̧i v ņiḐEļu ví mózhiţi Ochiņ xaraSHO ZHIŢ z̧ḑéş.*

The numbers from 5 to 10, as well as 20 and 30, have the ending [*-yú*], accented, in the Instrumental.

There goes the teacher with fifteen or sixteen little boys.	Во́т идёт учи́тельница с пятна́дцатью и́ли шестна́дцатью ма́льчиками.	*VOT iḐOT uCHIţiļņica s pitNATciţyu iļi shisNATciţyu MAĻchikam̧i.*

The numbers from 11 to 19 have the ending [*-yu*], unstressed, in the Instrumental case.

Off they went with my hundred forty roubles.	Ушли́ они́ с мои́ми ста́ сорока́ рубля́ми.	*uSHĻI aņí s maYIm̧i STA saraKA ruBĻAm̧i.*
With ninety nine people out of a hundred you can't talk that way.	С девяно́ста девятью́ людьми́ из ста́ вы́ не мо́жете та́к говори́ть.	*z ḑiv̧iNOsta ḑiv̧iŢYU luḑM̧I is STA ví ņi MOzhiţi TAK gavaŖIŢ.*

The numbers 40, 90, 100 have the Instrumental like the Genitive, Locative, and Dative.

With five hundred fifty roubles I can't go to America.	С пятьюста́ми пятью́десятью рубля́ми я́ не могу́ поéхать в Амéрику.	*s piţyu STAɱi piŢYU ḑişiţyu ruBĻAɱi yá ŋi maGU paYExaţ v aM̦Eriku.*

The numbers 50, 60, 70, 80, and the hundreds from 200 to 900 take the endings on the separate parts. Only one part has an accent. [*STO*] has the Plural form.

I've already spoken about that with a thousand people.	Я уже́ говори́л об э́том с ты́сячью людéй.	*yá uzhé gavaŖIL ab étam s TIşichyu ļuḐEY.*
With three thousand roubles you can go to America.	С тремя́ ты́сячами рублéй вы́ мóжете поéхать в Амéрику.	*s ţriM̦A TIşichiɱi ruBĻEY ví mózhiţi paYExaţ v aM̦Eŗiku.*
He came back from America with a million roubles.	Он верну́лся из Амéрики с миллиóном рублéй.	*ón ŗirNULsa iz aM̦Eriķi s ɱiĻYOnam ruBĻEY.*

The words [*TIşicha*] and [*ɱiĻYON*] are nouns. [*TIşicha*] has usually the ending [-*yu*] in the Instrumental case.

With whom were you talking?	С кéм вы́ говори́ли?	*s ĶEM ví gavaŖIļi?*
What are you studying (working at) now? ('With what are you occupying yourself?')	Чéм вы́ тепéрь занима́етесь?	*CHEM ví ţipéŗ zaŋiMAyiţiş?*
Come with me.	Поди́те со мнóй.	*paḐIţi sa MNOY.*
Come with us.	Поди́те с на́ми.	*paḐIţi s NAɱi.*
You and I ('we with you') will soon talk about that.	Мы́ с ва́ми скóро бу́дем говори́ть об э́том.	*mí s VAɱi SKOra búḑim gavaRIŢ ab Etam.*
He and I ('we with him') often lunch in this restaurant.	Мы́ с ни́м ча́сто за́втракаем в э́том ресторáне.	*mí s ŅIM CHAsta ZAftrakayim v Etam ŗistaRAŋi.*
I have recently got acquainted with her.	Мы с нéй недáвно познакóмились.	*mí s ŅEY ŋi DAvna paznaKOɱiļiş.*

I have never talked with them.	Я с ни́ми никогда́ не говори́л.	*yá s ŊIɱi ŋi kaGDA ŋi gavaŖIL.*

The Instrumental forms of the pronouns are as above. Beside [*MNOY*] there is a longer form [*MNOyu*]. The familiar form for 'you' is [*taBOY*] or [*taBOyu*].

When I was a little boy, we once went to America.	Когда́ я́ бы́л ма́льчиком, мы́ поéхали ра́з в Амéрику.	*kagdá yá bíl MAĻchikam, mí ƥaYExaļi rás v aⱮEriku.*
Be my friend!	Бу́дьте мои́м дру́гом!	*BUŢţi mayím DRUgam!*
Be my wife!	Бу́дьте моéй женóй!	*BUŢţi mayéy zhiNOY!*
She is my wife.	Она́ моя́ жена́	*aná mayá zhiNA.*
He is an American.	Он америка́нец.	*ón aɱiŗiKAŋec.*
He became an American citizen.	Он ста́л америка́нским граждани́ном.	*ón stál aɱiŗiKANsķim grazhdaŊInam.*
He is a good person.	Он хорóший человéк.	*ón xaROshiy chilaⱲEK.*
In time he will become a good person.	Со врéменем óн ста́нет хорóшим человéком.	*sa VŖEɱiŋim on STAŋit xaROshim chilaⱲEkam.*

A noun which tells *what someone is or was or becomes* for a time or at a certain time, is in the Instrumental case. What one is permanently is in the Nominative case.

It is very hot here in summer, and very cold in winter.	Здéсь лéтом óчень жа́рко, а зимóй óчень хóлодно.	*ȥḑéş ĻEtam Ochiŋ ZHARka, a ȥiMOY Ochiŋ XOladna.*
In spring we shall go to America.	Веснóй мы́ поéдем в Амéрику.	*ȥiSNOY mí paYEḑim v aⱮEŗiku.*
In fall we'll come back to Russia.	Óсенью мы́ вернёмся в Росси́ю.	*Oşiŋyu mí ȥirŊOMsa v raŞIyu.*
We work in daytime.	Днём мы́ рабóтаем.	*ḐŊOM mí raBOtayim.*
We don't want to work at night.	Мы́ не хоти́м рабóтать нóчью.	*mí ŋi xaŢIM raBOtaţ NOchyu.*

A certain few nouns are used in the Instrumental case to tell the *time when.*

Be sure to study all the Russian sentences until you can say them neatly and without hesitation. Don't spend your time studying the rules and statements; they are only given to help you understand, and there would be very little use in learning them.

2. Covering English and Russian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering, first the English, then the Russian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences.*

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Russian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say?

Read aloud the following and pick out the expression you think most suitable:

1. You want to know whether Mrs. Petrov has any rooms vacant. You say:

a. У вáс éсть тёплая кóмната?	*u vás yéşţ ŢOplaya KOmnata?*
b. У вáс éсть свобóдные кóмнаты?	*u vás yéşţ svaBOdniya KOmnati?*
У вáс éсть хорошó обстáвленные кóмнаты?	*u vás yéşţ xaraSHO apSTAvļinaya KOmnati?*

2. You say you are looking for a clean and not too expensive room. You say:

a. Я ищý чи́стую и не сли́шком дорогýю кóмнату.	*yá iSHCHU CHIstuyu i ɲi ŞĻIshkam daraGUyu KOmnatu.*
b. Я ищý удóбную кóмнату с двумя́ óкнами.	*yá iSHCHU uDObnuyu KOmnatu s dvuMA Oknaɱi.*
c. Я ищý чи́стую кóмнату с óкнами на ýлицу.	*yá iSHCHU CHIstuyu KOmnatu s Oknaɱi na Uļicu.*

3. She has one. She tells you it costs forty roubles a month. She says:

a. Эта ко́мната сто́ит четы́рнадцать рубле́й в ме́сяц.	*éta KOmnata stóyit chiTIRnaciţ ruBĻEY v M̧Eşic.*
b. Эта ко́мната сто́ит четы́реста рубле́й в ме́сяц.	*éta KOmnata stóyit chiTIŗi sta ruBĻEY v M̧Eşic.*
c. Эта ко́мната сто́ит со́рок рубле́й в ме́сяц.	*éta KOmnata stóyit SOrak ruBĻEY v M̧Eşic.*

4. She says it's on the second floor, next to the bathroom. She says:

a. Она́ на тре́тьем этаже́, ря́дом с ва́нной.	*aná na ŢREţyim etaZHE, ŖAdam s VANnay.*
b. Она́ на второ́м этаже́, ря́дом с ку́хней.	*aná na ftaROM etaZHE, ŖAdam s KUxņiy.*
c. Она́ на второ́м этаже́, ря́дом с ва́нной.	*aná na ftaROM etaZHE, ŖAdam s VANnay.*

5. She asks whether you want to take a look at it. She says:

a. Вы́ хоти́те взя́ть э́ту ко́мнату?	*ví xaţíţi VZ̧AŢ étu KOmnatu?*
b. Вы́ хоти́те жи́ть в э́той ко́мнате?	*ví xaţíţi ZHIŢ v étay KOmnaţi?*
c. Вы́ хоти́те посмотре́ть ко́мнату?	*ví xaţíţi pasmaTŖEŢ KOmnatu?*

6. You do; so she invites you to come in. She says:

a. Ну́, хорошо́; уйди́те поскоре́е.	*NU, xaraSHO; uyḐIţi paskaŖEyi.*
b. Ну́, хорошо́; войди́те и мы́ посмо́трим ко́мнату.	*NU, xaraSHO; vayḐIţi i mí paSMOţrim KOmnatu.*
c. Ну́, хорошо́; войди́те и я́ ва́с побре́ю.	*NU, xaraSHO; vayḐIţi i yá vás paBŖEyu.*

7. You ask about meals and she says dinner costs one rouble seventy-five kopeks. She says:

a. Ужин сто́ит ру́бль шестьдеся́т пя́ть копе́ек.	*Uzhin stóyit RUBĻ shiz ḑiŞAT P̧AŢ kaP̧Eyik.*
b. За́втрак сто́ит ру́бль во́семьдесят пя́ть копе́ек.	*ZAftrak stóyit RUBĻ VOşim ḑişit P̧AŢ kaP̧Eyik.*
c. Обе́д сто́ит ру́бль се́мьдесят пя́ть копе́ек.	*aB̧ET stóyit RUBĻ ŞEM ḑişit P̧AŢ kaP̧Eyik.*

8. She tells you dinner is at six thirty. She says:

a. Обе́д у на́с в полови́не шесто́го.	*aB̦ET u nás f palaV̦Iŋi shiSTOva.*
b. Обе́д у на́с в полови́не седьмо́го.	*aB̦ET u nás f palaV̦Iŋi şiḑMOva.*
c. Вы́ мо́жете обе́дать, когда́ хоти́те.	*ví mózhiţi sB̦Edaţ kaGDA xaŢIţi.*

9. You decide to take the room for one month. You say:

a. Хорошо́, я́ куплю́ э́тот до́м.	*xaraSHO, yá kuPĻU étad DOM.*
b. Хорошо́, я́ возьму́ ко́мнату на ме́сяц.	*xaraSHO, yá vaz̧MU KOmnatu na M̦Eşic.*
c. Хорошо́, я́ возьму́ безопа́сную бри́тву.	*xaraSHO, yá vaz̧MU b̦izaPAsnuyu BŖItvu.*

10. You ask about a laundry, and she tells you her daughter does washing cheaper than the laundry. She says:

a. Моя́ до́чь бре́ет люде́й деше́вле че́м парикма́хер.	*mayá DOCH BŖEyit ļuḐEY ḑiSHEvļi chém paŗikMAx̧ir.*
b. Моя́ до́чь чи́нит боти́нки деше́вле че́м сапо́жник.	*mayá DOCH CHIŋit baŢINķi ḑiSHEvļi chém saPOzhŋik.*
c. Моя́ до́чь стира́ет бельё деше́вле че́м пра́чечная.	*mayá DOCH sţiRAyit b̦iĻYO ḑiSHEvļi chém PRAchishnaya.*

11. She tells you that in autumn three young Americans stayed at her place. She says:

a. Ле́том у меня́ жи́ли три́ молоды́х америка́нца.	*ĻEtam u ɱiŋá ZHIļi TŖi malaDIX aɱiŗiKANca.*
b. Осенью у меня́ жи́ли три́ молоды́х америка́нца.	*Oşiŋyu u ɱiŋá ZHIļi TŖI malaDIX aɱiŗiKANca.*
c. Осенью я познако́милась с тремя́ молоды́ми америка́нцами.	*Oşiŋyu yá paznaKOɱilas s tŗiM̦A malaDIɱi aɱiŗiKANciɱi.*

12. She tells you she has been in America three times. She says:

a. Я ва́м э́то уже́ три́ ра́за сказа́ла.	*yá vám Eta uzhé TŖI RAza skaZAla.*
b. Я ва́м э́то уже́ ты́сячу ра́з сказа́ла.	*yá vám Eta uzhé TIşicha RAS skaZAla.*
c. Я уже́ три́ ра́за была́ в Аме́рике.	*yá uzhé TŖI RAza biLA v aM̦Eriķi.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did you Say?

Give your answers in Russian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Russian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by your Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Russian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

Ivan meets Alexander and they set out looking for a boarding house.

Unit 9, Record Side 3, after 4th spiral. (78 RPM) **(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 9, after 2nd spiral.**

Ива́н:	Здра́вствуй, Алекса́ндр!	*ZDRAstvuy, aļikSANDR!*
Алекса́ндр:	Здра́вствуй!	*ZDRAstvuy!*
	Куда́ ты́ спеши́шь?	*kuDA tí spiSHISH?*
Ива́н:	Я ищу́ пансио́н, но́ я́ не зна́ю, где́ э́та у́лица.	*yá ishchú panŞYON, nó yá ŋi ZNAyu GḐE éta Uļica.*
Алекса́ндр:	У тебя́ е́сть а́дрес?	*u ţib̧á YEŞŢ Adŗis?*
Ива́н:	Да́, во́т о́н.	*DA; VOT ón.*
Алекса́ндр:	Но́ ты́ тепе́рь на у́лице, где́ пансио́н.	*nó tí ţipéŗ na Uļici gḑé panŞYON.*
Ива́н:	Хорошо́; тепе́рь мы́ ȩго́ найдём.	*xaraSHO; ţiPEŖ mí yivó nayḐOM.*

Алекса́ндр:	Кто́ тебе́ да́л а́дрес?	*KTO ţib̦é dál Adŗis?*
Ива́н:	Бори́с Ивано́в. Он оди́н из друзе́й моего́ ста́ршего бра́та.	*baŖIS ivaNOF. ón aḐIN iz druZ̦EY mayivó STARshiva BRAta.*
	Он мне́ сказа́л, что́ э́тот пансио́н о́чень удо́бный.	*ón mŋé skaZAL shtó état panŞYON Ochiŋ uDOBnay.*

Unit 9, Record Side 4, beginning. (78 RPM)

Алекса́ндр:	Хорошо́. Во́т пансио́н нале́во.	*xaraSHO. VOT panŞYON na ĻEva.*
	Мо́жно с тобо́й пойти́?	*MOzhna s taBOY payŢI?*
Ива́н:	Пожа́луйста. Ты́ то́же и́щешь ко́мнату?	*paZHALsta. tí TO zhi íshchish KOmnatu?*
Алекса́ндр:	Мо́жет бы́ть. В мое́й ко́мнате не о́чень тепло́.	*mózhid BÌŢ. v mayéy KOmnaţi ŋi Ochiŋ ţiPLO.*

They knock at the door.

Landlady:	Здра́вствуйте! Что́ ва́м на́до?	*ZDRAstvuyţi! SHTO vám NAda?*
Ива́н:	Я хочу́ ко́мнату.	*yá xachú KOmnatu.*
	Бори́с Ивано́в мне́ сказа́л, что́ у ва́с е́сть ко́мнаты.	*baŖIS ivaNOF mŋé skaZAL shtó u vás yéşţ KOmnati.*
Landlady:	Да́, входи́те.	*DA, fxaḐIŢi.*
	Бори́с ва́ш дру́г?	*baŖIS vázh DRUK?*
	Он о́чень прия́тный челове́к.	*ón Ochiŋ p̦ŗɨYAtnay chilaY̦EK.*
Ива́н:	Во́т мо́й дру́г, Алекса́ндр Ильи́н.	*VOT móy DRUG aļikSANDR iĻYIN.*
Landlady:	Здра́вствуйте.	*ZDRAstvuyţi.*
Алекса́ндр:	Здра́вствуйте.	*ZDRAstvuyţi.*
Landlady:	Вы́ хоти́те одну́ ко́мнату и́ли две́?	*ví xaţíţi aDNU KOmnatu íļi DY̦E?*

Алексáндр:	Я не знáю.	*yá ŋi ZNAyu.*
	У меня́ éсть кóмната, нó онá мнé не óчень нрáвится.	*u ɱiŋá YEŞŢ KOmnata, nó aNA mŋé ŋi Ochiŋ NRAy̧itsa.*
	Я тóже хотéл бы взя́ть однý из вáших кóмнат.	*yá TO zhi xaţél bi VZ̧ÂŢ adnú iz VAshix KOmnat.*
Landlady:	Хорошó. У меня́ кóмната на вторóм этажé.	*xaraSHO. u ɱiŋá KOmnata na ftaROM etaZHE.*
	Вы́ мóжете её посмотрéть.	*ví MOzhiţi yiyó pasmaŢREŢ.*

They go upstairs.

Ивáн:	Я ви́жу, чтó э́та кóмната хорошó обстáвлена.	*yá Y̧Izhu shtó éta KOmnata xaraSHO apSTAvļina.*
Алексáндр:	Мнé нрáвятся стóл и стýлья.	*mŋé NRAy̧itsa STOL i STUļya.*
Ивáн:	В нéй тóлько однó окнó, нó онó большóе.	*v ŋéy tóļka aDNO aKNO, nó aNO baļSHOya.*
Алексáндр:	Гдé вáнная?	*ģdé VANnaya?*
Landlady:	Вáнная налéво, недалекó.	*VANnaya na ĻEva, ŋi daļiKO.*
Ивáн:	Скóлько онá стóит?	*SKOĻka aná STOyit?*
Landlady:	Сóрок пя́ть рублéй в мéсяц.	*SOrak P̧AŢ ruBĻEY v M̧Eşic.*
Ивáн:	Это не сли́шком дóрого. Я возьмý э́ту кóмнату.	*Eta ŋi şļíshkam DOraga.* *yá vaz̧MU étu KOmnatu.*
Алексáндр:	Есть у вáс кóмната дешéвле э́той?	*YEŞŢ u vás KOmnata ģiSHEvļi Etay?*
Landlady:	Дá, у меня́ éсть кóмната внизý.	*DA, u ɱiŋá yéşţ KOmnata v ŋiZU.*
Алексáндр:	Мы́ её посмóтрим.	*mí yiyó paSMOţrim.*

Downstairs.

Landlady:	Во́т столо́вая.	*VOT staLOvaya.*
	Зде́сь мы́ за́втракаем и обе́даем.	*ȜḐEŞ mí ZAftrakayim i aβEdayim.*
Алекса́ндр:	А где́ ко́мната?	*a GḐE KOmnata?*
Landlady:	Она́ ря́дом.	*aná ŖAdam.*
	Не́т! э́то ку́хня!	*ŊET! Eta KUxŋa!*
	Ко́мната напра́во.	*KOmnata na PRAva.*
Алекса́ндр:	В не́й два́ окна́, сто́л и три́ сту́ла.	*v ŋéy DVA aKNA, STOL, i TŖI STUla.*
	Эта ко́мната больша́я.	*éta KOmnata baļSHAya.*
	Она́ бо́лее удо́бна че́м ко́мната на второ́м этаже́.	*aná BOļiyi uDOBna chém KOmnata na ftaROM etaZHE.*
Landlady:	Да́, немно́го.	*DA, ŋi MNOga.*
	Эта сто́ит пятьдеся́т рубле́й в ме́сяц.	*Eta stóyit ṗid ḑiŞAT ruBĻEY v ṂEşic.*
Ива́н:	Не до́рого.	*ŋi DOraga.*
	Эта ко́мната о́чень хоро́шая.	*éta KOmnata óchiņ xaROshiya.*
	Ва́нная ря́дом?	*VANnaya ŖAdam?*
Landlady:	Да́.	*DA.*
	В э́той ко́мнате зимо́й тепло́, а ле́том прохла́дно.	*v étay KOmnaţi ȥiMOY ţiPLO, a ĻEtam praXLAdna.*
Ива́н:	Я возьму́ э́ту ко́мнату.	*yá vaȥMU étu KOmnatu.*
	А, Алекса́ндр, ты́, мо́жет бы́ть, возьмёшь ко́мнату на второ́м этаже́.	*a, aļikSANDR, tí mózhid BIŢ vaȥṂOSH KOmnatu na ftaROM etaZHE.*

Алексáндр:	Конéчно, éсли тебé тáк нрáвится.	*kaŅEshna, yéşļi ţiBE ták NRAv̧itsa.*
Landlady:	Хорошó.	*xaraSHO.*
	Бумáги в гостúной.	*buMAgi v gaŞŢInay.*

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Russian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Russian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Russian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Russian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the models outlined below fairly closely; then change the situations somewhat. Invent new combinations of subject matter.

1. You ask your landlady if you can eat lunch in your room. She says you can, and that the maid (Anna) will bring it at half past twelve o'clock. You ask if you can have it as early as possible, because you are going to the station and want to make it on time; your train leaves at half past one. She says she will try to send Anna earlier, but if you want to eat lunch as early as possible, they have lunch in the dining room at twelve. You thank her, and say you will eat downstairs.
2. You and your friend discuss the food and the rooms at the boarding-house; whether they are cold or hot; the bed, chairs, tables; whether comfortable or not; large or small; good or bad. How far away the bathroom is.
3. You go out looking for a room. A friend tells you of a hotel and a boarding-house. You talk over with him the advantages of each—the expense, the comfort, whether meals are served in one's room or in the dining-room. The boarding-house is near a laundry, but in the hotel there is a barbershop, and so on.
4. You go to the boarding-house. The landlady asks you to come in, and you look at the room. Comment on the size, comfort, cleanness, convenience. She tells you the price with and without meals. You decide to take the room, and sign for it.

Section F—Conversation (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of parts 1 and 2 of the section if necessary.

FINDER LIST

автомоби́ль [*aftamaB̡IL̡*] automobile
а́дрес [*Adr̡is*] address
Алекса́ндр [*al̡ikSANDR*] Alexander

безопа́сный [*b̡izaPAsnay*] safe; **безопа́сная бри́тва** [*b̡izaPAsnaya BR̡Itva*] safety razor
бо́лее [*BOl̡iyi*] more
бри́тва [*BR̡Itva*] razor
бума́га [*buMAga*] paper

ва́нная [*VANnaya*] bathroom
ве́чный [*V̡Echnay*] everlasting; **ве́чное перо́** [*V̡Echnaya piRO*] fountain pen
взя́ть [*VZ̡AT̡*] to take; **возьму́** [*vaz̡MU*] I'll take
ви́деть [*V̡Id̡it̡*] to see
включа́я [*fkluCHAya*] including
внизу́ [*v ŋiZU*] downstairs
возьму́ *see* **взя́ть**
войти́ [*vayT̡I*] to go in, to come in

гости́ная [*gaS̡T̡Inaya, gaS̡T̡INnaya*] living room

дешёвый [*d̡iSHOvay*] cheap
дёшево [*D̡Oshiva*] it is cheap
деше́вле [*d̡iSHEvl̡i*] it is cheaper
дорого́й [*daraGOY*] dear, expensive
до́рого [*DOraga*] it is dear
доро́же [*daROzhi*] it is dearer

е́сли [*YEs̡l̡i*] if

за́втрак [*ZAftrak*] lunch
за́втракать [*ZAftrakat̡*] to eat lunch

Ива́н [*iVAN*] Ivan, john

каранда́ш [*karanDASH*] lead pencil
ко́мната [*KOmnata*] room
кра́сный [*KRAsnay*] red
ку́хня [*KUxŋa*] kitchen

ме́сяц [*M̡Es̡ic*] month
мы́ть [*MIT̡*] to wash; **мо́юсь** [*MOyus*] I wash (myself)

ни́з [*N̡IS*] lower part, lower place
внизу́ [*v ŋiZU*] downstairs

обе́д [*aƁET*] dinner
    обе́дать [*aƁEdaț*] to eat dinner
обста́вленный [*apSTAvļinay*] furnished
окно́ [*aĶNO*] window

пансио́н [*panŞYON*] boarding house
писа́ть [*piSAȚ*] to write
подписа́ть [*patpiSAȚ*] to sign
посмотре́ть [*pasmaȚŖEȚ*] to take a look

ря́д [*ŖAT*] row; **ря́дом** [*ŖAdam*] in a row; next;
  ря́дом с ку́хней [*ŖAdam s KUxņiy*] next to the kitchen

свобо́дный [*svaBOdnay*] free

сли́шком [*SĻIshkam*] too much, too
смотре́ть [*smaȚŖEȚ*] to look
сто́л [*STOL*] table
    столо́вая [*staLOvaya*] dining room
сту́л [*STUL*] chair

тако́й [*taKOY*] that kind, this kind

удо́бный [*uDObnay*] convenient, comfortable
у́жин [*Uzhin*] supper
    у́жинать [*Uzhinaț*] to eat supper
у́лица [*Uļica*] street

че́м [*CHEM*] than

UNIT 10

WRITING A LETTER

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Go once through the *Basic Sentences* in unison, concentrating on the *Aids to Listening*, as you have done before. Then go through the section *Check Your Pronunciation*. Go once through the *Basic Sentences* individually trying to follow the *Conventional Spelling* as much as possible. The last time through individually, you should be able to follow the *Conventional Spelling* without any trouble.

1. Basic Sentences

Unit 10, Record Side 1, beginning. (78 RPM)

(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 10, beginning.

Ivan prepares to write home with Alexander's help.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING	AIDS TO LISTENING
	Ива́н	
Please give me some [writing] paper.	Да́йте мне́, пожа́луйста, бума́ги.	*DAYţi mŋé pazhálsta buMAģi.*
(to) write	написа́ть	*napiSAŢ*
home	домо́й	*daMOY*
letter	письмо́	*pişMO*
Mine is too dirty, and I have to write a letter home.	Моя́ сли́шком гря́зная, а я́ хочу́ написа́ть домо́й письмо́.	*maYA şļ́shkam GŖAznaya, a yá xachú napiSAŢ daMOY pişMO.*
for a long time (back)	давно́	*daVNO*
(I) have written (M.)	писа́л	*piSAL*
heard (M.)	слы́шал	*SLIshil*

I haven't written (to) them for a long time, and I (have) heard (that) my brother is sick.	Я давно́ и́м не писа́л, а я́ слы́шал, что́ мо́й бра́т бо́лен.	*yá daVNO yím ŋi p̧iSAL, a yá SLIshil shtó móy BRAT BOļin.*
(it) worries	беспоко́ит	*p̧ispaKOyit*
And I am worried about it.	И э́то меня́ о́чень беспоко́ит.	*i éta ɱiŋá Ochiŋ p̧ispaKOyit.*
	Алекса́ндр	
it's a pity (for me)	мне́ о́чень жа́ль	*mŋé Ochiŋ ZHAĻ*
I'm sorry, but I haven't any (paper).	Мне́ о́чень жа́ль, но́ у меня́ не́т бума́ги.	*mŋé óchiŋ ZHAĻ, nó u ɱiŅA ŋét buMAgi.*
post office (A.)	по́чту	*POchtu*
still *or* yet	ещё	*yiSHCHO*
Go to the post office;	Пойди́те на по́чту;	*payḐIţi na POchtu;*
you'll still have time to buy the paper there.	вы́ ещё успе́ете та́м купи́ть бума́гу.	*ví yishchó uSP̧Eyiţi tám kup̧IŢ buMAgu.*
(it) closes	закрыва́ется	*zakriVA[illegible]a*
It closes at six.	Она́ закрыва́ется в ше́сть.	*aná zakriVAyitsa f SHEŞŢ.*
	Ива́н	
time (G.)	вре́мени	*VŖEɱiŋi*
(one who) must (M.)	до́лжен	*DOLzhin*
I haven't time.	У меня́ не́т вре́мени.	*u ɱiŋá ŅET VŖEɱiŋi.*
I've got to hurry.	Я до́лжен спеши́ть.	*yá DOLzhin spiSHIŢ.*

whose (F.)	чья́	*CHYA*
under	пóд	*POT, POD*
book (I.)	кни́гой	*KŊIgay*
But whose paper is that under the book on the table?	А чья́ э́та бумáга под кни́гой на столé?	*a CHYA éta buMAga pat KŊIgay na staĻE?*

Unit 10, Record Side 2, beginning. (78 RPM)

	Алексáндр	
What paper?	Какáя бумáга?	*kaKAya buMAga?*
that (F.)	тá	*TA*
Oh, that!	Ах, тá!	*AX TA!*
That's my brother's table, and everything on it is his.	Это стóл моегó брáта, а всё, чтó на столé — егó.	*Eta, STOL mayivó BRAta, a FŞO shtó na staĻE, yiVO.*
(I) think	дýмаю	*DUmayu*
(is) glad (M.)	рáд	*RAD, RAT*
a few	нéсколько	*ŊEskaļka*
(of) sheets (G.)	листóв	*ļiSTOF*
But I think (that) he'll be only [too] glad if you take a few sheets.	Нó я́ дýмаю, чтó óн бýдет тóлько рáд, éсли вы́ возьмёте нéсколько листóв.	*nó yá DUmayu shtó ón búḑit TOĻka RAD, yéşļi ví vaȥMOţi ŊEskaļka ļiSTOF.*
take*	бери́те	*b̧iŖIţi*
Please take [a few].	Пожáлуйста, бери́те.	*paZHALsta b̧iŖIţi.*

---

*Not on the record.

Ива́н

you will give	дади́те	*daḐIţi*
also, too*	та́кже	*TAG zhi*
pen	перо́	*piRO*
Maybe you'll give me a pen, too?	Вы́, мо́жет бы́ть, мне́ дади́те та́кже и перо́?	*ví MOzhid bíţ mŋé daḐIţi TAG zhi i pịRO?*
have given back (M.)**	отда́л, о́тдал	*adDAL, ODdal*
I took (have taken) mine [back] to be fixed.	Я отда́л моё почини́ть.	*ya adDAL maYO pachiŊIŢ.*
ready (N.)	гото́во	*gaTOva*
for	за́	*ZA*
When I went to get it, it wasn't (yet) ready.	Когда́ я́ пошёл за ни́м, оно́ ещё не́ было гото́во.	*kagdá yá paSHOL za ŋím, aNO yishchó ŊE bila gaTOva.*

Алекса́ндр

Here are two pens.	Во́т два́ пера́.	*VOT DVA piRA.*
blue (N.)	си́нее	*ŞIŋiya*
red (N.)	кра́сное	*KRAsnaya*
The blue one is mine, and the red one belongs to my sister.	Си́нее моё, а кра́сное мое́й сестры́.	*ŞIŋiya maYO, a KRAsnaya maYEY şiSTRI.*

Ива́н

Thanks a lot!	Большо́е спаси́бо!	*baļSHOya spaŞIba!*

---

*Not on the record.

**The English on the record is an error. The next word is on the record by mistake.

	Алексáндр	
remaining (N.)	остальнóе	*astaļNOya*
Have you got everything else?	Есть у вáс всё остальнóе?	*YEŞŢ` u vás FŞO astaļNOya?*
	Ивáн	
(I) thank	благодарю́	*blagadaŖU*
Yes, thank you.	Дá, благодарю́ вáс.	*DA, blagadaŖU vás.*

Unit 10, Record Side 3, beginning. (78 RPM)

ink	черни́ла	*chirŅIla*
envelopes	конвéрты	*kanY̧ERţi*
stamps	мáрки	*MARķi*
I have ink, envelopes, stamps—everything I need.	У меня́ éсть черни́ла, конвéрты и мáрки — всё, чтó мнé нáдо.	*u ɱiņá yéşţ chirŅIla, kanY̧ERţi, i MARķi—FŞO shtó mņé NAda.*
	Алексáндр	
to help	помóчь	*paMOCH*
I'm always glad to help you.	Я всегдá рáд вáм помóчь.	*yá fşiGDA RAD vám paMOCH.*
you will receive	полу́чите	*paLUchiţi*
they will receive	полу́чят	*paLUchit*
Maybe you'll get a letter from them before they get yours.	Мóжет бы́т, вы́ полу́чите от ни́х письмó, рáньше чéм они́ полу́чят вáше.	*MOzhid bíţ ví paLUchiţi at ŅIX pişMO, RAŅshi chém aŅI paLUchit VAsha.*
	Ивáн	
That [certainly] would be o.k. [with me].	Это бы́ло бы óчень хорошó.	*éta bíla bi Ochiņ xaraSHO.*

Before you go through the *Basic Sentences* a second time, read the following:

2. Check Your Pronunciation

1. Voiced and unvoiced mutes.

We recall the pairs of mute consonants:

voiced: [*b d g v z zh gh dzh zhdzh*]
unvoiced: [*p t k f s sh x ch shch*]

At the end of a word, in rapid speech, a voiced mute is replaced by the corresponding unvoiced mute. The conventional spelling, however, writes the letter for the voiced mute:

мужья́	*muZHYA*	husbands
му́ж	*MUSH, MUZH*	husband

But, also in rapid speech, if the next word is closely joined on and begins with a voiced mute other than [*v*], the final mute is voiced:

му́ж до́чери	*MUZH DOchiŗi*	the daughter's husband

Also an original (real) unvoiced mute is voiced when such a word follows in rapid speech:

мо́жет	*MOzhit*	it can, it may
мо́жет бы́ть	*MOzhid BIŢ*	it may be

Now listen to the way your Guide or the speaker on the record speaks the following sentences. In the *Aid to Listening* we have given the pronunciation used by the speaker on the record. If you have a Guide and the Guide pronounces differently, then imitate the Guide: a living model is better than a record.

PRACTICE 1

Unit 10, Record Side 3, after 1st spiral. (78 RPM) **(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 10, after 1st spiral.**

Ва́ш му́ж, мо́жет бы́ть, уже́ прие́хал.	*vásh MUSH MOzhid bíţ uZHE pŗiYExal.*	Your husband, perhaps, has already arrived.

Мо́й дру́г хо́чет жи́ть в гости́нице.	*mо́y DRUK xо́chid ZHIŢ v gaŞŢIņici.*	My friend wants to live in the hotel.
Я ра́д, что́ вы́ пришли́.	*yá RAT shtó VI pŗiSHĻI.*	I'm glad you've come.
По́езд сейча́с прихо́дит.	*POyist şi CHAS pŗiXOḑit.*	The train is just now coming in.

2. Russian [*l*, *m*, *n*].

Here is some more practice on Russian [*l*, *m*, *n*]. See how really Russian you can make the words sound.

PRACTICE 2

Unit 10, Record Side 3, after 2nd spiral. (78 RPM)

му́ж	*MUZH, MUSH*	husband
та́м	*TAM*	there
до́ма	*DOma*	at home
на́до	*NAda*	it is necessary
сы́н	*SIN*	son
жена́	*zhiNA*	wife
лу́чший	*LUCHshiy*	better (M.)
бы́л	*BIL*	was (M.)
была́	*biLA*	was (F.)
вокза́л	*vagZAL*	railway station

3. Russian palatal [*ļ*, *m̦*, *ņ*].

Here is some more practice on Russian palatal [*ļ*, *m̦*, *ņ*]. See how like the real Russian you can make the words sound.

PRACTICE 3

Unit 10, Record Side 3, after 3rd spiral. (78 RPM)

мя́со	*M̦Asa*	meat
се́мь	*ŞEM̦, ŞEM*	seven

вре́мя	*VŖEɱa*	time
не́т	*ŊET*	no
де́нь	*ḐEŊ*	day
си́ний	*ŞIŋiy*	blue (M.)
ле́то	*ĻEta*	summer
и́ли	*Iļi*	or
ру́бль	*RUBĻ*	rouble

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

A. COMMENT ON THE BASIC SENTENCES

1. Home, at home.

Where are you going?—	Куда́ вы́ идёте? —	*kuDA ví iḐOţi?—*
Home.	Домой.	*daMOY.*
Now we have to [go] home.	Тепе́рь на́м на́до домо́й.	*ţiPEŖ nám náda daMOY.*

The word [*daMOY*] 'home' answers the question [*kuDA*] 'whereto'. It is formed with an irregular ending from the noun [*DOM*] 'house'.

Where is your father?—	Где́ ва́ш оте́ц? —	*GḐE vásh aŢEC?—*
At home.	До́ма.	*DOma.*
My brother is ill today;	Бра́т сего́дня бо́лен;	*BRAT şiVO dŋa BOļin;*
he has stayed at home.	о́н оста́лся до́ма.	*ón aSTAlsa DOma.*

The word [*DOma*] 'at home' answers the question [*GḐE*] 'where'. It is the Genitive case form, with an irregular meaning, of the noun [*DOM*] 'house'.

2. [VŖEɱa].

Time is precious.	Вре́мя до́рого.	*VŖEɱa DOraga.*
Do you have time?	У ва́с е́сть вре́мя?	*u vás YEST VŖEɱa?*
No; I have very little time; I have to hurry.	Не́т, у меня́ ма́ло вре́мени; мне́ на́до спеши́ть.	*ŊET, u ɱiŋá MAla VŖEɱiŋi; mŋé náda spiSHIŢ.*
In time you will be speaking Russian very well.	Со вре́менем вы́ бу́дете о́чень хорошо́ говори́ть по-ру́сски.	*sa VŖEɱiŋim ví buḑiţi Ochiŋ xaraSHO gavaŖIŢ pa RUsķi.*
The seasons of the year are spring, summer, fall, and winter.	Времена́ го́да — весна́, ле́то, о́сень и зима́.	*vŗiɱiNA GOda, v̧iSNA, ĻEta, Oşiŋ, i z̧iMA.*
At times he goes off traveling, nobody knows whereto.	Времена́ми о́н уезжа́ет, никто́ не зна́ет, куда́.	*vŗiɱiNAɱi ón uyiZHDZHAyit, ŋi KTO ŋi ZNAyit kuDA.*

The word [*VŖEɱa*] ‘time’ is one of a small set of irregular Neuter nouns. In the Singular, the stem is [*vŗeɱiŋ-*], but the Nominative (and along with it, the Accusative) is [*VŖEɱa*], and the Genitive and Dative are like the Locative: [*VŖEɱiŋi*]. The Plural has a different stem: [*vŗiM̧ON-*]; this takes the regular endings and accents them.

I was in Moscow only once.	Я бы́л в Москве́ то́лько ра́з.	*yá bíl v maSKV̧E tóļka RAS.*
He was in America three times.	Он три́ ра́за бы́л в Аме́рике.	*ón TŖI RAza bíl v aM̧Eŗiķi.*
I have many times already told him that.	Я э́то ему́ уже́ мно́го ра́з говори́л.	*yá Eta yimú uzhé MNOga RAZ gavaŖIL.*

The word [*VŖEɱa*] means any amount or stretch of time. The word [*RAS, RAZ*] refers only to the *number of times* something happens.

3. [*TOT*].

This restaurant is cheaper than that one.	Этот рестора́н деше́вле че́м то́т.	*Etat ŗistaRAN ḑiSHEvļi chém TOT.*
	Этот рестора́н деше́вле того́.	*Etat ŗistaRAN ḑiSHEvļi taVO.*

This bed is more comfortable than that one.	Эта посте́ль бо́лее удо́бна че́м та́.	*Eta paŞŢEĻ BOļiyi uDObna chém TA.*
Give me that book over there on the table.	Да́йте мне́ ту́ кни́гу, та́м на столе́.	*DAYţi mŋé TU KŊIgu, TAM na staĻE.*
These people are Russians, and those are Americans.	Эти лю́ди — ру́сские, а те́ — америка́нцы.	*Eţi ĻUḑi RUsķiya; a ŢE, aɱiŗiKANci.*
With this pen I can write, but with that one I can't.	Этим перо́м я́ могу́ писа́ть, а те́м не могу́.	*Eţim p̧iROM yá magú p̧iSAŢ, a ŢEM, ŋi maGU.*

The adjective [*TOT*] has the stem [*t*-] and goes like [*aḐIN*], only where [*aḐIN*] has an ending with [*i*], there [*TOT*] has [*e*]. The word [*TOT*] is used for 'that' when there is a strong contrast between a nearer thing [*Eta*] and a farther one [*TO*]. It is used also in some special expressions, such as [*TO zhi*] 'also', [*pa TOM*] 'after that, afterwards', [*pa taMU shtó*] 'because'.

4. [*CHEY*]

Whose chair is this?	Че́й э́то сту́л?	*CHEY éta STUL?*
Whose pen is this?	Чьё э́то перо́?	*CHYO éta p̧iRO?*
Whose book is this?	Чья́ э́то кни́га?	*CHYA éta KŊIga?*
Whose book did he take?	Чью́ кни́гу о́н взя́л?	*CHYU KŊIgu ón VZ̧AL?*
Whose papers are these?	Чьи́ э́то бума́ги?	*CHYI éta buMAgi?*

The adjective [*CHEY*] 'whose' has the stem [*chy*-] and takes the same endings as [*MOY*]. Where there is no ending (Masculine Nominative), the vowel [*e*] is inserted. The forms other than the Nominative and Accusative are rarely used.

Notice that 'this' and 'these' in the above sentences are always just [*Eta*], the Neuter form. 'This' or 'these' just pointing at something and not modifying a noun is plain [*Eta*]:

These are my friends.	Это мои́ друзья́.	*Eta mayí druZ̧YA.*

They will also use [*Etat*] as an adjective:

Whose are these books?	Эти кни́ги чьи́?	*Eţi KŊIgi CHYI?*

5. Have to, need.

I have to leave (by train or car, on a trip—not on foot).	**Мне́ на́до уе́хать.**	*mŋé náda uYExaţ.*
	Мне́ ну́жно уе́хать.	*mŋé núzhna uYExaţ.*
	Я до́лжен уе́хать.	*yá dólzhin uYExaţ.*
Ve must write the letter at once.	**На́м на́до сейча́с же написа́ть письмо́.**	*nám náda şi CHAZ zhi napiSAŢ pişMO.*
	На́м ну́жно сейча́с же написа́ть письмо́.	*nám núzhna şi CHAZ zhi napiSAŢ pişMO.*
	Мы́ должны́ сейча́с же написа́ть письмо́.	*mí dalzhní şi CHAZ zhi napiSAŢ pişMO.*

The words [*NAda*] and [*NUzhna*] mean 'it is necessary'. he person for whom it is necessary to do something is n the Dative case. The word [*NAda*] has only this one orm (it is uninflected). The word [*NUzhna*] is the Neuter hort form of an adjective [*NUzhnay*] 'needed, necessary'.

The words [*DOLzhin*], Masculine, with inserted vowel; [*dalZHNA*], Feminine; [*dalZHNO*] Neuter; [*dalZHNI*] Plural are the short forms of an adjective [*DOLzhnay*] 'indebted'; they mean 'he, she, it is under obligation, has to; they are under obligation, they have to'. The person who has to do something is Nominative.

need that book.	**Мне́ на́до э́ту кни́гу.**	*mŋé náda étu KŊIgu.*
	Мне́ нужна́ э́та кни́га.	*mŋé nuzhná éta KŊIga.*
Ve need envelopes and stamps.	**На́м на́до конве́рты и ма́рки.**	*nám náda kanƳERti i MARķi.*
	На́м ну́жны конве́рты и ма́рки.	*nám núzhni kanƳERti i MARķi.*
o you need an automobile?	**Ва́м на́до автомоби́ль?**	*vám náda aftamaβIĻ?*
	Ва́м ну́жен автомоби́ль?	*vám núzhin aftamaβIĻ?*
he needs a fountain pen.	**Ей на́до ве́чное перо́.**	*yéy náda ƳEchnaya piRO.*
	Ей ве́чное перо́ ну́жно.	*yéy ƳEchnaya piRO núzhna.*

With [*NAda*] a thing which one needs is in the Accusative. The short forms of [*NUzhnay*] are: Masculine [*NUzhin*], with inserted vowel; Feminine [*nuZHNA*], with accent on the ending; Neuter [*NUzhna*]; Plural [*NUzhni*]. These words mean 'he, she, it is needed; they are needed'; that which is needed is in the Nominative.

He owes me five roubles.	Он мне́ до́лжен пя́ть рубле́й.	*ón mŋé DOLzhin P̧AŢ ruBĻEY.*
She owes us a few roubles.	Она́ на́м должна́ не́сколько рубле́й.	*aná nám dalZHNA ŅEskaļka ruBĻEY.*
We owe the shoemaker twenty-one roubles.	Мы́ должны́ сапо́жнику два́дцать оди́н ру́бль.	*mí dalZHNI saPOzhŋiku DVATciţ aḐIN RUBĻ.*

The short forms of [*DOLzhnay*] mean 'he, she, it is indebted; they are indebted'. That which one owes is in the Accusative.

6. Sorry for.

I'm sorry for your mother.	Мне́ жа́ль ва́шей ма́тери.	*mŋé ZHAĻ váshiy MAţiŗi.*
	Мне́ жа́лко ва́шей ма́тери.	*mŋé ZHALka váshiy MAţiŗi.*
We're very sorry for him.	На́м о́чень жа́ль его́.	*nám Ochiŋ ZHAĻ yivó.*
	На́м о́чень жа́лко его́.	*nám Ochiŋ ZHALka yivó.*
He feels bad about those twenty roubles.	Ему́ жа́ль э́тих двадцати́ рубле́й.	*yimú ZHAĻ éţix dvaciŢI ruBĻEY.*
	Ему́ жа́лко э́тих двадцати́ рубле́й.	*yimú ZHALka éţix dvaciŢI ruBĻEY.*

The words [*ZHAĻ, ZHALka*] mean 'it is a pity or a shame; it's too bad'. The person who feels sorry is in the Dative case. The person or thing he feels sorry about is in the Genitive case.

7. Prepositions.

The letter is over there on the table, under the book.	Письмо́ та́м на столе́, под кни́гой.	*pişMO tám na staĻE, pat KŅIgay.*

The preposition [*POT, POD*] with the Instrumental case means 'under', answering the question [*GḐE*] 'where'.

Walk behind me.	Иди́те за мно́й.	*iḐIţi za MNOY.*
The kitchen is back of the dining room.	Кýхня за столóвой.	*KUxŋa za staLOvay.*
He has gone down town to get the tickets ('after tickets').	Он пошёл в гóрод за билéтами.	*ón paSHOL v GOrat za b̧iĻEtaŋi.*
You owe ('behind you') forty roubles.	За вáми сóрок рублéй.	*za VAM̧i SOrak ruBĻEY.*
She is married ('behind a husband') to an American.	Онá зáмужем за америкáнцем.	*aná ZA muzhim za aŋiŗiKANcim.*

The preposition [*ZA*] with the Instrumental case means 'behind, after', answering the question [*GḐE*] where Observe that translations or statements of meaning don't help much; one simply has to learn to say things.

8. [*TO, ZHE*].

I don't even want to talk to him.	Я с ни́м и говори́ть-то не хочý.	*yá s ŋím i gavaŖIŢ to ŋi xaCHU.*
There is a privy behind the house, but we haven't any bathroom.	Убóрная за дóмом, а вáнной-то у нáс нéт.	*uBORnaya za DOmam, a VANnay to u nás ŊET.*
As for understanding, I understand, but I can't talk.	Понимáть-то понимáю, а говори́ть не могý.	*paŋiMAŢ to paŋiMAyu, a gavaŖIŢ ŋi maGU.*

The word [*TO*], Neuter Nominative and Accusative of [*TOT*] throws a strong emphasis on the preceding word.

He has gone away, but she has stayed here.	Он уéхел, онá же здéсь остáлась.	*ON uYExal, aNA zhi z̧ḑéş aSTAlas.*
Go (or come) right away!	Подíте сейчáс же!	*paḐIţi şi CHAZ zhi!*
I'll give you three roubles, but five I haven't got.	Я вáм дáм трú рублá, пятú же у менá нéт.	*yá vám DAM ŢŖI ruBĻA, piŢI zhi u ŋiŋá ŊET.*

The word [*ZHE*] emphasizes a preceding word, especially in contrast with something else. Notice the combinations [*TAG zhi, TO zhi*] 'also, too'.

B. NEW NOUNS

Masculine:

	N.S.	G.S.	N.P.	G.P.
year	*GOT*	*GOda*	*GOdi*	*gaDOF*
envelope	*kanV̧ERT*	*kanV̧ERta*	*kanV̧ERti*	*kanV̧ERtaf*
sheet (of paper)	*ĻIST*	*ļiSTA*	*ļiSTI*	*ļiSTOF*
Peter	*P̧OTR*	*p̧iTRA*	——	——

Feminine:

	N.S.	A.S.	G.S.	N.P.	G.P.
book	*KŅIga*	*KŅIgu*	*KŅIģi*	*KŅIģi*	*KŅIK*
stamp	*MARka*	*MARku*	*MARķi*	*MARķi*	*MArak*

Neuter:

The word [*chirŅIla*] 'ink' is Plural only; Genitive [*chirŅIL*], Locative [*f chirŅIlax*] 'in the ink', and so on.

C. NEW VERBS

1. Regular verbs of Type 1.

You have probably noticed that most (but not all) verbs whose Infinitive ends in [*-aţ*] make their forms in exactly the same way, with no shifting of accent. Here are two examples:

Infinitive:	*ḐElaţ* 'to do'	*ChiTAŢ* 'to read'	Present:	*ḐElayu*	*ChiTAyu*
Infinitive stem:	*ḑéla-*	*chitá-*		*ḐElayish*	*chiTAyish*
Past M.	*ḐElal*	*chiTAL*		*ḐElayit*	*chiTAyit*
Past F., N.	*ḐElala*	*chiTAla*		*ḐElayim*	*chiTAyim*
Past P.	*ḐElaļi*	*chiTAļi*		*ḐElayiţi*	*chiTAyiţi*
Present stem:	*ḑélay-*	*chitáy-*		*ḐElayut*	*chiTAyut*

When a verb goes this way, we shall simply call it 'Type 1 Regular' and we shall not give its forms.

In this Unit we have had several new verbs whose forms are Type 1 Regular:

DUmaţ 'to think' *paluCHAŢ* 'to receive, to get' *zakriVAŢ* 'to close'

2. Other verbs of Type 1.

	Infinitive	'I'	'he, she, it'	Past
to take	*BRAŢ*	*ƀiRU*	*ƀiŖOT*	*BRAL, braLA, BRAla, BRAļi*

The other new verbs of Type 1 in this Unit are compounds of verbs which we already know:

napiSAŢ 'to write' like *piSAŢ* 'to write' *paMOCH* 'to help' like *MOCH* 'to be able'

uYExaţ 'to go away' like *YExaţ* 'to go' (not on foot)

3. Regular verbs of Type 2.

You have probably noticed that most verbs whose Infinitive ends in [*-iţ*] make their forms in exactly the same way. Here are two examples:

Infinitive:	*ṾIḑiţ* 'to see'	*gavaŖIŢ* 'to speak'	Present:	*ṾIzhu*	*gavaŖU*
Infinitive stem:	*ṿíḑi-*	*gavaŗí-*		*ṾIḑish*	*gavaŖISH*
Past M.	*ṾIḑil*	*gavaŖIL*		*ṾIḑit*	*gavaŖIT*
Past F., N.	*ṾIḑila*	*gavaŖIla*		*ṾIḑim*	*gavaŖIM*
Past P.	*ṾIḑiļi*	*gavaŖIļi*		*ṾIḑiţi*	*gavaŖIţi*
Present stem:	*ṿíd-*	*gavar-*		*ṾIḑit*	*gavaŖAT*

When a verb goes this way, we shall simply call it 'Type 2 Regular' and we shall not give its forms.

Quite a few verbs with Present tense of Type 2 differ from the regular form in shifting the accent: they are stressed on the endings in most forms, but draw the accent back on the stem in the Present tense, except in the form for 'I': [*kuƤIŢ*] 'to buy', [*kuƤIL*] 'he bought', [*kuPĻU*] 'I'll buy', but [*KUpit*] 'he'll buy'.

The Present tense of Type 2 has some consonant changes in the form for 'I'.

[*d, z*] become [*zh*]: [*ṾIḑit*] 'he sees', but [*ṾIzhu*] 'I see'; [*paraẒIT*] 'he will strike', but [*paraZHU*] 'I will strike'

[*zd*] becomes [*zhdzh*]: [*YEẓḑit*] 'he rides', but [*YEzhdzhu*] 'I ride'

[*t*] becomes [*ch*]: [*FSTŖEţit*] 'he will meet', but [*FSTŖEchu*] 'I will meet'

[*st*] becomes [*shch*]: [*CHIşţit*] 'he cleans', but [*CHIshchu*] 'I clean'

[*s*] becomes [*sh*]: [*BROşit*] 'he will throw', but [*BROshu*] 'I will throw'

[*p, b, m, f, v*] add [*ļ*]: [*KUpit*] 'he will buy', but [*kuPĻU*] 'I will buy'; [*ĻUb̧it*] 'he loves', but [*ļuBĻU*] 'I love'; [*paznaKOm̧it*] 'he will make acquainted', but [*paznaKOmļu*] 'I will make acquainted'; [*LOv̧it*] 'he catches', but [*laVĻU*] 'I catch'.

In this Unit we have had several new verbs whose forms are Type 2 Regular:

[*b̧ispaKOyiţ*] 'to disturb, to worry'

[*blagadaŖIŢ*] 'to thank'

[*SLIshiţ*] 'to hear'

One new verb is like Type 2 Regular except that the accent shifts:

[*paluCHIŢ*] 'to receive': [*paluCHU*] 'I shall receive', but [*paLUchit*] 'he will receive'.

3. [*DAŢ*].

There are only four Russian verbs whose Present is neither Type 1 nor Type 2, but entirely irregular. One of them is [*xaŢEŢ*] 'to want', whose forms we already know. Another is [*DAŢ*] 'to give':

Infinitive [*DAŢ*]:

One has to give him a rouble.	На́до да́ть ему́ ру́бль.	*náda DAŢ yimú RUBĻ.*

Present [*DAM, DASH, DAST, daḐIM, daḐIţi, daDUT*]:

I'll give you fifty kopeks.	Я ва́м да́м пятьдеся́т копе́ек.	*yá vám DAM p̧id ḑiŞAT kaP̧Eyik.*
She'll give them the letter.	Она́ и́м да́ст письмо́.	*aná yím DAST p̧işMO.*
We'll give you the tickets right away.	Мы́ ва́м сейча́с дади́м биле́ты.	*mí vám şi CHAS daḐIM b̧iĻEti.*
How much will you give?	Ско́лько дади́те?	*SKOĻka daḐIţi?*
They won't give us anything.	Они́ на́м ничего́ не даду́т.	*aņí nám ņi chiVO ņi daDUT.*

Imperative [*DAY*]:

Please give me a glass of tea.	Да́йте мне́, пожалуйста, стака́н ча́ю.	*DAYţi mņé paZHALsta staKAN CHAyu.*

Past [*DAL, daLA, DAla* (or *daLO*), *DAļi*]. Notice also the accent on the preceding [*ŊE*] with all forms except the Feminine:

He gave me a ticket.	Он мне́ да́л биле́т.	*ón mŋé DAL þiĻET.*
He didn't give me any ticket.	Он мне́ не́ дал биле́та.	*ón mŋé ŊE dal þiĻEta.*
She gave them ten roubles.	Она́ и́м дала́ де́сять рубле́й.	*aná yím daLA ḐEşiţ ruBĻEY.*
The ten roubles, though, she did not give them.	Десяти́ рубле́й она́ и́м не дала́.	*ḑişiŢI ruBĻEY aná yím ŋi daLA.*
The summer in Russia gave us much that was pleasant.	Ле́то в Росси́и да́ло на́м мно́го прия́тного.	*ĻEta v raŞIyi DAla nám MNOga pŗiYAtnava.*
The summer in the south gave us nothing that was pleasant.	Ле́то на ю́ге ничего́ прия́тного на́м не́ дало.	*ĻEta na YUģi ŋi chiVO pŗiYAtnava nám ŊE dala.*
The letter, did they give you the letter?	Письмо́-то ва́м да́ли?	*ƥişMO to vám DAļi?*
Didn't they give you the letter?	Ва́м не́ дали письма́?	*vám ŊE daļi ƥişMA?*

The verb [*adDAŢ*] 'to give back, to hand over' is a compound of [*DAŢ*] and has the same forms. In the Past tense all the forms except the Feminine accent the prefix [*OT*]:

He'll give you back your ticket.	Он ва́м отда́ст биле́т.	*ón vám adDAST þiĻET.*
When will you give us back the tickets?	Когда́ вы́ отдади́те на́м биле́ты?	*kaGDA ví addaḐIţi nám þiĻEti?*
You haven't yet given us back the tickets.	Вы́ на́м ещё не о́тдали биле́ты.	*ví nám yishchó ŋi ODdaļi þiĻEti.*
Did I give you back the letter?	Я ва́м о́тдал письмо́?	*yá vám ODdal ƥişMO?*
Did she give you back your book?	Она́ ва́м отдала́ ва́шу кни́гу?	*aná vám addaLA váshu KŊIgu?*

D. DURATIVE AND PUNCTUAL VERBS

He is writing a letter.	Он пи́шет письмо́.	*ón ƤIshit ƥişMO.*
He is writing a book about the war.	Он пи́шет кни́гу о войне́.	*ón ƤIshit KŊIgu a vayŊE.*

He writes her letters twice a week.	Он е́й пи́шет пи́сьма два́ ра́за в неде́лю.	*ón yéy ꝐIshit ꝐIŞma DVA RAza v ŋiḐEļu.*
You write Russian very well.	Вы́ о́чень хорошо́ пи́шете по-ру́сски.	*ví Ochiŋ xaraSHO ꝐIshiţi pa RUsķi.*

The Present tense of some verbs tells of an action (or happening or state) in present time. This action may be *actual;* that is, now going on, like the English *-ing* form ('is writing'). Or else, the action may be *iterative;* that is, repeated, habitual, or general, though not necessarily going on at the very moment while one is speaking; this is like the English plain form of a verb ('writes'). These Russian verbs, whose Present tense tells of an action in present time, are called *Durative* verbs.

He's going to write a letter.	Он напи́шет письмо́.	*ón naꝐIshit pişMO.*
Tomorrow I'll write him a letter.	За́втра я́ ему́ напишу́ письмо́.	*ZAftra yá yimú napiSHU pişMO.*
Is he going to write a book about the war?	Он напи́шет кни́гу о войне́?	*ón naꝐIshit KŊIgu a vayŊE?*

The Present tense of some Russian verbs tells of a single action (or happening) in future time. Such verbs are called *Punctual* verbs. A Russian verb is either Durative or Punctual.

A simple verb (that is, a verb that is not compounded with a prefix) is Durative: [*piSAŢ*].

A compound verb which consists of a simple verb and a prefix, is Punctual: [*napiSAŢ*].

In many instances, such as this one, the prefix does not add much meaning beyond just making a Punctual verb out of a Durative.

A very few simple verbs are Punctual; for instance, [*DAŢ*] 'to give'.

Very many compound verbs are Durative; in these, however, the prefix is added not to a simple verb, but to a longer kind of word. We shall now look at these verbs.

Give me the letter, I'll sign it.	Да́йте мне́ письмо́; я подпишу́.	*DAYţi mŋé pişMO; yá patpiSHU.*
I don't think he'll sign.	Я не ду́маю, что́ он подпи́шет.	*yá ŋí DUmayu shtó ón patꝐIshit.*

In many instances a prefix added to a simple verb makes a big change in the meaning, as well as making a Punctual verb. Thus, [*patꝐIshit*] 'he will sign' is Punctual, from [*ꝐIshit*] 'he writes', Durative.

I'm just now signing the letter.	Я как ра́з подпи́сываю письмо́.	*yá kak RAS patP̡Isavayu pişMO.*
It's she that always writes the letters; he only signs them along with her.	Она́-то всегда́ пи́шет пи́сьма; о́н же то́лько вме́сте с не́й подпи́сывает.	*aNA to fşiGDA P̡Ishit P̡IŞma; ON zhi TOĻka v M̡Eşţi s ɲéy patP̡Isavayit.*

When a compound Punctual verb differs in meaning from the simple Durative, then there is also a *compound Durative* verb with the same prefix and the same meaning. This compound Durative verb consists of the prefix and a longer verb, called a *Compounding Durative*. Thus, to the compound Punctual [*patpiSAŢ*] there corresponds the compound Durative [*patP̡Isavaţ*].

The Compounding Durative is longer than the simple verb; for instance, [*-pisavaţ*] is the Compounding Durative of [*piSAŢ*]. Compounding Durative verbs end in [*-ivaţ, -avaţ*] or [*-áţ*]; they are of Type 1 Regular.

Compounding Duratives occur only with prefixes.

Here is an example of a verb whose Compounding Durative ends in [*-áţ*]:

Simple verb [*MOCH*] 'to be able':

He can't go there now.	Он не мо́жет пойти́ тепе́рь.	*ón ɲi MOzhit payŢI ţiP̡EŖ.*

Compound Punctual [*paMOCH*] 'to help':

He will help us.	Он на́м помо́жет.	*ón nám paMOzhit.*

Compound Durative [*pamaGAŢ*] 'to help':

He is helping us.	Он на́м помога́ет.	*ón nám pamaGAyit.*
He often helps us.	Он на́м ча́сто помога́ет.	*ón nám CHAsta pamaGAyit.*
He was writing a letter.	Он писа́л письмо́.	*ón piSAL pişMO.*
He was writing a book about the war.	Он писа́л кни́гу о войне́.	*ón piSAL KƝIgu a vayƝE.*
When I came into the room, she was writing a letter.	Когда́ я́ вошёл в ко́мнату, она́ писа́ла письмо́.	*kagdá yá vaSHOL f KOmnatu, aná piSAla pişMO.*
She wrote to her husband twice a week.	Она́ писа́ла му́жу два́ ра́за в неде́лю.	*aná piSAla MUzhu DVA RAza v ɲiḐEļu.*

We met several Americans who spoke and wrote Russian quite well.	Мы́ встре́тили не́сколько америка́нцев, кото́рые дово́льно хорошо́ говори́ли и писа́ли по-ру́сски.	*mí FSTŖEţiļi ŊEskaļka aɱiŗiKANcif koTOraya daVOĻna xaraSHO gavaŖIļi i piSAļi pa RUsķi.*

The Past tense of a Durative verb tells of an action in past time. The action may be actual; that is, going on at the time spoken of, and, especially, going on when something else happened; this is like the English *-ing* form ('was writing'). Or else the action may be iterative; that is, repeated, habitual, or general; this is like the English simple form ('wrote') when it means action more than once.

He wrote the letter.	Он написа́л письмо́.	*ón napiSAL pişMO.*
He wrote a book about the war in three months.	Он в три́ ме́сяца написа́л кни́гу о войне́.	*ón f ŢŖI ⱮEşica napiSAL KŊIgu a vayŊE.*
She wrote to him just once.	Она́ ему́ написа́ла то́лько ра́з.	*aná yimú napiSAla tóļka RAS.*

The Past tense of a Punctual verb tells of one simple action in past time, with no allowance made for anything else happening while this action was going on; the Past tense of a Punctual verb is like the English simple past ('wrote') when it means a single act (not repeated, habitual, or general)

Write to us often.	Пиши́те на́м ча́сто.	*piSHIţi nám CHAsta.*
Don't write to him.	Не пиши́те ему́.	*ŋi piSHIţi yimú.*

The Imperative of a Durative verb is used in ordering repeated actions and in telling someone not to do something (prohibition).

Write him a letter.	Напиши́те ему́ письмо́.	*napiSHIţi yimú pişMO.*

The Imperative of a Punctual verb is used in commands for a single action.

I can't write to you so often.	Я не могу́ ва́м та́к ча́сто писа́ть.	*yá ŋi maGU vám ták CHAsta piSAŢ.*
After dinner I must be writing letters.	По́сле обе́да я́ до́лжен пи́сьма писа́ть.	*póşļi aβEda yá dólzhin ŖIŞma piSAŢ.*

I shall write to you once a week.	Я ва́м бу́ду писа́ть ра́з в неде́лю.	*yá vám búdu piSAT rás v ŋiḐEļu.*

The Infinitive of a Durative verb tells of an action covering a stretch of time during which other things may happen, or of a repeated, habitual, or general action. With [*BUdu, BUḑit*] they use only Durative infinitives; this combination means a future action covering a stretch of time, or else repeated, habitual, or general.

Study these and the following Russian sentences in the usual way until you can say them correctly without hesitation. Do not spend your time studying the rules and statements of meaning. Statements like these, even if one knows them very well, do not help much in speaking or understanding. Also, our statements give only a rough outline; you will hear and read many Russian sentences which are not covered by our rules, because our rules are not complete. A complete set of such rules would fill a big book and would not be of much practical value. Don't spend time puzzling over rules and statements of meaning; they are given only to help you find your way when you study the Russian sentences.

The Durative and Punctual forms are often called the *Aspects* of the verb. In English, the Aspects are actual (*he was writing*) and iterative-punctual (*he wrote*). In Russian the aspects are Durative (actual-iterative) [*ón piSAL*], and Punctual [*ón napiSAL*].

Rough correspondence of English and Russian Aspects:

Actual: action going on during a stretch of time during which other things may happen:

English:	Russian:
-ing form: *he was writing*	Durative: [*ón piSAL*]

Iterative: action that is repeated, habitual, or general:

English:	Russian:
simple form: *he wrote* (*often*)	Durative: [*ón piSAL*]

Punctual: action occurring once, with nothing said about other happenings during the time it takes:

English:	Russian:
simple form: *he wrote* (*once*)	Punctual: [*ón napiSAL*]

Examples of Durative (D.) and Punctual [illegible]:

aβEdaţ (D.), *paaβEdaţ* (P.) to eat dinner

We always eat dinner at five.	Мы́ всегда́ обе́даем в пя́ть часо́в.	*mí fşiGDA aβEdayim f P̧AŢ chiSOF.*
Today I'm having dinner at Ilyins'.	Сего́дня я́ обе́даю у Ильины́х.	*şiVO dŋa yá aβEdayu u iļyiNIX.*

We'll first have dinner and then we'll start.	Мы́ сперва́ пообе́даем, а пото́м пое́дем.	*mí s pirVA paaβEdayim, a pa TOM paYEḑim.*
Come and have dinner with us.	Приди́те к на́м пообе́дать.	*pŗiḐIţi k nám paaβEdaţ.*
	BŖIŢ (D.), *paBŖIŢ* (P.) to shave	
What are you doing in the bathroom?—I'm shaving.	Что́ вы́ де́лаете в ва́нной? — Я бре́юсь.	*shtó ví ḐElayiţi v VANnay?—yá BŖEyus.*
Sometimes he shaves twice a day.	Иногда́ о́н бре́ется два́ ра́за в де́нь.	*inaGDA ón BŖEyitsa DVA RAza v ḐEŊ.*
Sometimes he has to shave twice a day.	Иногда́ ему́ на́до бри́ться два́ ра́за в де́нь.	*inaGDA yimú náda BŖITsa DVA RAza v ḐEŊ.*
I have to shave now.	Тепе́рь мне́ на́до побри́ться.	*ţipéŗ mŋé náda paBŖITsa.*
Please give me a shave.	Пожа́луйста, побре́йте меня́.	*paZHALsta, paBŖEYţi ŋiŋá.*
I've just now shaved.	Я то́лько-что побри́лся.	*yá TOĻka shtó paBŖILsa.*
	chiŊIŢ (D.), *pachiŊIŢ* (P.) to repair	
He repairs shoes very well.	Он о́чень хорошо́ чи́нит боти́нки.	*ón Ochiŋ xaraSHO CHIŋit baŢINķi.*
Can you repair these shoes?	Вы́ мо́жете почини́ть э́ти боти́нки?	*ví mózhiţi pachiŊIŢ éţi baŢINķi?*
	CHIşţiţ (D.), *paCHIşţiţ* (P.) to clean	
Can one get a shine here?	Мо́жно зде́сь чи́стить боти́нки?	*MOzhna z̧ḑéş CHIşţiţ baŢINķi?*
Do they shine shoes here?	Зде́сь чи́стят боти́нки?	*z̧ḑéş CHIşţit baŢINķi?*
These shoes have to be cleaned.	Эти боти́нки на́до почи́стить.	*Eţi baŢINķi náda paCHIşţiţ.*
	ḐElaţ (D.), *ZḐElaţ* (P.) to do	
What did you do (were doing) in summer?—I did a lot of reading.	Что́ вы́ де́лали ле́том? — Я мно́го чита́л.	*shtó ví ḐElaļi ĻEtam?—yá MNOga chiTAL.*

Don't do that.	Не делайте этого. Не делайте это.	*ŋi ḐElayţi Etava.* *ŋi ḐElayţi Eta.*
Oh, what have you done here?	Ах, что вы здесь сделали?	*AX, SHTO vi z̧ḑéş ZḐElaļi?*
Please do that for me.	Пожалуйста, сделайте это для меня.	*paZHALsta, ZḐElayţi éta dļa miŊA.*

paftaŖIŢ (P.), *paftaŖAŢ* (D.) to repeat (simple verb not used)

Repeat what I've just said to you.	Повторите то, что я вам сейчас сказал.	*paftaŖIţi tó shtó yá vám şi CHAS skaZAL.*
That word is bad; don't repeat it.	Это слово нехорошое; не повторяйте его.	*éta SLOva ŋi xaROshiya; ŋi paftaŖAYţi yivó.*
The little boys repeat everything their teacher tells them.	Мальчики повторяют всё, что им говорит учительница.	*MAļchiķi paftaŖAyut FŞO shtó yím gavaŖIT uCHIţiļŋica.*

zaKRIŢ (P.), *zakriVAŢ* (D.) to close (simple verb not much used)

Why have you closed the windows? —I felt cold.	Почему вы закрыли окна? — Мне было холодно.	*pa chiMU ví zaKRIļi Okna?—mŋé bíla XOladna.*
Please shut the window.	Пожалуйста, закройте окно.	*paZHALsta, zaKROYţi aKNO.*
I'll shut it right away.	Сейчас закрою.	*şi CHAS zaKROyu.*
Why do you always close the windows?	Почему вы всегда закрываете окна?	*pa chiMU ví fşiGDA zakriVAyiţi Okna?*
They close the ticket window at half past nine.	Кассу закрывают в половине десятого.	*KASsu zakriVAyut f palaV̧Iŋi ḑiŞAtava.*
The post office closes at half past five.	Почта закрывается в половине шестого.	*POchta zakriVAyitsa f palaV̧Iŋi shiSTOva.*

paluCHIŢ (P.), *paluCHAŢ* (D.) to receive (simple verb not used)

I think I'll soon get a letter from him.	Я ду́маю, что́ ско́ро получу́ от него́ письмо́.	*yá DUmayu, shtó SKOra paluCHU at ηivó ƥişMO.*
I got a letter from New York today.	Я сего́дня получи́л письмо́ из Нью-Йо́рка.	*yá şiVOdηa paluCHIL ƥişMO iz ηyu YORka.*
You'll get a letter from her tomorrow.	Вы́ за́втра полу́чите от неё письмо́.	*ví ZAftra paLUchiţi at ηiyó ƥişMO.*
Do you often get letters from Russia?	Вы́ ча́сто получа́ете пи́сьма из Росси́и?	*ví CHAsta paluCHAyiţi ƤIŞma iz raŞIyi?*
They used to get letters from their son twice a month.	От сы́на получа́ли пи́сьма два́ ра́за в ме́сяц.	*at SIna paluCHAļi ƤIŞma DVA ráza v ⱮEşic.*

NRAɣitsa (D.), *paNRAɣitsa* (P.) to please, to seem nice

Do you like this?	Это ва́м нра́вится?	*Eta vám NRAɣitsa?*
I know you'll like this.	Я зна́ю, что́ э́то ва́м понра́вится.	*yá ZNAyu shtó Eta vám paNRAɣitsa.*

ƤIŢ (D.), *VIƥiţ* (P.), *viƥiVAŢ* (D.) to drink

What are you drinking?	Что́ вы́ пьёте?	*SHTO ví ƤYOţi?*
I never drink beer.	Я никогда́ не пью́ пи́ва.	*yá ηi kaGDA ηi ƤYU ƤIva.*
What will you drink, tea or coffee?	Что́ вы́ бу́дете пи́ть, ча́й и́ли ко́фе?	*SHTO ví búḑiţi ƤIŢ, CHAY íļi KOfi?*
What did you drink at their [house] yesterday at dinner?	Что́ вы́ пи́ли у ни́х вчера́ за обе́дом?	*SHTO ví ƤIļi u ηíx fchiRA za aβEdam?*
I'll drink another cup of coffee.	Я вы́пью ещё ча́шку ко́фе.	*yá VIƥyu yiSHCHO cháshku KOfi.*
I've already drunk two glasses of tea.	Я уже́ вы́пил два́ стака́на ча́ю.	*yá uzhé VIƥil DVA staKAna CHAyu.*

He [always] drinks no more than two glasses of tea.	Он выпива́ет не бо́лее дву́х стака́нов ча́ю.	*ón vipiVAyit ŋi BOļiyi DVUX staKAnaf CHAyu.*

The prefix [*vi-*] is always accented when it combines with a simple verb to make a Punctual. It is not accented when it combines with a Compounding Durative.

The Punctual verb [*VIpiţ*] says that one drinks up all the liquid in some container, such as a cup or glass. The Compound Durative [*vipiVAŢ*] means this same action repeated. Many verbs have such special twists of meaning for the Aspects.

SLIshiţ (D.), *uSLIshiţ* (P.) to hear

I've heard she is married.	Я слы́шал, что́ она́ за́мужем.	*yá SLIshil shtó aná ZA muzhim.*
Have you heard the train?—No, I haven't heard it.	Вы́ слы́шали по́езд? — Не́т, ещё не слы́шал.	*ví SLIshiļi POyist?—ŊET, yiSHCHO ŋi SLIshil.*
He doesn't hear (pay attention to) anything.	Он ничего́ не слы́шит.	*ón ŋi chiVO ŋi SLIshit.*
He doesn't want to hear you (to listen to what you say).	Он слы́шать ва́с не хо́чет.	*ón SLIshiţ vás ŋi XOchit.*
It's hard to hear him. (to listen to him).	Тру́дно слы́шать его́.	*TRUdna SLIshiţ yivó.*
It's hard to hear him (to catch what he's saying).	Тру́дно услы́шать его́.	*TRUdna uSLIshiţ yivó.*

V̧Iḑiţ (D.), *uV̧Iḑiţ* (P.) to see

Can you see all right?	Вы́ хорошо́ ви́дите?	*ví xaraSHO V̧Iḑiţi?*
Did you see well?	Вы́ хорошо́ ви́дели?	*ví xaraSHO V̧Iḑiļi?*
I don't see anything.	Я ничего́ не ви́жу.	*yá ŋi chiVO ŋi V̧Izhu.*
I don't see anyone.	Я никого́ не ви́жу.	*yá ŋi kaVO ŋi V̧Izhu.*
I see that this is very difficult.	Я ви́жу, что́ э́то о́чень тру́дно.	*yá V̧Izhu shtó éta Ochiŋ TRUdna.*
What did you see there?	Что́ вы́ та́м ви́дели?	*SHTO ví tám V̧Iḑiļi?*

You will see him there.	Вы́ его́ та́м уви́дите.	*ví yivó tám uƳIḑiţi.*
We'll see later.	Мы́ пото́м уви́дим.	*mí pa TOM uƳIḑim.*
You and I will soon see each other (again).	Мы́ с ва́ми ско́ро уви́димся.	*mí s VAŋi SKOra uƳIḑimsa.*
We'll see each other again.	Мы́ ещё уви́димся.	*mí yishchó uƳIḑimsa.*
When I went into the living room, I saw (caught sight of) her.	Когда́ я́ вошёл в гости́ную, я её уви́дел.	*kagdá yá vaSHOL v gaŞŢInuyu, yá yiyó uƳIḑil.*

ZAftrakaţ (D.), *paZAftrakaţ* (P.) to eat lunch

We lunch at half past twelve.	Мы́ за́втракаем в полови́не пе́рвого.	*mí ZAftrakayim f palaƳIŋi ƤERvava.*
Have you had lunch?	Вы́ за́втракали?	*ví ZAftrakaļi?*
At what time are we going to have lunch?	В кото́ром часу́ мы́ бу́дем за́втракать?	*f kaTOram chiSU mí búḑim ZAftrakaţ?*
Shall we have some lunch?	Поза́втракать на́м?	*paZAftrakaţ nám?*
Let's go have some lunch here in this restaurant.	Пойдём поза́втракать во́т в э́том рестора́не.	*payḐOM paZAftrakaţ vót v Etam ŗistaRAŋi.*
Come and have lunch at our house.	Приходи́те к на́м поза́втракать.	*pŗixaḐIţi k nám paZAftrakaţ.*

ZHDAŢ (D.), *padaZHDAŢ* (P.) to wait

What are you waiting for?	Чего́ вы́ ждёте?	*chiVO ví ZHḐOţi?*
Whom is he waiting for?	Кого́ о́н ждёт?	*kaVO ón ZHḐOT?*
I've been waiting for you a long time.	Я ва́с жду́ давно́.	*yá vaz ZHDU daVNO.*
I'll be waiting for you here.	Я бу́ду ва́с зде́сь жда́ть.	*yá búdu váz ȤḐEŞ ZHDAŢ.*
We were waiting there for three hours.	Мы́ жда́ли та́м три́ часа́.	*mí ZHDAļi tám ŢRI chiSA.*

Don't wait for me.	Не ждите меня́.	*ŋi ZHḐIţi ŋiŋá.*
I'll wait for you.	Я ва́с подожду́.	*yá vás padaZHDU.*
Can you wait a quarter of an hour?	Вы́ мо́жете подожда́ть че́тверть часа́?	*ví MOzhiţi padaZHDAŢ CHEţvirţ y chiSA?*
Wait for me, please.	Подожди́те меня́, пожа́луйста.	*padaZHḐIţi ŋiŋá paZHALsta.*

2. Covering English and Russian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering, first the English, then the Russian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences.*

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Russian. Check up on anything you do not know, until you are sure of everything.

3. What Would You Say? (Individual Study)

Read aloud each of the following and then pick out the expression you think most suitable:

1. You want to know at what time the post office is closed. You ask:

a.	В кото́ром часу́ по́чта закрыва́ется?	*f kaTOram chiSU POchta zakriVAyitsa?*
b.	В кото́ром часу́ вчера́ закры́ли по́чту?	*f kaTOram chiSU fchiRA zaKRIļi POchtu?*
c.	В кото́ром часу́ сего́дня закро́ют почту?	*kaTOram chiSU şiVO dŋa zaKROyut POchtu?*

2. You haven't received any letters from America for a long time. You say:

a.	Я ско́ро получу́ пи́сьма из Аме́рики.	*yá SKOra paluCHU P̦IŞma iz aM̦Eŗiķi.*
b.	Я ча́сто получа́ю пи́сьма из Аме́рики.	*yá CHAsta paluCHAyu P̦IŞma iz aM̦Eŗiķi.*
c.	Я давно́ уже́ не получа́л пи́сем из Аме́рики.	*yá daVNO uzhé ņi paluCHAL P̦Işim iz AM̦Eŗiķi.*

3. In summer you used to get a letter twice a month. You say:

a.	Ле́том я́ получи́л письмо́.	*ĻEtam yá paluCHIL pişMO.*
b.	Ле́том я́ получу́ письмо́.	*ĻEtam yá paluCHU pişMO.*
c.	Ле́том я́ получа́л пи́сьма два́ ра́за в ме́сяц.	*ĻEtam yá paluCHAL P̦IŞma DVA ráza v M̦Eşic.*

4. You want your shoes mended. You ask the shoemaker:

a.	Вы́ почи́ните мой боти́нки?	*ví paCHIņiţi mayí baŢINķi?*
b.	Вы́ чи́ните мой боти́нки?	*ví CHIņiţi mayí baŢINķi?*
c.	Вы́ почини́ли мой боти́нки?	*ví pachiŅIļi mayí baŢINķi?*

5. You want to know whom your friend is waiting for. You ask:

a.	Кого́ вы́ жда́ли?	*kaVO ví ZHDAļi?*
b.	Кого́ вы́ ждёте?	*kaVO ví ZHḐOţi?*
c.	Кого́ вы́ подождёте?	*kaVO ví padaZHḐOţi?*

6. Your friend is going to write a letter to certain people; you want to know what he is going to write to them. You ask:

a.	Что́ вы́ и́м напи́шете?	*SHTO ví yím naP̦Ishiţi?*
b.	Что́ вы́ и́м пи́шете?	*SHTO ví yím P̦Ishiţi?*
c.	Что́ вы́ и́м написа́ли?	*SHTO ví yím napiSAļi?*

7. The hotel cashier tells you that you owe 17 roubles. He says:

a.	Я ва́м до́лжен семна́дцать рубле́й.	*yá vám DOLzhin şimNATciţ ruBĻEY.*
b.	За ва́ми семна́дцать рубле́й.	*za VAm̦i şimNATciţ ruBĻEY.*
c.	Ва́м на́до семна́дцать рубле́й.	*vám NAda şimNATciţ ruBĻEY.*

8. Your friend asks you where you are bound for. You are going home; so you answer:

a.	Я тепе́рь до́ма.	*yá ţipéŗ DOma.*
b.	Я тепе́рь домо́й.	*yá ţipéŗ daMOY.*
c.	Я тепе́рь в до́ме.	*yá ţipéŗ v DOɱi.*

9. He wants you to go some place with him, but you have no time. You say:

a.	У меня́ тепе́рь мно́го вре́мени.	*u ɱiɲá ţipéŗ MNOga VŖEɱiɲi.*
b.	Вре́мя тепе́рь до́рого.	*VŖEɱa ţipéŗ DOraga.*
c.	Тепе́рь у меня́ вре́мени не́т.	*ţiPEŖ u ɱiɲá VŖEɱiɲi ƝET.*

10. You have been in New York many times. In answer to a question, you say:

a.	Я всё вре́мя бы́л в Нью-Йо́рке.	*yá FŞO VŖEɱa bíl v ɲyu-YORķi.*
b.	Я мно́го ра́з бы́л в Нью-Йо́рке.	*yá MNOga RAZ bíl v ɲyu-YORķi.*
c.	Я не́сколько ра́з бы́л в Нью-Йо́рке.	*yá ƝEskaļka RAZ bíl v ɲyu-YORķi.*

11. You see an interesting book and want to know whose it is. You ask:

a.	У кого́ та́ кни́га?	*u kaVO TA KƝIga?*
b.	Кни́га у кого́?	*KƝIga u kaVO?*
c.	Чья́ э́та кни́га?	*CHYA éta KƝIga?*

12. Your friend is carrying a heavy trunk, and you want to help him. You say:

a.	Я ва́м помога́ю.	*yá vám pamaGAyu.*
b.	Я ва́м бу́ду помога́ть.	*yá vám búdu pamaGAŢ.*
c.	Я ва́м помогу́.	*yá vám pamaGU.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Russian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Russian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Russian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again, if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

Unit 10, Record Side 3, after 4th spiral. (78 RPM)	**(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 10, after 2nd spiral.**
1. *Boris meets Ivan hurrying down the street.*	
Бори́с: Здра́вствуйте!	*ZDRAstvuyţi!*
Ка́к пожива́ете?	*kák pazhiVAyiţi?*
А ка́к ва́ш оте́ц и ма́ть?	*a KAK vásh aŢEC i MAŢ?*
Мне́ сказа́ли, что́ вы́ давно́ уже́ от ни́х не получа́ли пи́сем.	*mŋé skaZAļi shtó ví daVNO uzhé at ŋíx ŋi paluCHAļi P̧Işim.*
Ива́н: Да́, это меня́ о́чень беспоко́ит.	*DA, éta m̧iŋá Ochiŋ b̧ispaKOyit.*
Мо́й оте́ц уже́ не молодо́й челове́к,	*móy aŢEC uzhé ŋi malaDOY chilaV̧EK,*
а бра́т и сестра́ нездоро́вы.	*a BRAT i şiSTRA ŋi zdaROvi.*
Бори́с: Ах, ка́к жа́ль!	*AX, kák ZHAĻ!*
А куда́ вы́ идёте?	*a kuDA ví iḐOţi?*
Домо́й?	*daMOY?*
Unit 10, Record Side 4, beginning. (78 RPM)	
Ива́н: Не́т, я́ до́лжен спеши́ть на по́чту.	*ŊET; yá DOLzhin spiSHIŢ na POchtu.*
Бори́с: Но́ по́чта закрыва́ется то́лько в полови́не седьмо́го.	*nó POchta zakriVAyitsa tóļka f palaV̧Iŋi şiḑMOva.*

	У ва́с мно́го вре́мени.	*u VAS MNOga VŖEm̧iŋi.*
	Пойдёмте в рестора́н.	*payḐOMţi v ŗistaRAN.*
Ива́н:	Извини́те, я́ не могу́.	*izȝiŊIţi, yá ŋi maGU.*
	По́сле по́чты я́ пойду́ за мои́м перо́м.	*póşļi POchti yá payDU za maYIM p̧iROM.*
	Я его́ отда́л почини́ть.	*yá yivó adDAL pachiŊIŢ.*
Бори́с:	Я пойду́ туда́ с ва́ми.	*yá paydú tudá s VAm̧i.*
	А пото́м мы́ пойдём в рестора́н.	*a pa TOM mí payḐOM v ŗistaRAN.*
	Хорошо́?	*xaraSHO?*
Ива́н:	Хорошо́.	*xaraSHO.*

2. *Ivan and Boris arrive at the stationery store.*

Ива́н:	Здра́вствуйте.	*ZDRAstvuyţi.*
	Гото́во моё перо́?	*gaTOva mayó p̧iRO?*
Storekeeper:	Како́е оно́?	*kaKOya aNO?*
Ива́н:	Оно́ небольшо́е, кра́сное.	*aNO ŋi baļSHOya, KRAsnaya.*
	Во́т оно́ та́м.	*VOT anó TAM.*
	Мне́ та́кже на́до бума́гу.	*mŋé TAG zhi náda buMAgu.*
Storekeeper:	Каку́ю бума́гу?	*kaKUyu buMAgu?*
Ива́н:	Бума́гу для пи́сем.	*buMAgu ḑļa P̧Işim.*
Storekeeper:	Во́т о́чень хоро́шая бума́га.	*vót Ochiŋ xaROshiya buMAga.*
	Она́ сто́ит оди́н ру́бль со́рок се́мь копе́ек.	*aná STOyit aḐIN RUBĻ SOrak ŞEM̧ kaP̧Eyik.*
Ива́н:	Она́ сли́шком дорога́.	*aNA şļishkam daraGA.*
	Есть у ва́с деше́вле?	*YEŞŢ u vás ḑiSHEvļi?*

Storekeeper:	Да́.	*DA.*
	Эта бума́га то́же хороша́;	*éta buMAga TO zhi xaraSHA,*
	но́ она́ сто́ит то́лько оди́н ру́бль.	*nó aná STOyit tóļka aḐIN RUBĻ.*
	Посмотри́те.	*pasmaTŖIţi.*
Ива́н:	Не́т, мне́ нра́вится бо́лее дорога́я бума́га.	*ŊET, MŊE NRAv̧itsa BOļiyi daraGAya buMAga.*
Storekeeper:	Это о́чень хоро́шая бума́га.	*éta Ochiŋ xaROshiya buMAga.*
	Ва́ши друзья́ и прия́тельницы бу́дут ра́ды, когда́ вы́ и́м напи́шете.	*váshi druZYA i pŗiYAţiļŋici búdut RAdi, kagdá ví yím naP̧Ishiţi.*
Ива́н:	Мо́жет бы́ть.	*MOzhid BIŢ.*
	Я её возьму́.	*YA yiyó vaz̧MU.*
	А перо́ гото́во?	*a piRO gaTOva?*
	Ско́лько э́то сто́ит?	*SKOĻka éta STOyit?*
Storekeeper:	Оди́н ру́бль.	*aḐIN RUBĻ.*
Ива́н:	Во́т три́ рубля́.	*VOT TŖI ruBĻA.*
Storekeeper:	А во́т ва́ши пятьдеся́т три́ копе́йки.	*a VOT váshi pid ḑiŞAŢ TŖI kaP̧EYķi.*
	До свида́ния.	*da sv̧iDAŋya.*
Ива́н:	До свида́ния.	*da sv̧iDAŋya.*

3. Outside in the street, Boris and Ivan converse again.

Бори́с:	Если ва́м ну́жны ма́рки, у меня́ и́х дово́льно мно́го.	*yéşļi VAM núzhni MARķi, u m̧iŊA yíx daVOĻna MNOga.*
Ива́н:	Благодарю́ ва́с, но́ у меня́ е́сть всё, что́ мне́ на́до.	*blagadaŖU vás, nó u m̧iŋá yéşţ FŞO shtó m̧ŋé NAda.*

Бори́с:	Я о́чень хорошо́ зна́ю ва́шего бра́та Петра́.	*yá Ochiŋ xaraSHO ZNAyu váshiva BRAta piTRA.*
Ива́н:	Да́, о́н мне́ э́то сказа́л, когда́ я́ бы́л до́ма.	*DA, ON mŋé éta skaZAL kagdá yá bíl DOma.*
Бори́с:	Ка́к о́н пожива́ет тепе́рь?	*KAK ón pazhiVAyit ţiPEŖ?*
Ива́н:	Я не зна́ю.	*yá ŋi ZNAyu.*
	Он уе́хал в го́ры, в о́тпуск.	*ón uYExal v GOri, v OTpusk.*
	Моя́ сестра́ мне́ писа́ла, что́ о́н ещё нездоро́в.	*mayá şiSTRA mŋé piSAla shtó ón yishchó ŋi zdaROF.*
Бори́с:	Жа́лко.	*ZHALka.*
	Я до́лжен ему́ написа́ть.	*yá DOLzhin yimú napiSAŢ.*
Ива́н:	Да́, о́н бы́л бы о́чень ра́д.	*DA, ón bíl bi Ochiŋ RAD.*
Бори́с:	Да́йте мне́ не́сколько листо́в бума́ги.	*DAYţi mŋé NEskaļka ļiSTOF buMAgi.*
Ива́н:	Во́т, бери́те.	*VOT, b̦iŖIţi.*
Бори́с:	Спаси́бо.	*spaŞIba.*
	Я ему́ напишу́ по́сле обе́да.	*yá yimú napiSHU póşļi ab̦Eda.*
Ива́н:	Хорошо́.	*xaraSHO.*
	Сейча́с уже́ ше́сть.	*şi CHAS uzhé SHEŞŢ.*
	Мне́ на́до спеши́ть.	*mŋé NAda spiSHIŢ.*
	До свида́ния.	*da şţiDAŋya.*
Бори́с:	До свида́ния.	*da şţiDAŋya.*

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Russian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Russian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Russian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Russian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units begin to converse by following the models outlined below fairly closely; then change the situations some what. Invent new combinations of subject matter.

1. You ask someone to give you a pen and paper so that you can write to your girl friend. He asks how she is, and you tell him you are worried. You heard she was studying Russian with a fellow from Stalingrad, and you think you ought to write her. He asks when she met the fellow. You reply that during the summer they worked together in San Francisco. Your friend says he'll be glad to help you, and offers ink and stamps. You thank him.
2. You ask the landlady if dinner is ready. She says it will be ready at six o'clock. You ask her if you have time to go to the post office. She says yes, if you hurry and asks if you will bring back some stamps for her. You say you'll be only too glad to. She says she heard her sister was ill, and wants to write her sister's husband. You say you are sorry, and leave before she can tell you more family news.
3. You go shopping for clothes, picking out socks, shirts, and handkerchiefs, commenting on the expensiveness, the size, the colors. Then you stop to buy pen and ink for a letter.
4. A friend comes to you and asks you to give him a few sheets of paper. He says he will return it as soon as possible. You tell him that he will find ink and paper on the table in your brother's room. He says he doesn't know your brother. You tell him you are sure he won't mind. He thanks you and says he also needs a pen. You give him one and he thanks you again.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversation started in Section E, with a review of previous lessons, if necessary.

FINDER LIST

беспоко́ить [*þispaKOyiţ*] D. to worry
благодари́ть [*blagadaŖIŢ*] D. to thank
бра́ть [*BRAŢ*] D. to take
выпива́ть [*vipiVAŢ*] D. to drink
го́д [*GOT*] year
гото́вый [*gaTOvay*] ready

да́ть [*DAŢ*] P. to give
до́лжный [*DOLzhnay*] owing; **я́ до́лжен итти́** [*yá DOLzhin iŢI*] I must be going
до́ма [*DOma*] at home
домо́й [*daMOY*] home
ду́мать [*DUmaţ*] D. to think

ещё [*yiSHCHO*] still, yet, more

жа́ль [*ZHAĻ*] it's too bad
жда́ть [*ZHDAŢ*] D. to wait

закрыва́ть [*zakriVAŢ*] D. to close
закры́ть [*zaKRIŢ*] P. to close

кни́га [*KŊIga*] book
конве́рт [*kanƲERT*] envelope

ли́ст [*ĻIST*] sheet (of paper)

ма́рка [*MARka*] postage stamp

написа́ть [*napiSAŢ*] P. to write
небольшо́й [*ŋi baļSHOY*] not big, moderate-sized
не́сколько [*NEskaļka*] a few, several
ну́жный [*NUzhnay*] needed, necessary; **мне́ ну́жны э́ти кни́ги** [*mŋé NUzhni éţi KŊIgi*] I need these books

остально́й [*astaļNOY*] remaining
отда́ть [*adDAŢ*] P. to give back, to hand over

Пётр [*ƤOTR*] Peter
повторя́ть [*paftaŖAŢ*] D. to repeat
по́д [*POT, POD*] under
подпи́сывать [*patƤIsavaţ*] D. to sign
поза́втракать [*paZAftrakaţ*] P. to have (some) lunch
получа́ть [*paluCHAŢ*] D. to receive
получи́ть [*paluCHIţ*] P. to receive
помога́ть [*pamaGAŢ*] D. to help
помо́чь [*paMOCH*] P. to help
понра́виться [*paNRAʋitsa*] P. to be pleasing
пообе́дать [*paaƁEdaţ*] P. to eat dinner
притти́ [*pŗiŢI*] P. to come

ра́д [*RAT, RAD*] he is glad

сде́лать [*ZḐElaţ*] P. to do, to make
си́ний [*ŞIŋiy*] blue
слы́шать [*SLIshiţ*] D. to hear

то́т [*TOT*] that

уви́деть [*uƲIḑiţ*] P. to see, to get sight of
уе́хать [*uYExat*] P. to go away (not on foot)
услы́шать [*uSLIshiţ*] P. to hear, to catch the sound

че́й [*CHEY*] whose
черни́ла [*chirŊIla*] ink (plural only)

UNIT 11

EATING AND DRINKING

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Go once through the *Basic Sentences* in unison, concentrating on the *Aids to Listening*, as you have done before. Then go through *Check Your Pronunciation*. Go once through the *Basic Sentences* individually trying to follow the *Conventional Spelling* as much as possible. The last time through individually, you should be able to follow the *Conventional Spelling* without any trouble.

1. Basic Sentences

Unit 11, Record Side 1, beginning. (78 RPM) **(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 11, beginning.**

Peter Smith and Boris are walking around the city.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	*CONVENTIONAL SPELLING*	*AIDS TO LISTENING*
	Пётр	
Are there many good restaurants in your town?*	Мно́го ли хоро́ших рестора́нов в ва́шем го́роде?	*MNOga ļi xaROshix ŗistaRAnaf v VAshim GOraḑi?*
	Бори́с	
almost	почти́	*paCHŢI*
every	ка́ждый	*KAzhday*
Yes, there's a restaurant on almost every street, and a lot of good ones.	Да́, рестора́н почти́ на ка́ждой у́лице, и мно́го хоро́ших.	*DA, ŗistaRAN pachţi na KAzhday Uļici, i MNOga xaROshix*

---

*The word "home" on the record is an error.

	Пётр	
which (N.P.)	каки́е	*kaĶIya*
(they) serve	подаю́т	*p̧adaYUT*
dishes *or* foods	блю́да	*BĻUda*
What kind of foods do they serve in them?	Каки́е та́м подаю́т блю́да?	*kaĶIya TAM p̧adaYUT BĻUda?*
	Бори́с	
one's own*	сво́й	*SVOY*
Each restaurant has its own foods.**	В ка́ждом рестора́не е́сть свои́ блю́да.	*f KAzhdam ŗistaRAŋi YEŞŢ svayi BĻUda.*
(I) will tell	расскажу́	*raskaZHU*
I will tell you.	Я ва́м расскажу́.	*yá vám raskaZHU.*
Here's an American restaurant in this street.	Во́т на э́той у́лице америка́нский рестора́н.	*VOT na Etay Uļici aɱiŗiKANsķiy ŗistaRAN.*
in it	в нём	*v ŊOM*
They only have American food there.	В нём, то́лько америка́нские блю́да.	*v ŊOM, TOĻka aɱiŗiKANsķiya BĻUda.*
	Пётр	
true	ве́рно	*ƳERna*
Really?	Это ве́рно?	*éta ƳERna?*
What will I get (find) there?	А что́ я́ та́м найду́?	*a SHTO yá tám nayDU?*

---

*Not on the record.

**The word "served" on the record is an error.

	Бори́с	
for example	наприме́р	*na pŗiM̦ER*
(fried) eggs	яи́чница	*yiYIshņica*
(with) ham	с ветчино́й	*s v̦ichiNOY*
made of apples	я́блочный	*YAblachnay*
pie	пиро́г	*piROK*
For example, ham and eggs and apple pie.	Наприме́р, яи́чница с ветчино́й и я́блочный пиро́г.	*na pŗiM̦ER, yiYIshņica s v̦ichiNOY i YAblachnay piROK.*
fish	ры́ба	*RIba*
They serve meat and fish there too, of course.	Та́м коне́чно подаю́т та́кже ры́бу и мя́со.	*TAM kaN̦Eshna padaYUT TAG zhi RIbu i M̦Asa.*
usually	обыкнове́нно	*abiknaV̦ENna*
beet soup	бо́рщ	*BORSHCH*
In Russia they usually give [you] borshch.	В Росси́и обыкнове́нно даю́т бо́рщ.	*v raȘIyi abiknaV̦ENna daYUT BORSHCH.*
	Пётр	
Do you like borshch?	[illegible] а́вится бо́рщ?	*vám NRAv̦itsa BORSHCH?*

Unit 11, Record Side 2, beginning. [illegible] v.)

	Бори́с	
Yes, very much.	Да, о́чень.	*DA, Ochiņ.*
is cooked*	ва́рится	*VAŗitsa*
(with) vegetables (I.P.)	о́вощами	*Ovashchim̦i*
It's made with meat and vegetables.	Он ва́рится с мя́сом и о́вощами.	*ón VAŗitsa s M̦Asam i Ovashchim̦i.*

---

*The English on the record is an error.

(I) like *or* love	люблю́	*ļuBĻU*
meat balls	котле́ты	*kaTĻEti*
I'm very fond of borshch and meat balls.	Я о́чень люблю́ бо́рщ и котле́ты.	*yí Ochiŋ ļuBĻU BORSHCH i kaTĻEti.*
sometime	когда́-нибудь	*kaGDA ŋi buţ*
try (command)	попро́буйте	*paPRObuyţi*
catch [your] liking	понра́виться	*paNRAv̡itsa*
Some time try Russian meat balls.	Когда́-нибудь попро́буйте ру́сские котле́ты.	*kaGDA ŋi buţ paPRObuyţi rúsķiya kaTĻEti.*
You'll like them a lot.	Они́ ва́м о́чень понра́вятся.	*aŋí vám Ochiŋ paNRAv̡itsa.*
	Пётр	
Good, let's try them.	Хорошо́, дава́й попро́буем.	*xaraSHO, daváy paPRObuyim.*
bring (command)	принеси́те	*pŗiŋiŞIţi*
glass (G.)	стака́на	*staKAna*
Bring us two glasses of tea, please.	Принеси́те на́м, пожа́луйста, два́ стака́на ча́ю.	*pŗiŋiŞIţi nám, paZHALsta, DVA stakána CHAyu.*
	Бори́с	
vodka (G.)	во́дки	*VOtķi*
I don't want any tea.	Я не хочу́ ча́ю.	*yá ŋi xaCHU CHAyu.*
I want (some) vodka.	Я хочу́ во́дки.	*YA xachú VOtķi.*
	Пётр	
Do the Russians drink much vodka?	Мно́го ли во́дки пью́т ру́сские?	*MNOga ļi VOtķi pyút RUsķiya?*

	Борис	
(they) get drunk	напиваются	*napiVAyutsa*
Yes, but they don't get drunk.	Дá, нó онú не напивáются.	*DA, nó aŋí ŋi napiVAyutsa.*
	Пётр	
What, never?	Кáк? Никогдá?	*KAK? ŋi kaGDA?*
	Борúс	
Oh, sometimes.	О, иногдá.	*O, inaGDA.*
drunks (G.P.)	пьяных	*P̧YAnix*
(they) respect	уважáют	*uvaZHAyut*
But they haven't much respect for drunkards in Russia.	Нó пьяных в Россúи не óчень уважáют.	*nó P̧YAnix v raŞIyi ŋi Ochiŋ uvaZHAyut.*
however (just the same)	всё-таки	*FŞO taķi*
proverb	послóвица	*paSLOçica*
Nevertheless, there's a Russian saying:	Нó всё-таки éсть рýсская послóвица:	*nó FŞO taķi YEŞŢ RUskaya paSLOçica:*
(he) will wake up	проснётся	*praŞŊOTsa*
fool	дурак	*duRAK*
The drunkard will wake up; the fool, never.	Пьяный проснётся; нó дурáк никогдá.	*P̧YAnay praŞŊOTsa; nó duRAK, ŋi kaGDA.*

Unit 11. Record Side 3, beginning. (78 RPM)

	Пётр	
I like that one.	Онá мнé нрáвится.	*aNA mŋé NRAçitsa.*

	Бори́с	
(he is) rich	бога́т	*baGAT*
(The) Russian language is full of proverbs.	Ру́сский язы́к бога́т посло́вицами.	*rúsķiy yiZIK baGAT paSLOv̧iciɱi.*
hospitality	гостеприи́мство	*gaşţipŗiYIMstva*
In every Russian home you'll find vodka, proverbs, and hospitality.	В ка́ждом ру́сском до́ме вы́ найдёте во́дку, посло́вицы и гостеприи́мство.	*f KAzhdam RUskam DOɱi ví nayḑóţi VOtku, paSLOv̧ici, i gaşţipŗiYIMstva.*
	Пётр	
(I) remember	по́мню	*POmņu*
I never remember proverbs.	Я никогда́ не по́мню посло́виц.	*yá ņi kaGDA ņi POmņu paSLOv̧ic.*
We have a few proverbs in America, but I don't remember them.	У на́с в Аме́рике е́сть не́сколько посло́виц, но́ я́ и́х не по́мню.	*u NAS v aM̧Eŗiķi YEŞŢ ŅEskaļka paSLOv̧ic, nó YA yíx ņi POmņu.*
	Бори́с	
That's too bad.	Жа́лко.	*ZHALka.*
I'd like ('I very much want') to hear them.	Я о́чень хочу́ и́х услы́шать.	*yá Ochiņ xaCHU yíx uSLIshiţ.*

Before you go through the *Basic Sentences* a second time, study the following:

2. Check Your Pronunciation

Observe carefully and imitate the stress and the pitch or melody of the following Russian questions. Notice that the pitch at the end does not go up high, as it does in similar English questions. Notice also that an unstressed vowel in the syllable immediately before a stressed vowel is fairly clear and strong.

PRACTICE 1

Unit 11, Record Side 3, after 1st spiral. (78 RPM) **(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 11, after 1st spiral.**

Каки́е та́м подаю́т блю́да?	*kaĶIya TAM padaYUT BĻUda?*	What sort of food do they serve there?
Кто́ э́тот молодо́й челове́к?	*KTO état malaDOY chilaỴEK?*	Who is that young fellow?
Что́ вы́ хоти́те?	*SHTO ví xaŢIţi?*	What do you want?
Где́ о́н рабо́тает?	*GḐE ón raBOtayit?*	Where does he work?

In the following sentences, notice that questions which contain the little question word [*ĻI*] have pretty much the melody of statements, but questions without any question word sound rather like similar English questions.

PRACTICE 2

Unit 11, Record Side 3, after 2nd spiral. (78 RPM)

Не хоти́те ли хле́ба?	*ņi xaŢIţi ļi XĻEba?*	Don't you want some bread?
Вы́ хоти́те хле́ба?	*ví xaŢIţi XĻEba?*	Do you want some bread?
Пое́хал ли Пётр в Москву́?	*paYExal ļi P̧OTR v maSKVU?*	Has Peter gone to Moscow (or not)?
Пётр пое́хал в Москву́?	*P̧OTR paYExal v maSKVU?*	Peter has gone to Moscow?
Я не зна́ю, говоря́т ли де́ти по-ру́сски.	*yá ņi ZNAyu, gavaŖAT ļi ḐEţi pa RUsķi.*	I don't know whether the children speak Russian.
Понима́ете ли вы́, когда́ я́ говорю́ ме́дленно?	*paņiMAyiţi ļi VI, kagdá YA gavaŗú M̧Edļina?*	Do you understand when I speak slowly?

We now give a couple of Russian exclamations. Listen carefully to the Guide or to the speaker on the record, and try to imitate exactly the tune or melody of the Russian.

PRACTICE 3

Unit 11, Record Side 3, after 3rd spiral. (78 RPM)

Ка́к хорошо́ ма́льчик говори́т!	*kák xaraSHO MAĻchik gavaŖIT!*	How well the little boy talks!
Что́ за пого́да!	*SHTO za paGOda!*	What weather!

We now give first some simple statements and then some longer and more complex ones. Listen carefully and try to imitate the intonation of the Russian. Remember that our way of intoning a sentence seems natural to us, but it is likely to seem very queer if we transfer it to a foreign language. Try to stress and intone your Russian in the Russian way.

PRACTICE 4

Unit 11, Record Side 3, after 4th spiral. (78 RPM)

Я пойду́ с ва́ми.	*yá payDU s VAɱi.*	I'll go with you.
Хорошо́.	*xaraSHO.*	All right.
Он зна́ет, что́ мы́ зде́сь.	*ón ZNAyit shtó mí Z̧ḐEŞ.*	He knows we are here.
Она́ мне́ сказа́ла, когда́ вы́ бу́дете до́ма.	*aNA mŋé skaZAla kaGDA ví BUḑiţi DOma.*	She told me when you would be at home.
Если пра́чка не придёт, я́ оста́нусь без белья́.	*yéşļi PRACHka ŋi priḐOT, yá aSTAnus b̧iz b̧iĻYA.*	If the laundress doesn't come, I'll be left without clothes.
Я её возьму́, е́сли э́та ко́мната тёплая.	*yá yiyó vaz̧MU, yéşļi éta KOmnata ŢOplaya.*	I'll take it, if this room is warm.
У меня́ е́сть кра́сная кни́га.	*u ɱiŊA YEŞŢ KRAsnaya KŊIga.*	I have a red book.
У ва́с кра́сная кни́га, но́ э́та кни́га моя́.	*u VAS KRAsnaya KŊIga; nó Eta KŊIga, maYA.*	You have a red book, but this book is mine.
Во́т ва́ш бра́т. — Мо́й бра́т? Не́т, э́то мо́й му́ж.	*VOT vázh BRAT.—móy BRAT? ŊET, Eta móy MUSH.*	Here's your brother.—My brother? No, this is my husband.
Во́т ва́ш му́ж. — Мо́й му́ж? Не́т, э́то, му́ж мое́й сестры́.	*VOT vásh MUSH.—MOY mush? ŊET, éta MUSH mayéy şiSTRI.*	Here's your husband.—My husband? No, that's my sister's husband.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY AND REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

A. COMMENT ON THE BASIC SENTENCES

1. The question word [*ĻI*].

Do you want a cigarette?	Хотите папиросу?	*xaŢIţi papiROsu?*
	Вы́ хотите папиросу?	*ví xaŢIţi papiROsu?*
	Вы́ папиросу хотите?	*ví papiROsu xaŢIţi?*
	Хотите ли вы́ папиросу?	*xaŢIţi ļi ví papiROsu?*

If a question calls for the answer *yes* or *no* and contains a verb, they sometimes speak the verb at the beginning. If the verb comes at the beginning, they occasionally (but not very often) add to it the little unstressed question word [*ĻI*].

Are there many good restaurants here?	Здéсь мнóго хорóших ресторáнов?	*ȥḑéş MNOga xaROshix ŗistaRAnaf?*
	Мнóго здéсь хорóших ресторáнов?	*MNOga ȥḑéş xaROshix ŗistaRAnaf?*
	Мнóго ли здéсь хорóших ресторáнов?	*MNOga ļi ȥḑéş xaROshix ŗistaRAnaf?*

If a question calls for the answer *yes* or *no* and does not contain a verb, they often put the most important word first, and then fairly often they add to it the question word [*ĻI*].

I don't know if he's gone to Moscow.	Я не знáю, поéхал ли óн в Москвý.	*yá ŋi ZNAyu, paYExal ļi ón v maSKVU.*
Do you know whether there are many restaurants there?	Вы́ знáете, мнóго ли тáм ресторáнов?	*ví ZNAyiţi, MNOga ļi tám ŗistaRAnaf?*

If a question calls for the answer *yes* or *no*, and is part of a longer sentence, the question has the form with [*ĻI*]. In English we then use *whether* or *if*.

2. The adjective [*SVOY*].

She took her ticket and went away.	Она́ взяла́ сво́й биле́т и ушла́.	*aná vz̦iLA svóy b̦iĻET i uSHLA.*
He took my book and gave me his.	Он взя́л мою́ кни́гу и да́л мне́ свою́.	*ón VZ̦AL maYU KŅIgu i DAL mņé svaYU.*
They gave us their (own) tickets.	Они́ на́м да́ли свои́ биле́ты.	*aņí nám DAļi svayí b̦iĻEti.*
The Petrovs are staying home, and the Ivanovs have brought us their (the Petrovs') tickets.	Петро́вы остаю́тся до́ма, и Ивано́вы на́м принесли́ и́х биле́ты.	*p̦iTROvi astaYUtsa DOma, i ivaNOvi nám p̦r̦iņiŞĻI yíx b̦iĻEti.*
The Petrovs have sent us their tickets	Петро́вы на́м присла́ли свои́ биле́ты.	*p̦iTROvi nám p̦r̦iSLAļi svayí b̦iĻEti.*

The adjective [*SVOY*] has forms like these of [*MOY*]. It is used for *his, her, its, their* when the possessor of something is *the same person* (or persons) as the actor of the sentence. When the possessor is not the same person as the actor, the Genitive case forms are used: [*yiVO*] 'his, its', [*yiYO*] 'her', [*YIX*] 'their'. Thus, an English sentence like *He took his book* means two different things from the Russian point of view:

He took his book (his own book).	Он взя́л свою́ кни́гу.	*ón VZ̦AL svayú KŅIgu.*
He took his book (the other fellow's).	Он взя́л его́ кни́гу.	*ón VZ̦AL yivó KŅIgu.*

Very often [*SVOY*] is used also for '*my, your, their*' in sentences where the possessor of something is the same person as the actor of the sentence:

We are very well satisfied with our apartment.	Мы́ о́чень дово́льны на́шей кварти́рой.	*mɨ́ óchiņ daVOĻni náshiy kvarŢIray.*
	Мы́ о́чень дово́льны свое́й кварти́рой.	*mɨ́ óchiņ daVOĻni svayéy kvarŢIray.*
Did you see your brother?	Вы́ ви́дели ва́шего бра́та?	*vɨ́ YIḑiļi váshiva BRAta?*
	Вы́ ви́дели своего́ бра́та?	*vɨ́ YIḑiļi svayivó BRAta?*
I'm looking for my book.	Я ищу́ мою́ кни́гу.	*yá iSHCHU mayú KŅIgu.*
	Я ищу́ свою́ кни́гу.	*yá iSHCHU svayú KŅIgu.*

3. Eggs.

Give me an egg.	Да́йте мне́ яйцо́.	*DAYţi mŋé yiCO.*
Give me two eggs.	Да́йте мне́ два́ яйца́.	*DAYţi mŋé DVA yiCA.*
Do you like eggs?	Вы́ лю́бите я́йца?	*v̧ɨ ĻUb̧iţi YAYca?*
You don't eat eggs?	Вы́ не ку́шаете яи́ц?	*ví ŋi KUshiyiţi yiYIC?*
Give them some ham with eggs.	Да́йте и́м ветчину́ с я́йцами.	*DAYţi yím v̧ichiNU s YAYcim̧i.*

The word [*yiYIchŋica*] means an egg dish: fried eggs, scrambled eggs, or an omelet. It is formed from [*yiCO*] 'egg', P. [*YAYca*], with irregular G.P. [*yiYIC*].

4. Apples.

Give him one apple.	Да́йте ему́ одно́ я́блоко.	*DAYţi yimú aDNO YAblaka.*
He didn't give him the apple.	Он ему́ не́ дал я́блока.	*ón yimú ŅE dal YAblaka.*
How much are the apples?	Ско́лько сто́ят я́блоки?	*SKOĻka stóyit YAblaķi?*
There aren't any apples today.	Сего́дня не́т я́блоков.	*şiVO ḑŋa ŅET YAblakaf.*
	Сего́дня не́т я́блок.	*şiVO ḑŋa ŅET YAblak.*

The adjective which we saw in the expression [*YAblachnay piROK*] 'pie made of apples' is derived from the Neuter noun [*YAblaka*] 'apple'. Most Neuter nouns whose stem ends in [*k*] take the ending [*-i*] in the Nominative (and Accusative) Plural: [*YAblaķi*]. The Genitive Plural form of [*YAblaka*] is often made with the ending [*-of*], like a Masculine.

5. More words for drinking.

He took tea and went out.	Он ча́ю напи́лся и ушёл.	*ón CHAyu naP̧ILsa i uSHOL.*
At half past seven we take tea (have breakfast), and then we go out.	В полови́не восьмо́го мы́ пьём ча́й, и зате́м ухо́дим.	*f palaV̧Iŋi vaşMOva mí P̧YOM CHAY, i za ŢEM uXOḑim.*

The compound Punctual verb [*naP̧ITsa*] 'to drink one's fill' is always reflexive. That which one drinks is in the Genitive case. The compound Durative is [*nap̧iVATsa*].

He got drunk.	Он напи́лся пья́ным.	*ón naP̧ILsa P̧YAnam.*
At times he used to get drunk.	Временáми óн напивáлся пья́ным.	*vriṃiNAṃi ón nap̧iVALsa P̧YAnam.*

These verbs are used also of getting drunk, especially with the Instrumental case forms of the adjective [*P̧YAnay*] 'drunk'.

B. NEW NOUNS

Masculine:

	N.S.	G.S.	N.P.	G.P.
beet soup	*BORSHCH*	*barSHCHA*	——	——
fool	*duRAK*	*duraKA*	*duraĶI*	*duraKOF*
Theodore	*F̧Odar*	*F̧Odara*	——	——
store	*magaZ̧IN*	*magaZ̧Ina*	*magaZ̧Ini*	*MagaZ̧Inaf*
pie	*p̧iROK*	*p̧iraGA*	*p̧iraĢI*	*p̧iraGOF*
example	*p̧riM̧ER*	*p̧riM̧Era*	*p̧riM̧Eri*	*p̧riM̧Eraf*
lesson	*uROK*	*uROka*	*uROķi*	*uROkaf*

Neuter:

dish	*BĻUda*	*BĻUda*	*BĻUda*	*BĻUT*
hospitality	*gaşţip̧riYIMstva*	*gaşţip̧riYIMstva*	——	——
apple	*YAblaka*	*YAblaka*	*YAblaķi*	*YAblak, YAblakaf*

Feminine:

	N.S.	A.S.	G.S.	N.P.	G.P.
meat ball	*kaTĻEta*	*kaTĻEtu*	*kaTĻEti*	*kaTĻEti*	*kaTĻET*
Olga	*OĻga*	*OĻgu*	*OĻgi*	——	——
vegetables	——	——	——	*Ovashchi*	*Ovashchiy*

proverb	*paSLOɣica*	*paSLOɣicu*	*paSLOɣici*	*paSLOɣici*	*paSLOɣic*
fish	*RIba*	*RIbu*	*RIbi*	*RIbi*	*RIP*
bathtub, bath	*VANna*	*VANnu*	*VANni*	*VANni*	*VAN*
ham	*ɣichiNA*	*ɣichiNU*	*ɣichiNI*	——	——
vodka	*VOTka*	*VOtku*	*VOTḳi*	——	——
egg dish	*yiYIchŋica*	*yiYIchŋicu*	*yiYIchŋici*	*yiYIchŋici*	*yiYIchŋic*

C. NEW VERBS

Present of Type 1:

	Infinitive	I	he, she, it	Past
to give (D.)	*daVAŢ*	*daYU*	*daYOT*	*daVAL*
to try (D.)	*PRObavaţ*	*PRObuyu*	*PRObuyit*	*PRObaval*
to wake up (P.)	*praSNUTsa*	*praSNUS*	*praSŊOTsa*	*praSNULsa*

Compounding Duratives, of Type 1 Regular:

naþiVATsa 'to drink one's fill' goes with *naƤITsa* P.
prasiPATsa 'to wake up' goes with *praSNUTsa* P.
uvaZHAŢ 'to respect' goes with (rare) *uVAzhiţ* P.

Present of Type 2:

Type 2 Regular: *POmŋiţ* 'to remember'.
Same, but with shifting accent: *ļuƁIŢ* 'to love', *vaŖIŢ* 'to boil, to cook'.

D. DURATIVE AND PUNCTUAL VERBS

[*DAŢ*, *daVAŢ*].

He will give you a ticket.	Он ва́м да́ст биле́т.	*ón vám DAST þiĻET.*
She gave the waiter a tip ('for tea').	Она́ дала́ официа́нту на ча́й.	*aná daLA aƒiCYANtu na CHAY.*

The verb [*DAŢ*] 'to give' is Punctual, although it is not compounded with a prefix.

She often gives the boys apples.	Она́ ча́сто даёт я́блоки ма́льчикам.	*aná CHAsta daYOT YAblaḳi MAĻchikam.*

She used to give us apples.	Она́ на́м дава́ла я́блоки.	*aná nám daVAla YAblaķi.*
Don't give the children any coffee.	Не дава́йте де́тям ко́фе.	*ŋi daVAYţi ḐEţim KOfi.*

The verb [*daVAŢ*] 'to give' is the Durative corresponding to [*DAŢ*]. The Present of [*daVAŢ*] is [*daYU, daYOT*]. The Imperative is [*daVAYţi*].

They are going to sell their house.	Они́ продаду́т сво́й до́м.	*aŋí pradaDUT svóy DOM.*
They have sold their house.	Они́ про́дали сво́й до́м.	*aŋí PROdaļi svóy DOM.*
She has sold her house.	Она́ продала́ сво́й до́м.	*aná pradaLA svóy DOM.*
There is the cash window where they sell tickets.	Во́т ка́сса, где́ продаю́т биле́ты.	*VOT KASsa gḑé pradaYUT b̧iĻEti.*
He used to sell apples on the street, but now he has become a rich man.	Он продава́л я́блоки на у́лице, а тепе́рь о́н ста́л бога́тым челове́ком.	*ón pradaVAL YAblaķi na Uļici, a ţiPEŖ ón STAL baGAtam chilaV̧Ekam.*

The compounds of [*DAŢ*] are Punctual. In the Past form they accent the prefix, except in the Feminine. The verb [*daVAŢ*] serves as the Compounding Durative of [*DAŢ*]. It is one of the half dozen Compounding Duratives whose forms are not Type 1 Regular.

[*kuPIŢ, pakuPAŢ*]

I am going to buy a house.	Я куплю́ до́м.	***yá kuPĻU DOM.***
Will you buy tickets for us?	Вы́ ку́пите биле́ты для на́с?	*ví KUp̧iţi b̧iĻEti ḑļa nás?*
I've bought two Russian books.	Я купи́л две́ ру́сские кни́ги.	*yá kuPIL DV̧E RUsķiya KŊIgi.*
Buy this!	Купи́те э́то!	***kuPIţi éta!***

The simple verb [*kuPIŢ*] 'to buy' is punctual. The Present is [*kuPĻU, KUp̧it*], with shifting accent.

He buys lots of books.	Он покупа́ет мно́го кни́г.	*ón pakuPAyit MNOga KŊIK.*
She used to buy meat or fish for us every day.	Она́ ка́ждый де́нь покупа́ла для на́с мя́со и́ли ры́бу.	*aná KAzhday ḐEŊ pakuPAla ḑļa nás M̧Asa íļi RÍbu.*
Don't buy that.	Не покупа́йте э́того.	*ŋi pakuPAYţi étava.*

The Durative verb corresponding to [*kuPIŢ*] is the Compound Durative [*pakuPAŢ*].

[*FSTŖEţiţ, fstŗiCHAŢ*].

I'll meet you at the station.	Я ва́с встре́чу на вокза́ле.	*yá vás FSTŖEchu na vagZAļi.*

The simple verb [*FSTŖEţiţ*] 'to meet' is Punctual.

I often meet her on the street.	Я ча́сто встреча́ю её на у́лице.	*yá CHAsta fstŗiCHAyu yiyó na Uļici.*
She and I often meet at our friends'.	Мы́ с не́й ча́сто встреча́емся у на́ших друзе́й.	*mí s ŋéy CHAsta fstŗiCHAyimsa u náshix druẒEY.*

The Durative verb corresponding to [*FSTŖEţiţ*] is [*fstŗiCHAŢ*], Type 1 Regular.

[*BRAŢ, VẒAŢ*].

I'm taking lessons in Russian.	Я беру́ уро́ки ру́сского языка́.	*yá b̧irú uROķi RUskava yiziKA.*
He takes a warm bath every day.	Он ка́ждый де́нь берёт тёплую ва́нну.	*ón KAzhday ḐEŊ b̧iŖOT ŢOpluyu VANnu.*
In that store they charge very high prices.	В э́том магази́не беру́т о́чень до́рого.	*v Etam magaẒIŋe b̧iRUT Ochiŋ DOraga.*
We shall take Russian lessons every day.	Мы́ бу́дем бра́ть уро́ки ру́сского языка́ ка́ждый де́нь.	*mí búḑim bráţ uROķi RUskava yiZiKA KAzhday ḐEŊ.*
I want to take lessons from somebody.	Я хочу́ у кого́-нибудь бра́ть уро́ки.	*yá xaCHU u kaVO ŋi buţ BRAŢ uROķi.*
From whom did you take lessons?	Вы́ у кого́ бра́ли уро́ки?	*ví u kaVO bráļi uROķi?*
She always took my books.	Она́ всегда́ брала́ мои́ кни́ги.	*aná fşiGDA braLA mayí KŊIgi.*
Don't take that!	Не бери́те э́того!	*ŋi b̧iŖIţi Etava!*
Take what you want, please do!	Бери́те, что́ хоти́те, пожа́луйста!	*b̧iŖIţi shtó xaŢIţi, paZHALsta!*
I'll take a little more of this dish.	Я возьму́ ещё немно́жко э́того блю́да.	*yá vaẓMU yiSHCHO ŋimnóshka étava BĻUda.*
They'll charge a lot.	Они́ до́рого возьму́т.	*aŋí DOraga vaẓMUT.*

She took the receipt and went away.	Она́ взяла́ распи́ску и ушла́.	*aná vz̧iLA raSP̧Isku i uSHLA.*
How much did they charge (you)?	Ско́лько взя́ли?	*SKOĻka VZ̧Aļi?*
You've taken very little.	Вы́ очень ма́ло взя́ли.	*ví Ochiŋ MAla VZ̧Aļi.*
You must take a receipt.	На́до взя́ть распи́ску.	*NAda VZ̧AŢ raSP̧Isku.*
Take your five roubles and go!	Возьми́те ва́ши пя́ть рублей и уйди́те!	*vaz̧M̧Iţi váshi P̧AŢ ruBĻEY i uyḐIţi!*

The simple Durative verb [*BRAŢ*] 'to take' is matched by the Punctual compound [*VZ̧AŢ*], which consists of prefix [*vz-, voz-*] and a different verb. This verb has irregular forms. It occurs only with prefixes.

I shan't understand anything.	Я ничего́ не пойму́.	*yá ŋi chiVO ŋi payMU.*
If you talk that way, they won't understand you.	Если вы́ та́к говори́ть бу́дете, ва́с не пойму́т.	*yéşļi ví TAK gavaŖIŢ búḑiţi, vás ŋi payMUT.*
Did you understand me?	Вы́ меня́ по́няли?	*ví ɱiŋá POŋiļi?*
I misunderstood you.	Я ва́с не та́к по́нял.	*yá vás ŋi TAK POŋil.*
She misunderstood us.	Она́ на́с не та́к поняла́.	*aná nás ŋi TAK paŋiLA.*
I don't understand a (single) word.	Я ни сло́ва не понима́ю.	*yá ŋi SLOva ŋi paŋiMAyu.*
Do you understand English?	Вы понима́ете по-английски?	*ví paŋiMAyiţi pa anGĻIYsķi?*

The Punctual compounds, such as [*paŊAŢ*] 'to understand', are matched by Compound Duratives, such as [*paŋiMAŢ*], made with a Compounding Durative [*-ŋimáţ*].

[*gavaŖIŢ, skaŽAŢ*]

I often talk with them.	Я ча́сто с ни́ми говорю́.	*yá CHAsta s ŋiɱi gavaŖU.*
What language will they be speaking there?	На како́м языке́ та́м бу́дут говори́ть?	*na kaKOM yiziĶE tám búdut gavaŖIŢ?*
I'll have a talk with them.	Я с ни́ми поговорю́.	*yá s ŋiɱi pagavaŖU.*
You'll have to have a talk with her.	Ва́м на́до бу́дет поговори́ть с не́й.	*vám NAda búḑit pagavaŖIŢ s ŋéy.*

The verb [*gavaŖIŢ*] when it means 'speak, talk' is matched by the Punctual compound [*pagavaŖIŢ*].

They say she's married to an American.	Говоря́т, что́ она́ за́мужем за америка́нцем.	gavaŖAT shtó aná ZA muzhim za am̧iŗiKANcim.
I've many times already told you that.	Я мно́го ра́з уже́ говори́л ва́м э́то.	yá MNOga RAS uzhé gavaŖIL vám ĕta.
Don't tell him.	Не говори́те ему́.	ņi gavaŖIţi yimú.
Don't say anything.	Не говори́те ничего́.	ņi gavaŖIţi ņi chiVO.
I'll tell you later.	Я ва́м скажу́ пото́м.	yá vám skaZHU pa TOM.
Why won't you tell me?	Почему́ вы́ мне́ не ска́жете?	pa chiMU ví m̧ņé ņi SKAzhiţi?
He'll tell you how to go there.	Он ва́м ска́жет, ка́к на́до туда́ итти́.	ón vám SKAzhit kák NAda tudá iŢI.
Who told you that?	Кто́ ва́м э́то сказа́л?	KTO vám Eta skaZAL?
She didn't tell me anything.	Она́ мне́ ничего́ не сказа́ла.	aná m̧ņé ņi chiVO ņi skaZAla.
What did you say?	Что́ вы́ сказа́ли?	SHTO ví skaZAļi?
Tell (me), please, how is that (said) in Russian?	Скажи́те, пожа́луйста, ка́к э́то по-ру́сски?	skaZHIţi, paZHALsta; KAK ĕta pa RUsķi?
Tell him to come soon.	Скажи́те ему́, что́бы о́н скоре́е приезжа́л.	skaZHIţi yimú shtó bi ón skaŖEyi p̧riyiZHDZHAL.

When [*gavaŖIŢ*] means 'to say, to tell', it is matched by the Punctual compound [*skaZAŢ*]. The simple form o this verb occurs only in the Reflexive [*KAzhitsa*] 'it seems'.

E. ACTUAL AND ITERATIVE VERBS

[*YExaţ*, *YEḑiţ*]

Where are you traveling (riding, driving) to?	Куда́ вы е́дете?	kuDA ví YEḑiţi?
I'm going to Moscow.	Я е́ду в Москву́.	yá YEdu v maSKVU.
Tomorrow I'm driving to town.	За́втра я е́ду в го́род.	ZAftra yá YEdu v GƆrat.

Where were you driving to when I saw you yesterday?	Куда́ вы́ е́хали, когда́ я́ ва́с ви́дел вчера́?	*kuDA ví YExaļi kaGDA yá vás YIḑil fchiRA?*
We were driving to the station.	Мы́ е́хали на вокза́л.	*mí YExaļi na vagZAL.*
Do you already want to be going (by car)? (Are you already leaving us?)	Вы́ уже́ хоти́те е́хать?	*ví uZHE xaţiţi YExaţ?*

The verb [*YExaţ*] 'to be going (not on foot), riding, driving' is used only in *Actual* Durative meanings.

I often go to Moscow.	Я ча́сто е́зжу в Москву́.	*yá CHAsta YEzhdzhu v maSKVU.*
They go to the south every winter.	Они́ ка́ждую зи́му е́здят на ю́г.	*aŋí KAzhduyu Z̧Imu YEz̧ḑit na YUK.*
Have you ever gone to America?	Вы́ когда́-нибудь е́здили в Аме́рику?	*ví kaGDA ŋi buţ YEz̧ḑiļi v aM̧Eŗiku?*
She never went to visit them (in her car or by train).	Она́ никогда́ не е́здила к ни́м.	*aná ŋi kaGDA ŋi YEz̧ḑila k ŋím.*
Don't drive over there so often.	Не е́здите та́к ча́сто туда́.	*ŋi YEz̧ḑiţi ták CHAsta tuDA.*
I often have to go to New York.	Я до́лжен ча́сто е́здить в Нью-Йо́рк.	*yá dólzhin CHAsta YEz̧ḑiţ v ŋyu YORK.*

The verb [*YEz̧ḑiţ*] 'to go (not on foot), to ride, to drive' is used only in *Iterative* Durative meanings.

For the most part, Russian does not distinguish between Actual (roughly like the English *-ing* form) and Iterative (roughly like the English simple verb when used of repeated action); the Russian Durative verbs are used in both meanings:

Actual: [*PIshit*] 'he is writing'

Iterative: [*PIshit*] 'he writes'

But there are a dozen or so pairs of Durative verbs which make this distinction: one verb of the pair is an *Actual* (Durative) verb, and the other is an *Iterative* (Durative) verb:

Actual verb: [*YEḑit*] 'he is riding'

Iterative verb: [*YEz̧ḑit*] 'he rides'

The verbs which come in pairs like these are mostly verbs which have to do with locomotion.

The distinction between Actual and Iterative is not exactly the same as in English; you will find quite a few discrepancies.

I'll go tomorrow.	Я пое́ду за́втра.	*yá paYEdu ZAftra.*
This winter we'll go south.	Зимо́й мы́ пое́дем на ю́г.	*z̦iMOY mí paYEḑim na YUK.*
Where has he gone to?	Куда́ он пое́хал?	*kuDA ón paYExal?*
I'd like to take a trip to Russia.	Я бы хоте́л пое́хать в Росси́ю.	*yá bi xaŢEL paYExaţ v raŞIyu.*

The Punctual of [*YExaţ*] is [*paYExaţ*].

I'll drive round to the station for tickets.	Я съе́зжу на вокза́л за биле́тами.	*yá SYEzhdzhu na vagZAL za b̦iĻEtam̦i.*
Yesterday we drove over to Ivanov's.	Вчера́ мы́ съе́здили к Ивано́вым.	*fchiRA mí SYEz̦ḑiļi k ivaNOvam.*
Tomorrow I must drive round to town.	Мне́ на́до за́втра съе́здить в го́род.	*m̦ņé náda ZAftra SYEz̦ḑiţ v GOrat.*

The Punctual of [*YEz̦ḑiţ*] is [*SYEz̦ḑiţ*]; it is used of making a round trip, driving or riding somewhere and then coming back.

Both [*paYExaţ*] and [*SYEz̦ḑiţ*] are just ordinary Punctual verbs; the distinction of Actual and Iterative does not exist for Punctual verbs.

When did you get here?	Когда́ вы прие́хали?	*kaGDA ví p̦ŗiYExaļi?*
They will arrive at one o'clock.	Они́ прие́дут в ча́с.	*aņí p̦ŗiYEdut f CHAS.*
We shall soon get there.	Мы́ ско́ро прие́дем.	*mí SKOra p̦ŗiYEḑim.*
We shall soon leave now.	Мы́ тепе́рь ско́ро уе́дем.	*mí ţip̦éŗ SKOra uYEḑim.*
They haven't left yet.	Они́ ещё не уе́хали.	*aņí yiSHCHO ņi uYExaļi.*
She drove off quite a while ago.	Она́ давно́ уже́ уе́хала.	*aná daVNO uzhé uYExala.*

Punctual verbs are mostly made from the Actual verb of a pair.

They come here every spring.	Они́ приезжа́ют сюда́ ка́ждую весну́.	*aņí p̦ŗiyiZHDZHAyut şuDA KAzhduyu v̦iSNU.*
I shall come to Russia every summer.	Я бу́ду приезжа́ть в Росси́ю ка́ждое ле́то.	*yá búdu p̦ŗiyiZHDZHAŢ v raŞIyu KAzhdaya ĻEta.*

I'm leaving tomorrow.	Я уезжа́ю за́втра.	*yá uyiZHDZHAyu ZAftra.*
Don't be leaving us so soon.	Не уезжа́йте та́к ско́ро от на́с.	*ņi uyiZHDZHAYţi ták SKOra at nás.*

The Compounding Durative of [*YExaţ*] is [*-yizhdzháţ*].

Drive to the right.	Поезжа́йте напра́во.	*payiZHDZHAYţi na PRAva.*

The verb [*YExaţ*] has no Imperative. In commands they use the Imperative of the Compound Durative [*payiZHDZHAŢ*].

[*iŢI, xaḐIŢ*]

Where are you going?	Куда́ вы́ идёте?	*kuDA ví iḐOţi?*
Where were you going when I met you?	Куда́ вы шли́, когда́ я́ ва́с встре́тил?	*kuDA ví SHĻI, kagda yá vás FSTŖEţil?*

The verb [*iŢI*] 'to be going (on foot)' is an Actual (Durative) verb.

I often go to this restaurant.	Я ча́сто хожу́ в э́тот рестора́н.	*yá CHAsta xaZHU v Etat ŗistaRAN.*
The little boy is already walking.	Ма́льчик уже́ хо́дит.	*MAĻchik uzhé XOḑit.*
In summer we often went there.	Ле́том мы́ ча́сто туда́ ходи́ли.	*ĻEtam mí CHAsta tuDA xaḐIļi.*
I don't like to do a lot of walking.	Я не люблю́ мно́го ходи́ть.	*ya ņi ļuBĻU MNOga xaḐIŢ.*
Don't go there today.	Не ходи́те сего́дня туда́.	*ņi xaḐIţi şiVO ḑņa tuDA.*

The verb [*xaḐIŢ*] 'to go (on foot), to walk' is an Iterative (Durative) verb.

I have to go home now.	Мне́ на́до тепе́рь пойти́ домо́й.	*mņé NAda ţipéŗ payŢI daMOY.*
He will go to the post office right away.	Он сейча́с пойдёт на по́чту.	*ón şi CHAS payḐOT na POchtu.*
The children have gone to school.	Де́ти пошли́ в шко́лу.	*ḐEţi paSHĻI f SHKOlu.*

The Punctual of [*iŢI*] is [*payŢI*].

After a prefix, the [*i*] of [*iŢI*] is replaced by [y].

Come here!	Подúте сюдá!	*paḐIţi şuDA!*

In the Imperative form, the verb [*payŢI*] is usually spoken without the [y] sound.

I'll go round to the post office.	Я схожý на пóчту.	*yá sxaZHU na POchtu.*
He's gone round to the barber's.	Он сходúл к парикмáхеру.	*ón sxaḐIL k paŗikMAx̧iru.*
We'll go over to the station for tickets.	Мы́ схóдим на вокзáл за билéтами.	*mí SXOḑim na vagZAL za b̧iĻEtam̧i.*

The Punctual of [*xaḐIŢ*] is [*sxaḐIŢ*]. It is used of going somewhere and coming back, covering the whole round trip (or foot) as a unit.

He will come to our house for dinner today.	Он придёт к нáм сегóдня обéдать.	*ón p̧ŗiḐOT k nám şiVO ḑņa aB̧Edaţ.*
They said they would come at quarter of six.	Онú сказáли, чтó придýт без чéтверти шéсть.	*aņí skaZAļi shtó p̧ŗiDUT b̧is CHEtz̧irţi SHEŞŢ.*
They came at quarter past six.	Пришлú онú в чéтверть седьмóго.	*p̧ŗiSHĻI aņí f CHEtz̧irţ şiḑMOva.*
Yesterday he came at seven o'clock.	Вчерá óн пришёл в сéмь часóв.	*fchiRA ón p̧ŗiSHOL f ŞEM̧ chiSOF.*
Has the train arrived?	Пóезд пришёл?	*POyist p̧ŗiSHOL?*
I must leave now.	Мнé нáдо тепéрь уйтú.	*m̧ņé NAda ţip̧éŗ uyŢI.*
She took the ten roubles and went off.	Онá взялá дéсять рублéй и ушлá.	*aná vz̧iLA ḑéşiţ ruBĻEY i uSHLA.*
The train will leave right away.	Пóезд сейчáс уйдёт.	*POyist şi CHAS uyḐOT.*
The train has just left.	Пóезд сейчáс ушёл.	*POyist şi CHAS uSHOL.*

Punctual compound verbs are made mostly from [*iŢI*].

The absence of [y] in [*p̧ŗiŢI*] is due to the unstressed position: unstressed [iy] before a consonant loses [y].

He often comes to our house.	Он чáсто к нáм прихóдит.	*ón CHAsta k nám p̧ŗiXOḑit.*
I come here every day.	Я прихожý сюдá кáждый дéнь.	*yá p̧ŗixaZHU şuDA KAzhday ḐEŅ.*

She often came for dinner.	Она́ часто приходи́ла обе́дать.	*aná CHAsta p̧rixaḐIla aβEdaţ.*
Don't come tomorrow.	Не приходи́те за́втра.	*ņi p̧rixaḐIţi ZAftra.*
Are you leaving already?	Вы́ уже́ ухо́дите?	*vɨ́ uZHE uXOḑiţi?*
When does the train leave?	Когда́ ухо́дит по́езд?	*kaGDA uXOḑit POyist?*

For the Compounding Durative of [*iŢI*] they use the Iterative verb [*xaḐIŢ*]. Thus, [*xaḐIŢ*] has to do double duty. Some compounds of [*xaḐIŢ*] are Punctual, being treated as ordinary compounds of [*xaḐIŢ*] with a prefix, as [*sxaḐIŢ*]. But most compounds with [*xaḐIŢ*] are Durative, with [*xaḐIŢ*] serving as the Compounding Durative of [*iŢI*]. Notice that [*xaḐIŢ*] is one of the very few Compounding Duratives that are not of Type 1 Regular. It is Type 2 Regular, with shifting accent in the Present tense.

Remember that our statements about grammar or about meaning are meant merely to be read over; they may help you keep track of things. Do not spend time on them and do not try to remember them. But do learn the Russian sentences until you can say them fluently and in a natural way.

2. Covering English and Russian of Word Study (Individual Study)

Check yourself on your knowledge of the *Word Study* by covering, first the English, then the Russian, and making sure you know everything thoroughly.

3. Review of Basic Sentences

With the Guide or records, review the first half of the *Basic Sentences* as in previous units.

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES (*Cont.*)

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

Review the second half of the *Basic Sentences*.

2. Covering the English of Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Go through the *Basic Sentences* covering up the English and reading aloud the Russian. Check up on anything you do not know until you are sure of everything.

3. **What Would You Say?** (Individual Study)

Read aloud each of the following and then pick out the expression you think most suitable:

1. You get into a conversation with a fellow traveler on a train to Moscow. You want to ask him where he is bound for. You say:

a. Куда́ вы́ идёте?	*kuDA vɨ́ iḐOŢi?*
b. Куда́ вы́ е́хали?	*kuDA vɨ́ YExaļi?*
c. Куда́ вы́ е́дете?	*kuDA vɨ́ YEḑiţi?*

2. He is going to Moscow. He says:

a. Я ча́сто е́зжу в Москву́.	*yá CHAsta YEzhdzhu v maSKVU.*
b. Я тепе́рь е́ду в Москву́.	*yá ţipéŗ YEdu v maSKVU.*
c. Я ско́ро пое́ду в Москву́.	*yá SKOra paYEdu v maSKVU.*

3. He tells you that he often goes there. He says:

a. Я ча́сто хожу́ туда́.	*yá CHAsta xaZHU tuDA.*
b. Я ча́сто е́зжу туда́.	*yá CHAsta YEzhdzhu tuDA.*
c. Я ча́сто пишу́ туда́.	*yá CHAsta piSHU tuDA.*

4. You want to know what time the train is due to arrive. You ask:

a. В кото́ром часу́ прие́дем?	*f kaTOram chiSU pŗiYEḑim?*
b. В кото́ром часу́ пое́дем?	*f kaTOram chiSU paYEḑim?*
c. В кото́ром часу́ придём?	*f kaTOram chiSU pŗiḐOM?*

5. He says at 7:20. He says:

a. В два́дцать мину́т седьмо́го.	*v DVATciţ m̧iNUT şiḑMOva.*
b. Без двадцати́ во́семь.	*b̧iz dvaciŢI VOşim̧.*
c. В два́дцать мину́т восьмо́го.	*v DVATciţ m̧iNUT vaşMOva.*

6. The train makes a fifteen minute stop at a station. Your acquaintance asks whether you want to go for some lunch. He asks:

a. Вы́ здéсь зáвтракаете?	*ví z̧ḑéş ZAftrakayiţi?*
b. Вы́ ужé зáвтракали?	*ví uzhé ZAftrakaļi?*
c. Хоти́те позáвтракать?	*xaŢIţi paZAftrakaţ?*

7. You want meat balls with vegetables. You give your order:

a. Принеси́те мнé котлéты с я́йцами.	*p̧ŗiņiŞIţi mņé kaTĻEti s YAYcim̧i.*
b. Принеси́те мнé котлéты с картóшкой.	*p̧ŗiņiŞIţi mņé kaTĻEti s karTOshkay.*
c. Принеси́те мнé котлéты с óвощами.	*p̧ŗiņiŞIţi mņé kaTĻEti s Ovashchim̧i.*

8. You want a second glass of tea. You say:

a. Я вы́пил ещё стакáн чáю.	*yá VIp̧il yiSHCHO stakán CHAyu.*
b. Я пью́ ещё стакáн чáю.	*yá P̧YU yiSHCHO stakán CHAyu.*
c. Я вы́пью ещё стакáн чáю.	*yá VIp̧yu yiSHCHO stakán CHAyu.*

9. You want to know how much of a tip one gives the waiter. You ask:

a. Скóлько дадýт официáнту на чáй?	*SKOĻka daDUT afiCYANtu na CHAY?*
b. Скóлько даю́т официáнту на чáй?	*SKOĻka daYUT afiCYANtu na CHAY?*
c. Скóлько вы́ дáли официáнту на чáй?	*SKOĻka ví DAļi afiCYANtu na CHAY?*

10. He tells you they don't take tips here. He says:

a. Здéсь на чáй не берýт.	*Z̧ḐEŞ na CHAY ņi b̧iRUT.*
b. Здéсь на чáй не возьмýт.	*Z̧ḐEŞ na CHAY ņi vaz̧MUT.*
c. Здéсь на чáй не дадýт.	*Z̧ḐEŞ na CHAY ņi daDUT.*

11. On the way out you see some apples for sale. You say:

a. Вóт тáм вáм продадýт я́блоки.	*vót TAM vám pradaDUT YAblaķi.*
b. Вóт тáм покупáют я́блоки.	*vót TAM pakuPAyut YAblaķi.*
c. Вóт тáм продаю́т я́блоки.	*vót TAM pradaYUT YAblaķi.*

12. You want to buy some apples. You say:

a. Я хочу́ купи́ть я́блок.	*yá xaCHU kuPIŢ YAblak.*
b. Я хочу́ купи́ть я́блоко.	*yá xaCHU kuPIŢ YAblaka.*
c. Я хочу́ продава́ть я́блоки.	*yá xaCHU pradaVAŢ YAblaķi.*

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers in Russian for each of the exercises in the preceding section, when the Leader calls for them. Then, as the Leader calls for them, give the English equivalents of all the expressions in the exercise.

2. Word Study Check-Up

As you have done in the previous units, go back to the *Word Study* and give the correct Russian for each English expression, without having to read it from the book. The Leader or one of the members of the group should read the English.

3. Listening In

With your book closed, listen to the following conversations as read by the Guide or phonograph record. Repeat the Russian immediately after hearing it. After the first repetition of each conversation, check up on the meaning of anything you do not understand, by asking someone else or by going back to the *Basic Sentences* if no one knows. Repeat again if necessary, then take parts and carry on the conversation.

1. *Boris goes out to mail a letter early one morning, and on the way back from the post office meets Feodor.*

Unit 11, Record Side 4, beginning. (78 RPM) **(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 11, after 2nd spiral.**

Бори́с:	Вы́ хоти́те поза́втракать со мно́й?	*ví xaŢIţi paZAftrakaţ sa MNOY?*
Фео́дор:	Спаси́бо.	*spaŞIba.*
	Хоро́ш ли за́втрак в пансио́не?	*xaROSH ļi ZAftrak f panŞYOņi?*
Бори́с:	Да, дово́льно.	*DA, daVOĻna.*
	Гражда́нка Петро́ва та́м за́втракает.	*graZHDANka piTROva tám ZAftrakayiţ.*
Фео́дор:	Кто́ она́?	*KTO aná?*

Бори́с:	Ка́к?	*KAK?*
	Вы́ не зна́ете её?	*ví ņi ZNAyiţi yiYO?*
	Она́ о́чень прия́тная де́вушка.	*aná Ochiņ pŗiYAtnaya ḐEvushka.*
Фео́дор:	Где́ вы́ с не́й познако́мились?	*GḐE ví s ŅEY paznaKOm̧iļiş?*
Бори́с:	На аэродро́ме.	*na airaDROm̧i.*
	Она́ та́м рабо́тает.	*aNA tám raBOtayit.*
Фео́дор:	Где́ она́ живёт?	*GḐE aná zhiY̧OT?*
Бори́с:	В пансио́не.	*f panŞYOņi.*
Фео́дор:	Та́м, где́ и вы́ живёте?	*TAM gḑé i VI zhiY̧Oţi?*
Бори́с:	Да́, коне́чно.	*DA, kaŅEshna.*
	Она́ мне́ дала́ а́дрес пансио́на.	*aNA m̧ņé daLA Adŗis panŞYOna.*
Фео́дор:	Тепе́рь я́ зна́ю, почему́ вы́ бы́ли в парикма́херской.	*ţiP̧EŖ yá ZNAyu pa chiMU ví bíļi f paŗikMAx̧irskay.*
Бори́с:	Мне́ на́до было постри́чься и побри́ться.	*m̧ņé NAda [illegible]ila paSTŖICHsa i paBŖIŢsa.*
Фео́дор:	Тепе́рь, ка́жется, вы́ всегда́ в парикма́херской.	*ţiP̧EŖ kázhitsa ví fşiGDA f paŗikMAx̧irskay.*
Бори́с:	Я ва́м сказа́л, что́ я́ бы́л на по́чте.	*yá vám skaZAL shtó yá bíl na POchţi.*
Фео́дор:	Я ва́с слы́шал.	*yá vás SLIshil.*

2. *They arrive at the boarding house.*

Па́ша:	Здра́вствуйте, това́рищ.	*ZDRAstvuyţi, taVAŗishch.*
	Гражда́нка Петро́ва то́же пришла́ за́втракать.	*graZHDANka p̧iTROva TO zhi priSHLA ZAftrakaţ.*
	Она́ тепе́рь в столо́вой.	*aNA ţipéŗ f staLOvay.*

Бори́с:	Хорошо́.	*xaraSHO.*
	А вы́ верну́ли моё бельё?	*a vі́ v̧irNUļi mayó b̧iļYO?*
Па́ша:	Да, то́лько-что́.	*DA, tóļka SHTO.*
Бори́с:	Спаси́бо.	*spaŞIba.*
	Вы́ его́ принесли́ скоре́е, че́м вы́ сказа́ли.	*vі́ yivó p̧riņiŞĻI skaŖEyi chém vі́ skaZAļi.*
	Скажи́те, что́ сего́дня на за́втрак?	*skaZHIţi, SHTO şiVO ḑņa na ZAftrak?*
Па́ша:	Я не зна́ю.	*yá ņi ZNAyu.*
	Гражда́нка Симео́нова в столо́вой.	*graZHDANka şiM̧Onava f staLOvay.*
	Она́ ва́м ска́жет.	*aNA vám SKAzhit.*

3. *They go to the dining room.*

Бори́с:	Здра́вствуйте, гражда́нка Петро́ва.	*ZDRAstvuyţi, grazhdánka p̧iTROva.*
	Мо́жно ва́с познако́мить с мои́м дру́гом Фео́дором?	*MOzhna vás paznaKOm̧iţ s mayím DRUgam F̧Odaram?*
Ольга:	Очень прия́тно.	*Ochiņ p̧riYAtna.*
	Вы́ за́втракали?	*vі́ ZAftrakaļi?*
Бори́с:	Не́т.	*ŅET.*
	Мо́жно с ва́ми поза́втракать?	*MOzhna s VAm̧i paZAftrakaţ?*
Ольга:	Пожа́луйста, пожа́луйста, почему́ не́т?	*paZHALsta, paZHALsta, pa chimú ŅET?*
Фео́дор:	Спаси́бо, это бу́дет о́чень прия́тно.	*spaŞIba, éta búḑit Ochiņ p̧riYAtna.*
Бори́с:	Что́ на за́втрак?	*SHTO na ZAftrak?*
Ольга:	Яи́чница с ветчино́й.	*yiYIchņica s v̧ichiNOY.*
	Гражда́нке Симео́новой понра́вился Пётр Сми́т.	*graZHDANķi şiM̧Onavay paNRAv̧ilsa P̧OTR SM̧IT.*

	И тепе́рь она́ подаёт то́лько америка́нские блю́да.	*i ţiP̧EŖ aná padaYOT TOĻka am̧iŗiKANsķiya BĻUda.*
Фео́дор:	Это ничего́.	*éta ņi chiVO.*
	Америка́нские блю́да дово́льно хороши́.	*am̧iŗiKANsķiya BĻUda daVOĻna xaraSHI.*
Ольга:	Мо́жет бы́ть э́то хорошо́ в Аме́рике, но́ не когда́ Симео́нова и́х де́лает.	*MOzhid bíţ éta xaraSHO v aM̧Eŗiķi, nó ņi kaGDA şiM̧Onava yix D̦Elayit.*
Бори́с:	Вчера́ она́ на́м по́дала я́блочный пиро́г.	*fchiRA aná nám POdala YAblachnay p̧iROK.*
	Он мне́ о́чень понра́вился.	*ón mņé Ochiņ paNRAv̧ilsa.*
Ольга:	Да́, ве́рно.	*DA, V̧ERna.*
	Но́ за обе́дом я́ люблю́ ру́сский бо́рщ.	*nó za aB̧Edam yá ļuBĻU RUsķiy BORSHCH.*
Фео́дор:	Я то́же.	*yá TOzhi.*
	И котле́ты.	*i kaTĻEti.*
Бори́с:	Вчера́ я́ сказа́л Петру́, что́ ру́сские никогда́ не напива́ются.	*fchiRA yá skazál p̧iTRU shtó RUsķiya ņi kaGDA ņi napiVAyutsa.*
Ольга:	Я не люблю́ пья́ных, но́ я́ пью́ во́дку и пи́во.	*yá ņi ļuBĻU P̧YAnax, nó YA pyú VOtku i P̧Iva.*
Фео́дор:	То́лько дура́к никогда́ не пьёт во́дки.	*tóļka duRAK ņi kagdá ņi pyót VOtķi.*
Бори́с:	Но́ всё-таки мне́ не нра́вится просыпа́ться на у́лице.	*nó FŞO taķi mņé ņi NRAv̧itsa prasiPATsa na Uļici.*
Ольга:	Я ещё э́того не про́бовала.	*YA yishchó étava ņi PRObavala.*
Фео́дор:	Ва́м и не на́до.	*VAM i ņi NAda.*
	Я могу́ ва́м рассказа́ть.	*YA magú vám raskaZAŢ.*

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Russian in Basic Sentences (Individual Study)

Cover the Russian of the *Basic Sentences* and practice saying the Russian equivalents of the English expressions.

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

Give the Russian expressions for the English equivalents in the *Basic Sentences* as the Leader calls for them.

3. Conversation

As you have done in the *Conversation* in the previous units, begin to converse by following the models outlined below fairly closely; then change the situations somewhat. Invent new combinations of subject matter.

Suggested Conversation Topics

1. You come into the house and ask your mother if dinner is ready. She says it will be when the coffee boils. You ask what you have and she tells you—vegetable soup (soup with vegetables), fish or meat, potatoes, vegetables, and then apple pie and coffee. You tell her that you had ham and eggs for lunch in the city; you want the coffee to boil as soon as possible.
2. You call on a girl and ask her to have dinner with you if she hasn't eaten yet. She accepts, and you ask her whether she'd like Russian or American foods. She tells you of a good restaurant where they usually serve good Russian food. You ask what kind of foods you'll find there. She says the borshch and meat balls are good. You say you'd be glad to go there.
3. At dinner you ask her what she would like to drink. She orders vodka and a glass of tea. You order coffee and a glass of beer. She asks you if you see many drunks in your home town. You tell her that the young people used to get drunk after the war, but that people now think it isn't nice. She says that she hasn't much respect for drunkards, but nevertheless, she thinks that vodka and beer ought to be served.
4. You have just had dinner at a friend's house. Someone announces that coffee is being served in the living room. You go in the other room. You say that perhaps after the coffee you will wake up. Your friend asks if you have been working too much. You say no, but nevertheless you need to wake up. Your host says there is a vacant bed in the room on the

second floor if you want to be there all night. You thank them and say you must go. Add that you remember hearing that the Russian folk are rich in hospitality, and that you have found it in every home.

SECTION F—CONVERSATION (*Cont.*)

Continue the conversations started in Section E, with a review of previous lessons if necessary.

FINDER LIST

блю́до [*BĻUda*] dish, food
бога́тый [*boGAtay*] rich
бо́рщ [*BORSHCH*] beet soup

ва́нна [*VANna*] bathtub, bath
вари́ть [*vaŖIŢ*] to boil, to cook
ветчина́ [*ţichiNA*] ham
во́дка [*VOTka*] vodka
всё-таки [*FŞO taķi*] just the same, nevertheless
встреча́ть [*fstŗiCHAŢ*] D. to meet

гостеприимство [*gaşţipŗiYIMstva*] hospitality

дава́ть [*daVAŢ*] D. to give
дура́к [*duRAK*] stupid fellow

е́здить [*YEZ̧diţ*] D. (Iterative) to go (not on foot)

зате́м [*za ŢEM*] after that, then

ка́ждый [*KAzhday*] each, every
кварти́ра [*kvarŢIra*] apartment, flat

когда́-нибудь [*kaGDA ŋi buţ*] ever, at any time
котле́та [*kaTĻEta*] cutlet; meat ball

ли́ [*ĻI*] whether
люби́ть [*ļuB̧IŢ*] to love, to like

магази́н [*magaZ̧IN*] store

немно́жко [*ŋiMNOshka*] a little bit
напива́ться [*napiVATsa*] D. to drink one's fill; to get drunk
напи́ться [*naP̧ITsa*] P. (same meaning)

О [*O*] Oh!
о́вощи [*Ovashchi*] (Plural) vegetables
О́льга [*OĻga*] Olga
отдава́ть [*addaVAŢ*] D. to give back; to hand over

пиро́г [*piROK*] pie
подава́ть [*padaVAŢ*] D. to serve up

пода́ть [*paDAŢ*] P. (same meaning)
покупа́ть [*pakuPAŢ*] D. to buy
по́мнить [*POmņiţ*] D. to remember
попро́бовать [*paPRObavaţ*] P. to try
посло́вица [*paSLOv̧ica*] proverb
почти́ [*paCHŢI*] almost
приезжа́ть [*priyiZHDZHAŢ*] D. to arrive (not on foot)
приме́р [*pŗiM̧ER*] example, model
приходи́ть [*pŗixaḐIŢ*] D. to arrive, to come (on foot)
про́бовать [*PRObavaţ*] D. to try
прода́ть [*praDAŢ*] P. to sell
просну́ться [*praSNUTsa*] P. to wake up
просыпа́ться [*prasiPATsa*] D. (same meaning)
пья́ный [*P̧YAnay*] drunk

рассказа́ть [*raskaZAŢ*] P. to narrate
ры́ба [*RIba*] fish

сходи́ть [*sxaḐIŢ*] P. to go round (on foot)
съе́здить [*SYEz̧ḑiţ*] P. to go round (not on foot)
сюда́ [*şuDA*] to this place, here

уважа́ть [*uvaZHAŢ*] D. to respect
уро́к [*uROK*] lesson

Фёдор [*F̧Odar*] Theodore

я́блоко [*YAblaka*] apple
  я́блочный [*YAblachnay*] made of apples
яйцо́ [*yiCO*] egg
  яи́чница [*yiYIchņica*] egg dish; fried or scrambled eggs; omelet

UNIT 12

REVIEW

SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN RUSSIAN?

Unit 12, Record Sides 1-4. (78 RPM)

(33⅓ RPM) Record Side 12.

This section is a true-false quiz exactly like the one in Unit 6, except that the first item is not a practice item. Prepare paper with numbers from 1 to 80 and mark the statements that you will hear from your Guide or the phonograph record either *T* or *F*. After you finish the quiz, the Leader will read out the correct answers for each statement. Check your paper and give your score to your Leader. He will figure out the average for your group. If your score is less than the average number of correct answers or less than 80% correct, you need more review of the previous units.

Spend the rest of the time going over the items on which you had difficulty.

SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

(Individual Study)

Prepare to give orally the Russian for each of the following sentences. Do not write anything down.

I

1. Why are you in such a hurry?
2. The train for Stalingrad leaves at 2:17.
3. It's already five minutes past two.
4. I'm going there not by train, but by airplane.
5. You'll get there on time.
6. Have you already bought a ticket?
7. The airplane leaves at 3:12.
8. Do they sell tickets in town?
9. Please wait for me a minute.
10. Please give me a ticket to Stalingrad; how much is it?

1. I haven't a single clean shirt.
2. Where can I find a laundry?
3. I'll send you a laundress.
4. All the dirty linen is on the bed.
5. When will you bring back my laundry?

1. Are you looking for a room?
2. A boarding house is cheaper than a hotel.
3. She gave me the address of your boarding house.
4. The bed is very comfortable.
5. The room is well furnished.

1. I want to write a letter home.
2. I haven't written to them for a long time.
3. I haven't any time.
4. Whose is that paper there on the table?
5. I have ink, envelopes, and stamps.

1. What will I find there?
2. I like this very much.
3. Please bring us two glasses of tea.
4. He'll soon wake up.
5. He took my book and gave me his.

II

6. I have to have a pair of shoes mended.
7. I need a shave and a haircut.
8. I know lots of Russians here.
9. Two thousand people live there.
10. A million people live in this city.

III

6. This room costs fifty roubles a month.
7. Have you a room less expensive than this?
8. He is older than I.
9. This restaurant is very expensive.
10. Lunch is at one o'clock.

IV

6. Maybe you'll get a letter from them.
7. That would be very nice.
8. Where are you going?—Home.
9. Where is your brother?—At home.
10. Have you time?

V

6. They gave us their tickets.
7. I'm looking for my book.
8. He buys lots of books.
9. In that store they charge very high prices.
10. I'm taking Russian lessons.

Section C—How Did You Say It?

Quiz by the Leader on the sentences in Section B, asking various members of the group: «Как сказать по-русски . . .?»

Section D—How Would You Say It? (*Cont.*)

(Individual Study)

Prepare to give orally the Russian for each of the following sentences:

I

1. I'm very thirsty.
2. It is now one o'clock.
3. It is now between one and two o'clock.
4. It is now half past four.
5. It is now quarter to six.
6. At what time will you come?
7. I'll meet you here at quarter to two.
8. I arrived at half past twelve.
9. My watch is fast.
10. He will come at quarter past one.

II

1. Whom are you going to meet here?
2. It isn't raining.
3. I've never told anyone anything about that.
4. I'll come back as soon as possible.
5. Please bring me a cup of coffee.
6. Meet me here at half past five.
7. Please cut my hair.
8. He has to leave (on foot) right away.
9. I live on the third floor.
10. Give me a receipt.

III

1. We eat lunch at half past twelve.
2. Are you traveling by train, by auto, or by airplane?
3. I can't write with this pen.
4. I was talking with your brother.
5. I want a clean room with a clean bed.
6. He wants to talk with our friends.
7. I was dining with three friends.
8. He went away with twenty roubles.
9. He and I often used to lunch in this restaurant.
10. In autumn we shall return to Russia.

IV

1. At times he goes off traveling, nobody knows where to.
2. I've been in Moscow only once.
3. He's been in America three times.
4. I've many times already told him that.
5. I owe the shoemaker 21 roubles.
6. She is married to an American.
7. You haven't given us back the tickets.
8. Tomorrow I'll write him a letter.
9. He will help us.
10. He often helps us.

V

1. I'll take a little more of that dish.
2. She didn't tell me anything.
3. I often go to Moscow.
4. They go to the south every winter.
5. Where were you driving to when I saw you yesterday?
6. I shall come to Russia every summer.
7. He's gone round to the barber's.
8. Come here!
9. The children have gone off to school.
10. The train will leave right away.

Section E—How Did You Say It?

Quiz by the Leader on the work you did in Section D. Keep your book closed. The Leader will ask you to take turns in speaking sentences by saying: «Как сказать по-русски . . .?» If you have a Guide, he will check on your pronunciation and the correctness of your Russian.

Section F—Conversation Review

Hold a series of conversations, from one to two minutes each, on as many of the topics which have been developed in Units 1-12 as you can, combining and varying them as you wish. All members of the group should have a chance to take part. A few suggested topics:

1. You go into a hotel to get a room without bath. After finding out the price, you ask to see the room and the bathroom. You also ask whether the hotel has a restaurant.
2. At the barber shop—you get a haircut, but don't need a shave. The barber talks about the weather, where you come from, where you live, etc.
3. You ask a stranger directions to get to various places. You want to see a few of the sights in town, go to a restaurant and to the movies. You also want to know how to get back to the station.
4. You ask the porter in a hotel where you can get your shoes shined and your laundry done. He tells you how to get to the various places.
5. You go to a store and buy some articles of clothing. You give the clerk large bills, and he counts out your change.
6. You go to a restaurant and order a full meal for yourself and a lady.
7. You and a Russian compare the weather in New York and Moscow (or any other two cities).
8. A friend is helping you move into your new room in a boarding house. He asks you where various things belong, and you tell him. After everything is in the room, you offer him a smoke and suggest a glass of beer in a cafe. He gladly accepts.
9. You have to write a letter home, and you try to borrow writing materials from a friend.
10. You tell a friend you are going out in the evening. Tell him when you have to be where, whom you're going to meet and where, and what you have to do to get ready.

SUMMARY OF RUSSIAN GRAMMAR

§§1–7. VOWEL SPELLINGS

1. The letters а, э, ы, о, у represent the simple vowels [*a, e, i, o, u*]: ла́мпа 'lamp'.

2. At the beginning of a word, after vowels, and after ъ, ь, the letters я, е, и, ё, ю mean [*y*] plus vowel: я́ 'I'. However, и at the beginning of a word means [*yi*] only in the pronoun forms и́м, и́ми, и́х, §103; otherwise it means [*i*]: игла́ 'needle'.

3. After a consonant letter, я, е, и, ё, ю mean that the consonant is palatal: ня́ня 'nurse'.

4. After ж, ч, ш, щ the vowels are written, а, е, и, ё, у: ча́с 'hour', жёны 'wives'. But stressed о is in some words written о: большо́й 'big'.

5. After ц the vowels are written а, е, ы, о, у: с отцо́м 'with the father'. But the unstressed form of [*o*] is written е: с пе́рцем 'with pepper'; and in some foreign words [*i*] is written и: ци́рк 'circus'.

6. The sounds [*g, k, x*] are palatalized before [*i*]; the spelling uses и: ла́мпы 'lamps', but ру́ки 'hands'.

7. The letter ь means that a preceding consonant is palatal: со́ль 'salt'.

8–11. VOWEL INSERTION

8. When two consonants come to stand at the end of a word (or before the consonant of a suffix) and the last consonant is [*c, g, k, l, ļ, n, ŋ, r, ŗ, s, ş, ʒ*], a vowel is inserted before this consonant, as follows:

9 If one of the two consonants is [*g, k, x*], the inserted vowel is [*o*], spelled о, ё, е: ша́пка 'cap', G.P. ша́пок; ча́шка 'cup', G.P. ча́шек.

10. If the last consonant is [*c*] or a palatal consonant, the inserted vowel is [,*e*]: отцы́ 'fathers', N.S. оте́ц; друзья́ 'friends', G.P. друзе́й.

11. Otherwise the inserted vowel is [,*o*], written ё, о, е: ковры́ 'rugs', N.S. ковёр; смешно́й 'funny', short M смешо́н.

12, 13. ACCENT

12. Sets of forms are regularly stressed either on the stem throughout (accent A) or on the endings throughout (accent B): A е́ду, е́дет; B иду́, идёт. But some sets have shifting accent (accent C): могу́, мо́жет.

Accent C in a noun plural means that all forms except the N. accent the ending. Accent C in a present tense verb means that only the 'I' form accents the ending. Accent C in a set of gender forms means that only the F accents the ending.

13. In a set of forms with accent B, a form with no ending is stressed on the last vowel: карандаши́ 'pencils', N.S. каранда́ш. This may be an inserted vowel: отцы́ 'fathers', N.S. оте́ц.

14–70. NOUNS

14. The A.P. of nouns is like the N.P. for non-living things and like the G.P. for living beings: N.P. кни́ги, G.P. кни́г: я́ ви́жу кни́ги 'I see books'; N.P. соба́ки, G.P. соба́к: я́ ви́жу соба́к 'I see dogs'. But there are a few special expressions, like поéхать в го́сти 'to go visiting'.

15–26. FIRST DECLENSION

15. First declension: N.S. in [*a*]. The nouns are F, except for some M which mean male persons: мужчи́на 'man'; some M which mean persons of either sex: судья́ 'judge'; and some which are M or F according to sex: сирота́ 'orphan'.

Endings; stem [*shkól-*] 'school':

	N.	A.	G.	D.	I.	L.
S.	шко́л-а	-у	-ы	-е	-ой	-е
P.	-ы		шко́л	-ам	-ами	-ах

The I.S. has also a longer form шко́лою.

16. Stems ending in [*iy*] have ending [*i*] in the D.S. and L.S.: а́рмия 'army', в а́рмии.

17. Shifting accent occurs almost only in words which accent the ending in the S. forms.

18. Some accent the stem in the A.S.: вода́ 'water': во́ду; голова́ 'head': го́лову.

19. Some have accent A in the plural: весна́ 'spring', N.P. вёсны, G.P. вёсен, D.P. вёснам.

20. But a few of these stress the last vowel in the G.P.: сестра́ 'sister', N.P. сёстры, G.P. сестёр, D.P. сёстрам.

21. Some have accent C in the plural: голова́ 'head', P. го́ловы, голо́в, голова́м; дере́вня 'village', P. дере́вни, деревéнь, деревня́м.

22. Some have accent A or C in the plural: река́ 'river', P. ре́ки, ре́к, река́м.

23. ты́сяча 'thousand' has I.S. ты́сячью or ты́сячей.

24. Some have plain [*n*] instead of palatal [*ŋ*] at the end of the G.P.: спа́льня 'bedroom', G.P. спа́лен.

25. Some fail to insert a vowel in the G.P.: игла́ 'needle', G.P. и́гл.

26. The P. of ку́рица 'hen' is usually replaced by ку́ры 'hens'.

27–44. SECOND DECLENSION

27. Second declension: N.S. with final consonant and no ending. The nouns are M. The A.S. is like the N.S. for nonliving things and like the G.S. for living beings: я́ ви́жу сто́л 'I see the table'; я́ ви́жу солда́та 'I see the soldier'.

Endings; stem [*fákt-*] 'fact':

	N.	G.	D.	I.	L.
S.	фа́кт	-а	-у	-ом	-е
P.	-ы	-ов	-ам	-ами	-ах

Since the N.S. form, in which nouns are named and listed in dictionaries, has no ending, it does not show whether a noun stresses the stem (A) or the endings (B): гара́ж 'garage', гара́жа (A), but бага́ж 'baggage', багажа́ (B). Therefore, the vocabulary gives the G.S. for those which accent the endings: бага́ж, -а́.

Also, the N.S. form does not show whether the last vowel is an inserted vowel: ве́тер 'wind', ве́тра, but ве́чер 'evening', ве́чера. Therefore, the vocabulary gives the G.S. for those which have an inserted vowel: ве́тер, -тра; оте́ц, -тца́.

Nouns ending in [*zh, sh*] or a palatal consonant other than [*y*] have the ending [*ey*] in the G.P.: но́ж 'knife', ноже́й; ру́бль 'rouble', рубле́й.

28. Some have accent AB (that is, on stem in S.; on endings in P.): са́д 'garden', G.S. са́да, but P. сады́, садо́в, сада́м.

29. Some with accent AB have the ending [*á*] in the N.P.: до́м 'house', G.S. до́ма; P. дома́, домо́в, дома́м.

30. Some have accent AC (that is, on stem in S. and in N.P., on endings in the rest): го́сть 'guest', G.S. го́стя, P. го́сти, госте́й, гостя́м.

31. Accent BC: гво́здь 'nail', G.S. гвоздя́, P. гво́зди, гвозде́й, гвоздя́м.

32. Some fail to insert a vowel in the N.S.: ру́бль 'rouble'. Some insert another than the usual vowel. ро́т 'mouth', G.S. рта́. A few with accent B fail to

accent the inserted vowel: ýгол 'corner', G.S. углá. Since the vocabulary gives the N.S. and, when there is an inserted vowel, the G.S., these need no special indication.

33. In number expressions чáс 'hour' (AB) accents the G.S. ending: двá часá 'two hours, two o'clock', чéтверть часá 'quarter of an hour'.

34. Some have a second G.S. with ending [*u*], used for a whole of which part is taken, or in special phrases: кусóк сáхару 'a piece of sugar', и́з дому 'out of the house'.

35. Some have a second L.S. with ending [*ú*], always stressed, used after в and на, either always or in special expressions: в лесý 'in the woods', на домý 'at one's residence' (на дóме 'on the house').

36. A few have no ending in the G.P.: рáз 'time', мнóго рáз 'many times'.

37. The G.P. of гóд 'year' is in nearly all expressions replaced by the G.P. лéт of лéто 'summer': двá гóда 'two years', пя́ть лéт 'five years'.

38. Some add [*y*] in the P. and have N.P. [*a*]: стýл 'chair', P. стýлья, стýльев, стýльям.

39. Of these, a few have accent AB, no ending in the G.P., and additional irregularities: мýж 'husband', P. мужья́, мужéй, мужья́м; дрýг 'friend', P. друзья́, друзéй, друзья́м; сы́н 'son', P. сыновья́, сыновéй, сыновья́м.

40. Some drop final [*in*] in the P. and have N.P. [, *e*] and no ending in G.P.: крестья́нин 'peasant', P. крестья́не, крестья́н, крестья́нам.

41. A few of these have other irregularities: господи́н 'gentleman', P. господá, госпóд, господáм; граждани́н 'citizen', P. грáждане, грáждан, грáжданам; хозя́ин 'landlord', P. хозя́ева, хозя́ев, хозя́евам.

42. Some whose S. ends in [*onk*] drop this and add [*at*] in the P., with N.P. [*a*] and no ending in G.P.: ребёнок 'child', G.S. ребёнка, P. ребя́та, ребя́т, ребя́там.

43. сосéд 'neighbor' has [*ḑ*] in the P. stem: сосéди, сосéдей, сосéдям.

44. The P. of ребёнок 'child' is usually replaced by дéти 'children', §69. The P. of цветóк 'flower' is usually replaced by цветы́. The P. of человéк 'human being, man' is replaced by лю́ди 'people', §69, except for the G.P. in number expressions: пя́ть человéк (§36) 'five persons'; also мнóго, (мáло) нарóду 'many (few) people', with second G.S. (§34) of нарóд 'people'.

45–56. THIRD DECLENSION

45. Third declension: N.S. in [*o*], unstressed [*a*], written о, е. The nouns are N, except for a few M. The A.S. is like the N.S. Except for N.S., N.P., G.P., the endings are as in the second declension. Stem [*bļúd-*] 'dish':

	N.	G.	D.	I.	L.
S.	блюд-о	-а	-у	-ом	-е
P.	-а	блю́д	-ам	-ами	-ах

Stems ending in [*iy*] have the L.S. ending [*i*]: зда́ние 'building', в зда́нии.

Stems ending in [*zh, sh*] or in a palatal consonant other than [*shch, y*] have G.P. ending [*ey*]: по́ле 'field', поле́й.

46. Some have accent AB: ме́сто 'place', G.S. ме́ста, P. места́, ме́ст, места́м.

47. Some have accent BA: окно́ 'window', G.S. окна́, P. о́кна, о́кон, о́кнам.

48. A few accent different syllables of the stem in S. and P.: о́зеро 'lake', G.S. о́зера, P. озёра, озёр, озёрам.

49. у́тро 'morning', G.S. у́тра, accents the G.S. and D.S. endings in special expressions: с утра́ 'from morning on', к утру́ 'towards morning'. It optionally has accent C in the P.: у́тра, у́тр (§51), у́тра́м.

50. A few have N.P. [*i*]: я́блоко 'apple', я́блоки.

51. Some fail to insert a vowel in the G.P.: го́рло 'throat', G.P. го́рл; G.P. у́тр, §49.

52. Some have G.P. [*of*]: пла́тье 'dress', пла́тьев; я́блоко 'apple', я́блоков or я́блок.

53. яйцо́ BA 'egg' inserts accented [*í*] in the G.P.: G.S. яйца́, P. я́йца, яи́ц, я́йцам.

54. A few add [*y*] in the P. forms with stress on the preceding syllable and G.P. [*of*]: де́рево 'tree', G.S. де́рева, P. дере́вья, дере́вьев, дере́вьям.

55. не́бо AB 'sky' adds [*es*] in the P. forms: G.S. не́ба, P. небеса́, небе́с, небеса́м.

56. у́хо 'ear' has P. stem [*ush-*] with accent C and N.P. [*i*]: G.S. у́ха, P. у́ши, уше́й, уша́м.

57–65. FOURTH DECLENSION

57. Fourth declension: F nouns whose N.S. ends in a consonant ([*zh, sh*] or palatal); the M пу́ть 'way'; and a few N nouns with N.S. in [*a*]. The A.S. is like the N.S.

Endings: stem [*krovát-*] 'bed':

	N.	G.	D.	I.	L.
S.	крова́т-ь	-и	-и	-ью	-и
P.	-и	-ей	-ям	-ями	-ях

58. Many have accent AC: две́рь 'door', G.D.L.S. две́ри, P. две́ри, двере́й, двеpя́м.

59. Some accent the L.S. ending [*i*] after в, на, either always or in special meanings: гря́зь 'dirt', G.D.L.S. гря́зи, but в грязи́ 'in the dirt, all dirty'.

60. са́жень AC 'fathom' has G.P. са́жен or regular саже́ней.

61. ло́шадь AC 'horse' has I.P. лошадьми́.

62. The stem [*cerkv̧-*] AC 'church' inserts a vowel in N.S. and I.S. and has plain [*v*] in D.I.L.P.: це́рковь, це́ркви, це́рковью, P. це́ркви, церкве́й, церква́м.

63. The stems [*maƫeŗ-*] 'mother', [*docheŗ-*] 'daughter', accent AC, drop [*eŗ*] in the N.S.: ма́ть, до́чь, до́чери, до́черью, P. до́чери, дочере́й, дочеря́м; до́чь has I.P. дочерьми́.

64. The N nouns go as follows: stem [*imon̦-*] 'name': S. и́мя, и́мени, и́менем; P. имена́, имён, имена́м.

65. The only M. noun, пу́ть BB 'way' has I.S. путём.

66–69. NOUNS WITH PLURAL ONLY

66. Nouns which occur only in P. form have N.P. [*i*] or [*a*] and G.P. [*of*] or [*ey*] or with no ending: очки́, очко́в, очка́м 'eyeglasses'; но́жницы, но́жниц, но́жницам 'scissors'; черни́ла, черни́л, черни́лам 'ink'.

67. Some have accent C: са́ни, сане́й, саня́м 'sleigh'.

68. де́ньги 'money' G.P. де́нег, optionally accents the other endings: де́ньга́м.

69. де́ти 'children' (§44), лю́ди 'people' (§44) go thus: дете́й, де́тям, детьми́, де́тях.

70. INDECLINABLE NOUNS

70. Indeclinable nouns remain unchanged in all cases and both numbers: пальто́ N 'overcoat', ко́фе M 'coffee', СССР [*esesesER*] M 'Union of Socialist Soviet Republics'.

71–92. ADJECTIVES

71–74. LONG FORMS

71. In most uses the adjective has the *ordinary long* forms. The A. of the M and of the P. is like the N. for inanimate things and like the G. for living beings: я́ ви́дел э́тот но́вый до́м 'I saw this new house', я́ зна́ю э́того молодо́го челове́ка 'I know this young man', я́ зна́ю э́того мужчи́ну 'I know this man'. The A. of the N is like the N. Only the F has a special A. form. Except for the N. the neuter forms are like the masculine.

Endings; stem [*pŗam-*] 'straight':

	N.	A.	G.	D.	I.	L.
M	прям-о́й		-о́го	-о́му	-ы́м	-о́м
N	-о́е					
F	-а́я	-у́ю	-о́й	-о́й	-о́й	-о́й
P.	-ы́е		-ы́х	-ы́м	-ы́ми	-ы́х

The N. M ending is spelled ый (ий) when unstressed: ста́рый 'old', мя́гкий 'soft'.

The G. M ending is [*óvo*], but is spelled with г.

The I. F ending has also a longer form: прямо́ю.

The accent of the long forms stays in the same place: on the stem (A) or on the endings (B).

72. Some adjectives are used like nouns in one or another gender or number; in the vocabulary we mark these as follows: портно́й AM 'tailor' (G.S. портно́го, and so on), столо́вая AF 'dining room' (A.S. столо́вую, and so on), сла́дкое AN 'dessert', лёгкие AP 'lungs' (G. лёгких, and so on).

73. Stems ending in consonant plus [*y*] have noun-like forms in the N. forms and the A.F: stem [*ţŗéţy-*] 'third': M тре́тий, тре́тьего, etc.; N тре́тье; F тре́тья, тре́тью, тре́тьей; P. тре́тьи, тре́тьих, and so on.

74. Family names in [*ov, in*] have noun-like forms also in the G.D.L.M: M Петро́в, Петро́ва, Петро́ву, Петро́вым, Петро́ве; F Петро́ва, Петро́ву, Петро́вой; P. Петро́вы, Петро́вых, and so on.

75–88. SHORT FORMS

75. The *ordinary short* forms of adjectives are nominative only and have predicative meaning. The endings are M no ending, F [*a*], N [*o*], P [*i*]: краси́вый 'beautiful': краси́в '(he) is beautiful', краси́ва, краси́во, краси́вы.

The short N form serves also as an adverb: краси́во 'beautifully'. In some words it serves also as an impersonal predicate: хорошо́ 'that's good', мне́ хорошо́ 'I feel good'.

If the stem has only one syllable, the short F accents the ending and the other short forms accent the stem: бе́дный 'poor', бе́ден, бедна́, бе́дно, бе́дны; плохо́й 'bad', пло́х, плоха́, пло́хо, пло́хи.

Stems ending in нн preceded by an unstressed vowel drop one н in the short M form: ме́дленный 'slow', ме́длен, ме́дленна, -о, -ы.

76. Past passive participles ending in нн drop one н in all the short forms: сде́ланный 'done', сде́лан.

сде́лана, -о, -ы. If the accent is on a prefix (§143), the F short form usually accents the ending: у́знанный 'known', у́знан, узнана́, у́знано, -ы. If the accent is on the vowel before the нн, the short forms accent the ending: разделённый 'divided', разделён, разделена́, -о́, -ы́.

77. Past passive participles ending in [*t*] which accent a prefix usually accent the ending of the short form: за́нятый 'occupied', занята́, за́нято, -ы.

78. The adjective ра́д '(he) is glad' has only short forms and accents the stem throughout: ра́да, -о, -ы.

79. Some fail to insert a vowel in the short M form: до́брый 'good', до́бр, добра́, до́бро, -ы.

80. Some accent also the short N and P. endings: лёгкий 'light', лёгок, легка́, -о́, -и́.

81. Some do this optionally: твёрдый 'hard', твёрд, тверда́, твёрдо or твердо́, твёрды or тверды́.

82. Some accent also the inserted vowel in the M: смешно́й 'funny', смешо́н, смешна́, -о́, -ы́.

83. Some that go by §§80, 81, 82 accent the stem in the short N form when it is used as an adverb or impersonally: больно́й 'sick', бо́лен, больна́, -о́, -ы́ (§80), but бо́льно 'painfully' and '(it) hurts'.

84. A few stems of two syllables accent the short F, N, and P. endings (like §80): хоро́ший 'good', хоро́ш, хороша́, -о́, -и́.

85. A few stems of two syllables accent the ending in the short F form and optionally in the N and P. (like §81): высо́кий 'high', высока́, высо́ко́, высо́ки́.

86. A few stems of two syllables which accent the second syllable in the long forms, accent the ending in the short F and the first syllable in the other short forms: дешёвый 'cheap', дёшев, дешева́, дёшево, дёшевы.

87. Many adjectives have no short forms. Those in [*sk*] make an adverb with ending [*i*], often with по- prefixed: автомати́чески 'automatically', по-ру́сски 'in Russian'.

88. большо́й 'big' and ма́ленький 'little' have no short forms; instead they use the short forms of вели́кий 'great' and ма́лый 'small', but with accent on endings (§§84, 80): вели́к, велика́, -о́, -и́ 'is big', ма́л, мала́, -о́, -ы́ 'is little'.

89–92. COMPARATIVE FORMS

89. The *long comparative* form is made with the suffix [ʼ, *eysh*], accented if any of the short forms accent an ending: краси́вый 'beautiful', краси́вейший 'most beautiful'; бе́дный 'poor', бedне́йший 'poorest'. Sometimes наи- is prefixed: наикраси́вейший 'the most beautiful'. The meaning of the long comparative form is 'most . . . .' (*superlative* meaning).

For real comparative meaning one uses the ordinary long form with бо́лее 'more' (or ме́нее 'less') before it: бо́лее (ме́нее) краси́вый го́род 'a more (less) beautiful ci y’. For superlative meaning one uses, more often than the long superlative, a phrase of the adjective **са́мый** ‘same, very, most’ and the ordinary long form: **са́мая краси́вая карти́на** ‘the most beautiful picture’. These statements do not apply to the short comparative form or to the irregular comparatives of §92.

90. The *short comparative* form is made for all genders and P. with the ending [, *eya*], accented if any of the ordinary short forms are accented on the ending: **краси́вее** ‘(he, she, it) is, (they) are more beautiful; more beautifully’, **беднée** ‘poorer; more poorly’. Often **по-** is prefixed, meaning ‘rather’: **приди́те поскорée** ‘come real soon’. It is often preceded by **гора́здо** ‘much’: **гора́здо теплée** ‘much warmer’.

91. Quite a few adjectives have irregular comparative forms, with ending [*i*] in the short form: **высо́кий** ‘high’, **вы́ше** ‘higher’, **вы́сший** (also **высоча́йший**) ‘highest’.

92. Six comparatives are very irregular in form and meaning:

большо́й ‘big’, **вели́кий** ‘great’, **мно́гий** ‘numerous’ (**мно́го** ‘much’): **бо́льший** ‘bigger, greater’, **бо́льше** ‘bigger, greater, more’; as adverb, before adjectives and adverbs, **бо́лее** ‘more’

ма́ленький ‘little’, **ма́лый** ‘small’ (**ма́ло** ‘little’): **ме́ньший** ‘smaller’, **ме́ньше** ‘smaller, less’; as adverb, before adjectives and adverbs, **ме́нее** ‘less’

молодо́й ‘young’: **мла́дший**, **моло́же** ‘younger’

плохо́й ‘bad’: **ху́дший**, **ху́же** ‘worse’

ста́рый ‘old’: **ста́рший**, **ста́рше** ‘older’

хоро́ший ‘good’: **лу́чший**, **лу́чше** ‘better’

These six long comparative forms have real comparative (as well as superlative) meaning: **лу́чший по́езд** ‘a better train’, ‘the best train’. They (and not the ordinary long forms) are used with **са́мый** in superlative meaning (§89): **са́мый лу́чший по́езд** ‘the (very) best train’. Also with **наи-** they have superlative meaning: **наилу́чший по́езд** ‘the best train’.

Also a few other irregular long comparatives have real comparative meaning: **вы́сший** ‘higher’, **ни́зший** ‘lower’.

93–106. PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

93. Pronominal adjectives and pronouns have noun-like forms in the N. and the F A., except for some entirely irregular forms. When they accent the endings [*ovo*, *omu*] the accent is on the last vowel: **кого́** ‘whose?’ **кому́** ‘to whom?’. In the following we place an asterisk before other irregular forms.

94. [*násh-*] ‘our’ and [*vásh-*] ‘your’: M **на́ш**, **на́шего**, **на́шему**, **на́шим**, **на́шем**; N **на́ше**; F **на́ша**, **на́шу**, **на́шей**; P. **на́ши**, **на́ших**, **на́шим**, **на́шими**, **на́ших**

95. [*moy-*] ‘my’, [*tvoy-*] ‘your’, [*svoy-*] ‘one’s own’. M. **мо́й**, **моего́**, **моему́**, **мои́м**, **моём**; N **моё**; F **моя́**,

мою́, *мое́й; P. мои́, мои́х, and so on. Different stress in the expression по-мо́ему 'in my opinion'.

96. [*chy*-] 'whose?': M че́й, чьего́, чьему́, чьи́м, чьём; N чьё; F чья́, чью́, *чье́й; P. чьи́, чьи́х, etc.

97. [*odn*-] 'one, alone': M *оди́н, одного́, одному́, *одни́м, одно́м; N одно́; F одна́, одну́, одно́й, P. *одни́, *одни́х, etc.

98. [*sam*-] 'oneself': M са́м, самого́, самому́, *сами́м, само́м; N само́; F сама́, *самоё, само́й; P *са́ми (note accent), *сами́х, etc.

99. [*ét*-] 'this': M *э́тот, э́того, э́тому, *э́тим, э́том; N э́то; F э́та, э́ту, э́той; P *э́ти, *э́тих, etc.

100. [*t*-] 'that': M *то́т, того́, тому́, *те́м, то́м; N то́; F та́, ту́, то́й; P *те́, *те́х, *те́м, *те́ми, *те́х.

101. [*vs*-] 'all': M ве́сь, всего́, всему́, *все́м, всём; N всё; F вся́, всю́, *все́й; P. *все́, *все́х, etc.

102. An old stem [*s*-] 'this' occurs in a few expressions: сейча́с 'right now', сего́дня 'today', сию́ мину́ту 'in just a minute'.

103. [*on*-] 'he, she, it' makes only N. forms: о́н, она́, оно́, *они́. The other forms are made from a stem [*y*-]: M, N его́, ему́, *и́м, о нём; F е́й; P. *и́х, *и́м, *и́ми, *о ни́х. All A. forms are always like the G. As object after a preposition the forms have [*ŋ*] instead of [*y*]: у него́ 'by him', к нему́ 'to him', с ни́м 'with him', о не́й 'about her', в ни́х 'in them' (but у его́ отца́ 'by his father', с и́х отцо́м 'with their father', where the G. forms are possessive modifiers of nouns).

104. [*k*-] 'who?': *кто́, кого́, кому́, *ке́м, ко́м.

105. [*ch*-] 'what?': *что́, чего́, чему́, *че́м, чём.

106. The personal pronouns are entirely irregular:

	N.	A., G.	D., L.	I.
'I'	я́	меня́	мне́	мно́й, мно́ю
'you'	ты́	тебя́	тебе́	тобо́й, тобо́ю
'oneself'		себя́	себе́	собо́й, собо́ю

	N.	G., A., L.	D.	I.
'we'	мы́	на́с	на́м	на́ми
'you'	вы́	ва́с	ва́м	ва́ми

107–113. COMPOUNDS OF QUESTION WORDS

107. Question words, such as кто́ 'who', что́ 'what', кото́рый 'which', како́й 'what kind of', ка́к 'how', куда́ 'whereto' (отку́да 'wherefrom'), когда́ 'when', где́ 'where', ско́лько 'how much, how many', are compounded in several ways.

108. With ни- prefixed they form negatives: никто́

‘no one’, нигдé ‘nowhere’. A preposition comes between: ни с кéм ‘with no one’.

109. With accented нé- prefixed they form predicative expressions meaning ‘there is no . . .’: нéгде ‘there is no place’, нéкогда ‘there is no time’, нéчего ‘there is nothing’. A preposition comes between: нé с кем говорúть ‘there’s no one to talk with’.

110. With accented нé- prefixed some form indefinites: нéкто ‘a certain person’, нéсколько ‘a certain amount, a certain number, a few’.

111. With кóе- prefixed ‘one and another . . .’: кóе-кто ‘somebody now and then’, кóе-когда ‘at one and another time’.

112. With -то suffixed, ‘some’: ктó-то ‘somebody’, гдé-то ‘somewhere’, кáк-то ‘in some way’.

113. With -нибýдь (or, in old-fashioned language, -лúбо) suffixed, ‘any’: ктó-нибудь ‘anybody’ гдé-нибудь ‘anywhere’, чтó-нибудь ‘anything’.

114–128. NUMBERS

114. With одúн ‘one’ (§97) or longer numbers ending in it, nouns and adjectives have their usual inflection, in S. number: двáдцать одúн рýбль ‘21 roubles’, с двадцатью однúм рублём ‘with 21 roubles’.

115. The numbers from 2 to 4 inflect as follows:

	N.	G., L.	D.	I.
‘two’ M, N	двá	двýх	двýм	двумя́
‘two’ F	двé	”	”	”
‘three’	трú	трёх	трём	тремя́
‘four’	четы́ре	четырёх	четырём	четырьмя́
‘both’ M, N	óба	обóих	обóим	обóими
‘both’ F	óбе	обéих	обéим	обéими

‘one and a half’ M, N: полторá; other cases полýтора

‘one and a half’ F: полторы́; other cases полýторы

When an expression with these numbers or with a longer number ending in 2, 3, 4 is in the N. case (or, when inanimate, in the A. case), a preceding pronominal adjective is N.P., any other adjective is G.P. (or, less often, N.P.) and a noun is G.S.: э́ти двá большúх (большúе) столá ‘these two big tables’; э́ти две́ де́вочки 'those two little girls'. In the other cases, all the words are in agreement: под э́тими двумя́ больши́ми стола́ми 'under these two big tables'; мы́ ви́дели э́тих дву́х де́вочек 'we saw these two little girls' (animate A. like G.).

Expressions with longer numbers ending in 2, 3, 4 have the A. like the N. even for animates, except for a pronominal adjective before the number: э́ти два́дцать две́ де́вочки 'these 22 little girls'; мы́ ви́дели э́тих два́дцать две́ де́вочки 'we saw these 22 little girls'.

116. The numbers пя́ть '5', ше́сть '6', се́мь '7', де́вять '9', де́сять '10', два́дцать '20', три́дцать '30' inflect as nouns of the third declension with accent on the endings: G.D.L. пяти́, I. пятью́.

во́семь '8' has similar forms, but with inserted vowel in the N.: восьми́, восьмью́.

117. The numbers оди́ннадцать '11', двена́дцать '12', трина́дцать '13', четы́рнадцать '14', пятна́дцать '15', шестна́дцать '16', семна́дцать '17', восемна́дцать '18', девятна́дцать '19' have similar forms, with accent on the stem: G.D.L. двена́дцати, I. двена́дцатью.

118. The numbers пятьдеся́т '50', шестьдеся́т '60', се́мьдесят '70', во́семьдесят '80' inflect both parts, with accent on the ending of the first part, and plain final [*t*] in the N.: пяти́десяти, пятью́десятью.

119. The numbers со́рок '40', девяно́сто '90', сто́ '100', полтора́ста '150' in all cases except N. are сорока́, девяно́ста, ста́, полу́тораста.

In noun-like uses сто́ has also P. forms of the third declension: N. ста́, G. со́т, D. ста́м, I. ста́ми, L. ста́х.

120. The numbers две́сти '200', три́ста '300', четы́реста '400', пятьсо́т '500', шестьсо́т '600', семьсо́т '700', восемьсо́т '800', девятьсо́т '900' inflect both parts with noun-like P. forms of сто́, accented: G. двухста́х, D. двумста́м, I. двумяста́ми, L. двухста́х.

121. When expressions with the numbers from 5 to 900 (except those that end in 1, 2, 3, 4), or longer numbers ending in these, are in the N. case, pronominal adjectives before the number are N.P. and other adjectives and nouns are G.P.: э́ти пя́ть больши́х столо́в 'these five big tables'. The A. of such expressions is like the N., even for animates, except for pronominal adjectives: мы́ ви́дели э́тих пя́ть де́вочек 'we saw those five little girls'.

In cases other than N. and A. all the words are in agreement: под э́тими пятью́ больши́ми стола́ми 'under these five big tables'.

122. Larger units, such as ты́сяча 'thousand' (§23), миллио́н 'million', миллиа́рд 'thousand millions, (American) billion', биллио́н 'million millions, (British) billion', are nouns; what is counted is G.P.: ты́сяча киломе́тров 'a thousand kilometers', две́ ты́сячи киломе́тров '2000 km.' With ты́сяча the noun is occasionally put in the same case: с ты́сячью (ты́сячей) рубле́й (рубля́ми) 'with a thousand roubles'.

123. A number after its noun is approximate: го́да два́ 'about two years'.

124. *Ordinal numbers*, such as пе́рвый ‘first’, второ́й ‘second’, тре́тий ‘third’ (§73), четвёртый ‘fourth’, are regular adjectives. In compound numbers only the last part is ordinal and has inflection: в ты́сяча девятьсо́т со́рок пя́том году́ ‘in the year 1945’.

125. The *collective numbers* are дво́е ‘2’, тро́е ‘3’, че́тверо ‘4’, пя́теро ‘5’, ше́стеро ‘6’, се́меро ‘7’, во́сьмеро ‘8’, де́вятеро ‘9’, де́сятеро ‘10’. The cases other than N. have P. adjective endings, accented: двои́х, двои́м, двои́ми. When expressions with these numbers are N. (or A.) the accompanying words are G.P.: дво́е бра́тьев ‘two brothers’; я́ встре́тил двои́х това́рищей ‘I met the two comrades’; с двои́ми това́рищами ‘with two comrades’.

The collective numbers are used of male persons who form a set; also in stating the number of children in a family: у ни́х тро́е дете́й ‘they have three children’. The N. forms of 2, 3, 4 and occasionally of the others, are used with nouns that are P. only or have a special meaning in the P. form: дво́е но́жниц ‘two pairs of scissors’, тро́е часо́в ‘three watches or clocks’.

126. *Fractions* are the nouns полови́на ‘half’, тре́ть F ‘third’, че́тверть F ‘fourth’: три́ че́тверти киломе́тра ‘three fourths of a kilometer’. The other fractions are the F forms of ordinal numbers, sometimes with ча́сть F ‘part’ added: одна́ пя́тая киломе́тра ‘one fifth of a kilometer’. After 2 and higher numbers these are treated like other adjectives (§§115, 121); the noun o which a part is taken is G.S.: три́ пя́тых киломе́тра ‘three fifths of a kilometer’, с пятью́ шесты́ми ли́тра ‘with five sixths of a liter’.

For odd halves one uses forms like два́ с полови́ной киломе́тра ‘two and a half kilometers’.

There are some special forms, such as полти́нник ‘half rouble’ and compounds with пол-.

127. Nouns compounded with пол- ‘half’ have their G.S. ending in the N.S. (and inanimate A.S.): пол-фу́нта ‘half a pound’, полнеде́ли ‘half a week’. In the other cases they have their usual endings, but пол- optionally adds -у: G.S. пол(у)фу́нта, пол(у)[illegible]де́ли, D.S. пол(у)фу́нту, пол(у)неде́ле, and so on.

128. After the preposition по in the meaning ‘so much a piece; so many each’, expressions with оди́н are D.: о́н да́л и́м по одному́ рублю́ ‘he gave them one rouble each’. Expressions with 2, 3, 4, 200, 300, 400, полтора́, полтора́ста, and collective numbers are in their A. form: по́ два рубля́ ‘two roubles each’, по две́сти рубле́й ‘200 roubles each’, по́ трое сане́й ‘three sleighs each’. Expressions with hundreds from 500 on have the number in G. form: по пятисо́т рубле́й ‘500 roubles each’. Expressions with the remaining numbers have the number D. with the noun G.P. (occasionally D.P.): по пяти́ рубле́й (рубля́м) ‘five roubles each’.

129–133. PREPOSITIONS

129. Most prepositions have their object in the G. case; such are без 'without', для 'for', до 'up to', из 'from out of', из-за 'out from behind; on account of', от 'from', пóсле 'after', у 'by, at, in the possession of'.

130. The following take other cases:

A.: про 'about', сквозь 'through', через 'across'.
D.: к 'toward, to'.
I.: мéжду 'between', над 'over', перед 'in front of'.
L.: при 'in the presence of'.

Some take different cases in different meanings:

за A. 'for; into a position behind', I. 'behind, after'.
под A. 'into a position under', I. 'under'.
в A. 'into', L. 'in'.
на A. 'onto', L. 'on'.
о (об) A. 'against', L. 'about'.
с A. 'approximately', G. 'down from', I. 'with'.
по A. 'up to', D. 'along', L. 'after'.

The meanings here given are only samples; Russian and English prepositions do not cover the same ground as to their meanings.

131. Before vowels об is used instead of о: о войнé 'about the war', об áрмии 'about the army'. Before мнé and a few other words beginning with two consonants, the form is обо. But об with A. is used also in some special phrases: óб стену 'against the wall'.

132. The prepositions без, в, из, к, над, под, с, and less often от, перед add -о before various words that begin with two consonants: во ртý 'in the mouth'.

133. The prepositions до, за, из, на, по, под take the stress before certain nouns, which then lose their stress: дó земли 'to the ground', нá пол 'onto the floor', пó двору 'along the yard', пóд гору 'down hill'. One-syllable numbers after за, на, по are similarly treated: зá три рубля́ 'for three roubles'.

Other one-syllable prepositions do this less often: óб стену 'against the wall', óт роду 'from birth'.

134–171. INFLECTION OF VERBS

134. Each verb has two stems, a *present stem* and an *infinitive stem*.

135–141. PRESENT

135. The forms of the present stem are of two types, Type 1 and Type 2.

136. The presents of Type 1 have the following forms; stem [ɲos-] 'carry':

	'I'	'you'	'he'	'we'	'you'	'they'
present:	нес-у́	-ёшь	-ёт	-ём	-ёте	-у́т

imperative: нес-и́ 'carry'
active participle: нес-у́щий 'carrying'
passive participle: нес-о́мый 'being carried'
gerund: нес-я́ 'while carrying'

Before the endings that begin with ё, the sounds [k, are replaced by [ch, zh]: пеку́ 'I bake', печёт ' bakes'; стригу́ 'I shear', стрижёт 'he shears'

137. Presents of Type 2 have the following forms; stem [tvoɼ-] 'make':

	'I'	'you'	'he'	'we'	'you'	'they'
present:	твор-ю́	-и́шь	-и́т	-и́м	-и́те	-я́т

imperative: твор-и́ 'make'
active participle: твор-я́щий 'making'
passive participle: твор-и́мый 'being made'
gerund: твор-я́ 'while making'

The ending of the 'they' form, when unstressed, is usually pronounced [*ut*]: ме́рят 'they measure' [*MʄEɼut*].

Before the ending of the 'I' form, consonants are changed as follows:

[*ƀ, ƒ, ɱ, ƥ, ʋ*] add [*ł*]: лю́бит 'he loves', люблю́ 'I love';

[*đ, ʐ*] are replaced by [*zh*]: хо́дит 'he goes', хожу́ 'I go'; ра́зит 'he strikes', ражу́ 'I strike';

[*ʂ*] is replaced by [*sh*]: бро́сит 'he will throw', бро́шу 'I will throw';

[*ƫ*] is replaced by [*ch*]: пла́тит 'he pays', пла 'I pay';

[*ʂƫ*] is replaced by [*shch*]: чи́стит 'he cleans', чи́ 'I clean';

[*ʐđ*] is replaced by [*zhdzh*]: е́здит 'he rides', е́з 'I ride'.

138. The forms of the present are regularly accent throughout on the stem (accent A) or throughout the endings (accent B): е́ду, е́дет 'I am riding, he riding', accent A; иду́, идёт 'I am walking, he walking', accent B.

139. After [y] the ending of the imperative dro стою́, стои́т; сто́й 'stand'; де́лаю, де́лает: де́лай 'd

When the ending of the imperative is not stressed, is dropped if only one consonant precedes, but this c sonant is then palatalized: ся́ду 'I'll sit down': ся 'sit down' (but чи́сти 'clean', with two consonants)

140. Speaking to a person whom one addresses as **вы́**, or speaking to more than one person, one adds **-те** to the imperative: **неси́те** 'carry', **ся́дьте** 'sit down'.

141. The 'we' form of the present is used in the meaning 'let's': **пойдём** 'let's go there'. It adds **-те** just as does the imperative (§140): **пойдёмте**.

142, 143. INFINITIVE AND PAST

142. The forms of the infinitive stem are as follows; stem [*ḑéla-*] 'do':

infinitive: **де́ла-ть** 'to do'

	M	F	N	P.
past:	**де́ла-л**	**-ла**	**-ло**	**-ли**

active participle: **де́ла-вший** 'having done'

passive participle: **де́ла-нный** 'done'

gerund: **де́ла-вши** 'after doing'

After vowels and when no reflexive ending is added the gerund has also a shorter form **де́ла-в**.

If the infinitive stem ends in [*g, k*], these sounds combine with the ending [*t*] of the infinitive to give [*ch*]: stem [*şek-*], **се́чь** 'to cut', stem [*mog-*], **мо́чь** 'to be able'.

If the stem ends in [*d, t*], these sounds are replaced by [*s*] before the infinitive ending, and drop before the [*l*] of the past and the [*ʃ*] of the active participle and gerund: stem [*şed-*]: **се́сть** 'to sit down', past **се́л**, **се́ла, -о, -и** 'sat down', **се́вший**, **се́вши** 'having sat down'.

If the stem ends in a consonant other than [*d, t*], the ending [*l*] drops in the past M and the [*ʃ*] drops in the active participle and gerund: stem [*stŗig-*]: **стри́чь** 'to shear', past **стри́г**, **стри́гла, -о, -и** 'sheared', **стри́гший, -ши**.

If the stem ends in a consonant the vowel ē is added for the passive participle; stem [*ŋos-*], **несённый** '(one that was) carried'. Before this vowel [*g, k*] are replaced by [*zh, ch*]: stems [*pok-, stŗig-*], **печённый** 'baked', **стри́женный** 'shorn'. If the stem ends in [*i*], this vowel is dropped and ē is added with the consonant changes of §137: stem [*bróşi-*], **бро́шенный** 'thrown'.

143. The accent of the forms that are made from the infinitive stem is regularly on the stem (accent A). If the infinitive stem ends in accented [*á*], the accent is drawn back one syllable in the passive participle: **чита́ть** 'to read', **чи́танный** '(one that has been) read'. This may bring the accent on a prefix: **узна́ть** 'to recognize', **у́знанный** '(one that has been) recognized'. On the short forms of these participles see §76.

144. REFLEXIVE FORMS

144. The *reflexive* forms add [*ca*], written -ся, to the infinitive and to the 'he' form of the present: умыва́ться 'to wash (oneself)', умыва́ется. To forms that end in a consonant and to all participle forms they add [*sa*], written -ся: о́н умыва́лся 'he was washing (himself)', умыва́ющийся '(one who is) washing (himself)', F умыва́ющаяся. To all other forms they ad [*s*], written -сь: я́ умыва́юсь: 'I am washing (myself)' она́ умыва́лась 'she was washing (herself)',

145. VERB PREFIXES

145. Compounds of prefix and verb regularly inflect like the simple verb: сде́лать 'to do (completely)' like де́лать 'to do'.

Punctual compounds (§173) with вы- accent this prefix in all forms: вы́делать 'to work out' (but выде́лывать 'to be working out', because not punctual).

Prefixes that end in a consonant add [*o*] before variou combinations of two consonants: подписа́ть 'to sign' подста́вить 'to set under', but подожда́ть 'to await' from жда́ть 'to wait'. However, с-, as in сде́лать adds [*o*] also in some other forms: содержа́ть 'to contain', from держа́ть 'to hold'.

146–150. REGULAR VERBS

146. Regular verbs are of four classes. In all regular verbs the infinitive stem ends in a vowel.

147. Class 1: all regular verbs except those whose infinitive ends in -овать (-евать), -нуть, -ить. The present stem adds [*y*] to the infinitive stem and is inflected by Type 1 with accent on stem (A). Infinitive stem [*ḑéla-*] 'to do': де́лать; де́лал, -а, -о, -и; де́ланный; present stem [*ḑélay-*]: де́лаю, де́лает; де́лай; [*chitá-*] 'to read': чита́ть; чита́л, -а, -о, -и; чи́танный; [*chitáy-*] чита́ю, чита́ет; чита́й.

148. Class 2: the infinitive stem ends in [*ova*]: in the present stem this is replaced by [*uy*] The present is of Type 1, accent A. Infinitive stem [*ţŗébova-*] 'to demand': тре́бовать; тре́бовал, -а, -о, -и; тре́бованный; present stem [*ţŗébuy-*]: тре́бую, тре́бует; тре́буй

If the final [*a*] of the infinitive stem is accented, th present stem accents the [*u*]: [*inţeŗesová-*] 'to interest' интересова́ть; интересова́л, -а, -о, -и; интересо́ванный; [*inţeŗesúy-*]: интересу́ю, интересу́ет; интересу́й

149. Class 3: the infinitive stem ends in [*nu*]; th present stem drops the [*u*] and inflects in Type 1. Th past passive participle takes [*t*] instead of [*nn*]. Infinitive stem [*ķínu-*] 'to fling': ки́нуть; ки́нул, -а, -о -и; ки́нутый; present stem [*ķin-*]: ки́ну, ки́нет; ки́нь

If the [*u*] of the infinitive is accented, the presen accents the endings (B), and the past passive particip draws back the accent: верну́ть ‘to bring back’; верну́л, -а, -о, -и; повёрнутый ‘turned’; верну́, вернёт; верни́.

150. Class 4: the infinitive stem ends in [*i*], preceded by [*zh*,*sh*] or by a palatal consonant. The present stem drops the [*i*] and is of Type 2. The past passive participle replaces the [*i*] by [*o*], with the same consonant changes as in the ‘I’ form of the present, §137. Infinitive stem [*chíşţi-*] ‘to clean’: чи́стить; чи́стил, -а, -о, -и; чи́щенный; present stem [*chíşţ-*]: чи́щу, чи́стит; чи́сти.

If the [*i*] of the infinitive stem is accented, the present accents the endings: твори́ть; твори́л, -а, -о, -и; творённый; творю́, твори́т; твори́.

151–171. IRREGULAR VERBS

151. Some verbs have shifting accent (accent C) in the present tense: they accent the endings in the ‘I’ form, the imperative, participles, and gerund, but draw it back one syllable in the five other forms: вари́ть ‘to boil’: варю́, ва́ришь, ва́рит, ва́рим, ва́рите, ва́рят; вари́; варя́щий, вари́мый, варя́. Presents of Type 1 with accent C draw back the accent also in the active participle: пишу́ ‘I write’, пи́шет, пи́шущий ‘(one who is) writing’.

152. Verbs which have accent C in the present draw back the accent also in the past passive participle: ва́ренный ‘boiled’.

153. Some one-syllable verbs stress the endings in the past (accent B): мо́чь ‘to be able’, мо́г, могла́, могло́, могли́.

154. Some one-syllable verbs have shifting accent (accent C) in the past; they stress the F ending: бы́ть ‘to be’, бы́л, была́, бы́ло, бы́ли.

155. Some of these stress a prefix in the other three forms (accent D): заня́ть ‘to occupy’, за́нял, заняла́, за́няло, за́няли.

156. Some past forms with accent C or D either always or optionally stress the last syllable in the reflexive forms: заня́ться ‘to occupy oneself’, занялся́, заняла́сь, заняло́сь, заняли́сь.

157–164. IRREGULAR VERBS WITH PRESENT OF TYPE 1

157. Some with infinitive stem in [*a*] drop this vowel in the present stem, and take the consonant changes of §137: ре́зать ‘to cut’, ре́жу, ре́жет; ре́жь.

Some of these accent the [*a*] and have accent C in the present: писа́ть ‘to write’, пишу́, пи́шет; пиши́.

158. Some with infinitive stem in [*ya*] drop [*a*] to make the present stem: наде́яться ‘to hope’, наде́юсь, наде́ется; наде́йся.

Some of these accent the [*a*] and have accent B in the present: смея́ться ‘to laugh’, смею́сь, смеётся; сме́йся.

159. Three verbs with infinitive stem in [*avá*] have

the present stem in [*ay*] with accent B, but form the imperative and gerund regularly: дава́ть 'to give', даю́, даёт; дава́й; даю́щий, даёмый, дава́я. The other two are -знава́ть, -става́ть, §181.

160. Some verbs of Class 3 drop [*nu*] in the past: мёрзнуть 'to freeze', мёрзну, мёрзнет; мёрз, мёрзла, -о, -и.

161. Some verbs with present of Type 1 are entirely irregular; only a few of these have stems of more than one syllable:

е́хать 'to ride' has present е́ду, е́дет The imperative is supplied from a longer verb: поезжа́й; similarly in compounds: уе́хать 'to depart', уезжа́й; compare §185.

коло́ть 'to prick', колю́, ко́лет; past passive participle ко́лотый

умере́ть 'to die' умру́, умрёт; past with accent D: у́мер, умерла́, у́мерло, у́мерли

162. Quite a few verbs whose infinitive stem has only one syllable (apart from prefixes) are irregular. We give the infinitive, the present 'I' and 'he' forms, the imperative, and the past M; we add other past forms and the past passive participle only when these are irregular.

163. The following have one-syllable infinitive stems ending in a vowel:

би́ть 'to beat'; бью́, бьёт; бе́й; би́л, би́тый

бра́ть 'to take'; беру́, берёт; бери́; бра́л, брала́; бра́лся́

бри́ть 'to shave'; бре́ю, бре́ет; бре́й; бри́л; бри́тый

бы́ть 'to be'; present (punctual, with future meaning) бу́ду, бу́дет; бу́дь; бы́л, была́ (не́ был, не была́); -бы́тый. There is no durative present, but compare е́сть 'there is, there are', не́т 'there isn't, there aren't'. The compound забы́ть 'to forget' is regular in the past: забы́л, забы́ла; забы́тый

взя́ть P 'to take'; возьму́, возьмёт; возьми́; взя́л, взяла́; взя́лся́; взя́тый, short F взята́.

ви́ть 'to wind', like би́ть, but with accent C in the past: ви́л, вила́; ви́лся́

вра́ть 'to tell lies'; вру́, врёт; ври́; вра́л, врала́

де́ть P 'to put'; де́ну, де́нет; де́нь; де́л; де́тый

жда́ть 'to wait'; жду́, ждёт; жди́; жда́л, ждала́

жи́ть 'to live'; живу́, живёт; живи́; жи́л, жила́ (не́ жил, не жила́); про́жи́тый '(one that has been) lived through'

зва́ть 'to call'; зову́, зовёт; зови́; зва́л, звала́; звался́

кры́ть 'to cover'; кро́ю, кро́ет; кро́й; кры́л; кры́тый

ли́ть 'to pour', like би́ть, but with accent C, D in the past: ли́л, лила́; лился́; compounds за́лил, залила́; залился́

мы́ть 'to wash', like кры́ть

-ня́ть; with prefix ending in a vowel the present is thus: заня́ть 'to occupy'; займу́, займёт; займи́; with prefix ending in a consonant, подня́ть 'to lift'; поднимý, поднимет; подними́. The past forms are the same in both cases: за́нял, заняла́; занялся́; за́нятый, short F занята́; similarly по́днял, etc.

пе́ть 'to sing'; пою́, поёт; по́й; пе́л; пе́тый

пи́ть 'to drink', like би́ть, but accent C in the past: пи́л, пила́ (не́ пил, не пила́)

рва́ть 'to tear'; рву́, рвёт; рви́; рва́л, рвала́

сла́ть 'to send'; шлю́, шлёт; шли́; сла́л

ста́ть P 'to take one's stand'; ста́ну, ста́нет; ста́нь; ста́л

-ча́ть: нача́ть 'to begin'; начну́, начнёт; начни́; на́чал, начала́; начался́; нача́тый

ши́ть 'to sew', like би́ть

164. The following have one-syllable infinitive stems ending in a consonant:

везти́ 'to cart'; везу́, везёт; вези́; вёз, везла́, -о́, -и́; везённый

вести́ 'to lead'; веду́, ведёт; веди́; вёл, вела́, -о́, -и́; ведённый

же́чь 'to burn'; жгу́, жжёт; жги́; жёг, жгла́, -о́, -и́; сожжённый 'burnt up'

итти́ 'to go'; иду́, идёт; иди́; шёл, шла́, шло́, шли́; past active participle ше́дший, gerund ше́дши. The initial [*i*] drops after the prefix при-: притти́ (прийти́) 'to arrive', приду́, придёт; пришёл, пришла́, and so on; also optionally in the imperative after по-: поди́ 'go'. Otherwise after prefixes the [*i*] is replaced by [*y*]: найти́ 'to find'; найду́, найдёт; нашёл, and so on; пойти́ 'to go to a place'. Prefixes ending in a consonant add [*o*] in all forms: сойти́ 'to go down', сойду́, сойдёт: сошёл, and so on

кла́сть 'to lay'; кладу́, кладёт; клади́; кла́л

ле́зть 'to climb'; ле́зу, ле́зет; ле́зь; ле́з, ле́зла

ле́чь P 'to lie down'; ля́гу, ля́жет; ля́г; лёг, легла́, -о́, -и́

мо́чь 'to be able'; могу́, мо́жет (accent C); помоги́ 'help'; мо́г, могла́, -о́, -и́

нести́ 'to carry'; несу́, несёт; неси́; нёс, несла́, -о́, -и́; несённый

па́сть P 'to fall'; паду́, падёт; пади́; па́л

пе́чь 'to bake'; пеку́, печёт; пеки́; пёк, пекла́, -о́, -и́; печённый

плы́ть 'to swim'; плыву́, плывёт; плыви́; плы́л, плыла́

расти́ 'to grow'; расту́, растёт; расти́; ро́с, росла́, -о́, -и́

се́сть P 'to sit down'; ся́ду, ся́дет; ся́дь; се́л

стри́чь 'to shear'; стригу́, стрижёт; стриги́; стри́г, стри́гла, -о, -и; стри́женный

165–170. IRREGULAR VERBS WITH PRESENT OF TYPE 2

165. Quite a few verbs of Class 4 have accent C in the present: купи́ть P 'to buy'; куплю́, ку́пит; купи́; купи́л, -а, -о, -и; ку́пленный.

The verbs -ложи́ть 'to lay', сади́ть 'to seat' have this accent: положи́ть P 'to lay', положу́, поло́жит; усади́ть P 'to seat', усажу́, уса́дит; but their reflexive forms without prefix are regular: ложи́ться 'to lie down', ложу́сь, ложи́тся; сади́ться 'to sit down', сажу́сь, сади́тся.

The verb -лучи́ть has accent C in получи́ть P 'to receive', получу́, полу́чит, but is regular (B) in случи́ться P 'to happen': случи́тся 'it will happen'.

166. Some verbs of Class 4 in [*d*, *t*] have irregular consonant changes: победи́ть 'to conquer', побеждённый 'conquered'; посети́ть 'to visit'; посещу́, посети́т; посещённый.

167. Some verbs with infinitive stem in [*a*], preceded by [*ch*, *sh*, *shch*, *zh*, *y*], drop this vowel in the present stem, which has forms of Type 2: слы́шать 'to hear'; слы́шу, слы́шит.

Those which stress the [*a*] have accent B in the present: стоя́ть 'to stand'; стою́, стои́т. But a few draw back the accent in the gerund: сто́я́ 'while standing'; лежа́ть 'to lie', лежу́, лежи́т, лёжа.

Accent C in the present: держа́ть 'to hold', держу́, де́ржит; держи́.

168. Some verbs with infinitive stem in [*e*] drop this vowel in the present stem, which has forms of Type 2: ви́деть 'to see', ви́жу, ви́дит.

Those which stress the [*e*] have accent B in the present: лете́ть 'to fly'; лечу́, лети́т; лети́.

Accent C in the present: смотре́ть 'to look'; смотрю́, смо́трит; смотри́.

169. The one-syllable verb спа́ть 'to sleep' has сплю́, спи́т; спи́; спа́л. спала́.

170. роди́ть 'to give birth' has the past родила́ (also роди́лся́ 'was born') in punctual meaning.

171. VERBS WITH IRREGULAR PRESENT

171. Four verbs, two of them with one-syllable infinitive stems, are entirely irregular in the present: бежа́ть 'to run', хоте́ть 'to want', да́ть P 'to give', е́сть 'to eat':

'I'	'you'	'he'	'we'	'you'	'they'	imperative
бегу́	бежи́шь	бежи́т	бежи́м	бежи́те	бегу́т	беги́
хочу́	хо́чешь	хо́чет	хоти́м	хоти́те	хотя́т	хоти́
да́м	да́шь	да́ст	дади́м	дади́те	даду́т	да́й
е́м	е́шь	е́ст	еди́м	еди́те	едя́т	е́шь

In the past, да́ть has да́л, дала́, да́ло́, да́ли (не́ дал, не дала́), да́лся́; compounds, прода́ть 'to sell', про́дал, продала́, про́дало, -и, продался́. The others are regular in the past: бежа́л, хоте́л, е́л.

172–192. ASPECTS OF VERBS

172. Each verb has one of two *aspects;* it is either *durative* (D) or *punctual* (P).

Durative verbs have two meanings:

Actual durative: something is actually going on at the time spoken of: я́ пишу́ 'I am writing'; я́ писа́л 'I was writing'. Some actions which, by their nature, take an appreciable amount of time are spoken of in this way; thus, я́ спа́л means not only 'I was sleeping', but also 'I slept, I have slept'; ка́к вы́ спа́ли? 'how did you sleep?'

Iterative durative: the action is repeated or consists of parts (such as moving in several directions or in no fixed direction) or its occurrence is considered as a general question ('did you ever?') or as a matter of principle: я́ ча́сто пишу́ 'I often write'; о́н хо́дит наза́д и вперёд 'he is walking (he walks) back and forth'; вы́ ему́ писа́ли? 'have you (ever) written to him?'

Punctual verbs tell of a single completed action, without regard to repetition, time taken, or parts of the act: я́ написа́л ему́ 'I wrote (once) to him; I have written (this once) to him'. The present of a P verb has future meaning: я́ напишу́ письмо́ 'I'll write a (the) letter (once, and get it done)'.

The infinitive after verbs like бу́ду 'I will', ста́ну 'I'll start, I will', начну́ 'I'll begin', ко́нчу 'I'll finish' is always durative: я́ бу́ду писа́ть 'I'll be writing; I'll write repeatedly, I'll do some writing'; a P verb speaks of the action without regard to its parts.

173. Simple verbs (that is, verbs not compounded with a prefix) are D: писа́ть.

Simple verbs compounded with a prefix are P: написа́ть. Some such compounds have nearly the same meaning as the simple verb, except for the difference of aspect. In the vocabulary we name the prefix or prefixes which do not plainly change the meaning, as, "писа́ть D 'to write' (на-)".

In some instances the simple verb does not occur: поня́ть P 'to understand', отве́тить P 'to answer'.

Most compounds differ plainly in meaning from the simple verb: подписа́ть P 'to sign'. For these, a *compound durative* verb of the same meaning is made by means of a *compounding durative* verb, which is derived from the simple verb. Thus, подпи́сывать D 'to sign (to be signing, to sign repeatedly, etc.)' is made from -пи́сывать, the compounding durative of писа́ть. Most compounding durative verbs occur only in this way, with prefixes.

The compounding durative verbs are made as follows.

174. If the infinitive stem of the simple verb ends in a consonant, the compounding D adds accented [*á*] to this stem: мо́чь 'to be able', stem [*mog-*], compounding D -мога́ть: помо́чь P 'to help', помога́ть D.

175. If the infinitive stem of the simple verb has only one syllable and ends in a vowel, the compounding D adds accented [*vá*]: мы́ть 'to wash', compounding D -мыва́ть: умы́ть P 'to wash off', умыва́ть D.

176. If the infinitive stem of the simple verb ends in a vowel other than [*i*] or [*nu*] and has more than one syllable, the compounding D drops this vowel and adds [*iva*] with stress on the preceding syllable: писа́ть 'to write', compounding D -пи́сывать: подписа́ть P 'to sign', подпи́сывать D. If the syllable before [*iva*] contains [*o*], this is replaced by [*á*]: рабо́тать 'to work', compounding D -раба́тывать: зарабо́тать P 'to earn', зараба́тывать D.

177. If the infinitive stem of the simple verb has more than one syllable and ends in [*i*], the compounding D drops this vowel and adds accented [*á*] with the consonant changes of §137: чи́стить 'to clean', compounding D -чища́ть: вы́чистить P 'to clean out', вычища́ть D.

178. If the infinitive stem of the simple verb ends in [*nu*], the compounding D drops this and adds accented [*á*]: мёрзнуть 'to freeze', compounding D -мерза́ть: замёрзнуть P 'to freeze up', замерза́ть D.

179–192. IRREGULAR FORMATION OF ASPECTS

179. Some verbs in [*i*] form the compounding D by dropping this vowel and adding [*iva*] with the consonant changes of §137: проси́ть 'to request', compounding durative -пра́шивать: спроси́ть P 'to ask', спра́шивать D.

A few do this without consonant change: вы́бросить P 'to throw out', выбра́сывать D.

180. Some verbs add [*á*] with various irregularities:

бра́ть 'to take': собра́ть P, собира́ть D 'to collect'

дохну́ть P 'to take a breath': отдохну́ть P, отдыха́ть D 'to rest'

кипе́ть 'to boil': закипе́ть P, закипа́ть D 'to come to a boil'

-ня́ть: поня́ть P, понима́ть D 'to understand'

по́мнить 'to remember': напо́мнить P, напомина́ть D 'to remind'

рва́ть 'to tear': сорва́ть P, срыва́ть D 'to tear off'

сла́ть 'to send': присла́ть P, присыла́ть D 'to send over'

-сну́ть: просну́ться P, просыпа́ться D 'to wake up'

-ча́ть: нача́ть P, начина́ть D 'to begin'

181. зна́ть 'to know' and ста́ть P 'to take one's stand' have as compounding duratives the irregular verbs -знава́ть, -става́ть, §159: узна́ть P, узнава́ть D 'to recognize', я́ узна́ю 'I shall recognize', я́ узнаю́ 'I recognize': вста́ть P, встава́ть D 'to get up', я́ вста́ну 'I shall get up', я́ встаю́ 'I get up'.

Similarly, да́ть P uses дава́ть D, §190.

182. Other irregular compounding duratives appear in the following sections.

183–186. SPECIAL ITERATIVE VERBS

183. Some simple D verbs are used only in actual meaning (§172) and have special *iterative verbs* by their side: о́н идёт в шко́лу 'he is going to school, he is on his way to school', о́н хо́дит в шко́лу 'he goes to school, he attends school'.

184. The verbs ви́деть 'to see' and слы́шать 'to hear' have the iteratives вида́ть, слыха́ть, which are used only in the past and the infinitive.

185. Punctual compounds are made mostly from the actual verb, less often from the iterative; they are matched by one or two compounding durative verbs.

бежа́ть: бе́гать 'to run' (о́н бежи́т в шко́лу 'he is running to school'; о́н бе́гает в саду́ 'he is running about in the garden'); the compounding D verbs are -бега́ть and -бе́гивать: убежа́ть P, убега́ть D 'to run away'; сбе́гать P 'to run there and back'; вы́бегать P, выбе́гивать D 'to run all over a place'.

е́хать: е́здить 'to ride'; compounding D -езжа́ть: уе́хать P, уезжа́ть D 'to depart'; съе́здить P 'to drive there and back'; изъе́здить P, изъезжа́ть D 'to travel all over a place'. Compare §160.

ле́зть: ла́зить 'to climb'; compounding D -леза́ть: взле́зть P, взлеза́ть D 'to climb up'; сла́зить P 'to climb up and back'.

плы́ть: пла́вать 'to swim, to travel on water'; compounding D -плыва́ть: переплы́ть P, переплыва́ть D 'to swim or sail across'; испла́вать P 'to sail all over'.

186. In several instances the iterative verbs serve also as compounding duratives. Some of them also have punctual compounds which are matched by longer compounding duratives.

бы́ть: быва́ть 'to be'; забы́ть P, забыва́ть D 'to forget'.

везти́: вози́ть 'to cart'; довезти́ P, довози́ть D 'to cart all the way'.

вести́: води́ть 'to lead'; довести́ P, доводи́ть D 'to lead all the way'; проводи́ть P, провожа́ть D 'to escort'.

итти́; ходи́ть 'to go'; уйти́ P, уходи́ть D 'to go away'; сходи́ть P 'to go there and back'; уходи́ть P, уха́живать D 'to tend, to court'.

лете́ть: лета́ть 'to fly'; compounds: улете́ть P, улета́ть D 'to fly away'; излета́ть P 'to fly all over a place'.

нести́: носи́ть 'to carry'; принести́ P, приноси́ть D 'to bring'; износи́ть P, изна́шивать D 'to wear out'.

187–189. SIMPLE PUNCTUAL VERBS

187. Some simple verbs are punctual and have corresponding D verbs by their side. Compounds are made from the P verb and are matched by a compounding D verb:

бро́сить P, броса́ть D 'to throw'; вы́бросить P, выбра́сывать D 'to throw out'

ко́нчить P, конча́ть D 'to end'; доко́нчить P, дока́нчивать D 'to bring to completion'

па́сть P, па́дать D 'to fall'; вы́пасть P, выпада́ть D 'to fall out'.

188. Some such pairs have compounds also (or only) from the D verb, with one compounding durative matching these P compounds. To this type belong especially some P verbs in -нуть, Class 3.

кри́кнуть P, крича́ть D 'to yell'; вскри́кнуть P, вскри́кивать D 'to cry out'; закрича́ть P 'to call out'.

ло́пнуть P, ло́паться D 'to burst'; вло́паться P, вло́пываться D 'to get into a fix'.

ле́чь P, ложи́ться D 'to lie down'; see for the compounds §190.

се́сть P, сади́ться D 'to sit down'; пересе́сть P, переса́живаться D 'to change cars'; усади́ть P, уса́живать D 'to seat'

ста́ть P, станови́ться D 'to take a stand, to begin, to become'; веста́ть P, встава́ть D 'to get up' (§181); останови́ть P, остана́вливать D 'to bring to a stop'.

189. A few simple P verbs have no D verb by their side: верну́ть P 'to bring back'; for D meaning one uses возвраща́ть D 'to bring back', compound D of возврати́ть P; compounds: заверну́ть P, завёртывать D 'to wrap up'.

190. Some simple P verbs have by their side a D verb which serves also as compounding durative:

да́ть P, дава́ть D 'to give'; прода́ть P, продава́ть D 'to sell'.

де́ть P, дева́ть D 'to put'; наде́ть P, надева́ть D 'to put on (a garment)'.

пусти́ть P, пуска́ть D 'to let go'; отпусти́ть P, отпуска́ть D 'to grant leave'.

реши́ть P, реша́ть D 'to decide'; разреши́ть P, разреша́ть D 'to give permission'.

ступи́ть P, ступа́ть D 'to step'; отступи́ть P, отступа́ть D 'to withdraw'.

яви́ть P, явля́ть D 'to show'; прояви́ть P, проявля́ть D 'to display, to develop (a photograph)'.

189. Beside купи́ть P 'to buy' the D is покупа́ть; compounds: закупи́ть P, закупа́ть D 'to buy up'..

190–192. IRREGULAR SETS

190. Some aspect sets are entirely irregular

бра́ть D, взя́ть P 'to take'; собра́ть P, собира́ть D 'to collect'.

ве́шать D, пове́сить P 'to hang up'; also ве́шать D, све́сить P 'to weigh (something)'; these P verbs are compounds of ве́сить D 'to have (such and such) weight'. Compounds: заве́шать P, заве́шивать D 'to cover with hangings'; разве́сить P, разве́шивать D 'to weigh out'.

говори́ть D, сказа́ть P 'to speak, to say'; the P is a compound of -каза́ть (каза́ться 'to seem'). Compounds: разговори́ть P, разгова́ривать D 'to converse'; приказа́ть P, прика́зывать D 'to command'.

кла́сть D, положи́ть P 'to lay'; the P is a compound of -ложи́ть (ложи́ться 'to lie down', §188). Compounds: разложи́ть P (less polite, раскла́сть P), раскла́дывать D 'to distribute in places'; разложи́ть P, разлага́ть D 'to analyze'; уложи́ть P, укла́дывать D 'to pack (one's things)'.

лови́ть D, пойма́ть P 'to catch'; улови́ть P, ула́вливать D 'to catch up'.

191. Some verbs are both D and P: жени́ться 'to get married (of a man)', ра́нить 'to wound', роди́ть 'to give birth' (§170), телеграфи́ровать 'to telegraph'.

192. Some compounds or seeming compounds of simple verbs are durative: наде́яться 'to hope', по́мнить 'to remember', предви́деть 'to foresee', содержа́ть 'to contain', состоя́ть 'to consist', стира́ть 'to wash (clothes)', счита́ть 'to count', уважа́ть 'to respect'.

Compounds with без- are durative: беспоко́ить 'to disturb'.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

A.	accusative
AF	(AM, AN, AP.) adjective in feminine (masculine, neuter, plural) form used like a noun
D	durative
D.	dative
F	feminine
G.	genitive
I.	instrumental
intr.	intransitive
L.	locative
M	masculine
N	neuter
N	nominative
P	punctual
P.	plural
S.	singular
tr.	transitive

RUSSIAN-ENGLISH WORD LIST

Nouns of the second declension which accent the endings or which have an inserted vowel in the N.S. are given with the G.S. form: клю́ч, -á; ве́тер, -тра; **оте́ц, -тцá**.

Nouns whose N.S. is written with final ь are marked M if they are masculines of the second declension, and F if they are feminines of the fourth declension.

Irregular forms are shown in parentheses; for the present tense of irregular verbs the 'I' form and the 'he' form are given. For words of very irregular form reference is made to sections of the Summary of Russian Grammar.

To help show the meaning of the English words used in translating the Russian words, we add brief hints in parentheses: ло́паться. ... "to blow out (of a tire)".

The words "whereto?" and "where?" are used in this way. Thus, "тудá thither, there (whereto?)" means that this Russian word is used of movement to a place ("I'm going there"); and "та́м there (where?)" means that this Russian word is used of position (or movement) in a place ("He is there", "He is playing there").

The abbreviations "intr." (for "intransitive") and "tr." (for "transitive") are used in a similar way. "Intr." means that the English word is to be taken as intransitive, not acting on any person or object; thus, "просыпа́ться. . . to wake up (intr.)" means that the Russian word is used in the sense of ceasing to sleep ("I woke up early"). "Tr." means that the English word is to be taken as transitive, acting on some person or object; thus, "буди́ть . . . to wake up (tr.)" means that the Russian word is used in the sense of rousing someone from sleep ("Don't wake him up").

а but, and
а́вгуст August
авиа́тор aviator; **авиа́ция** aviation, air force
авто́бу́с auto-bus, bus
автомоби́ль M automobile

а́дрес (P. **-á**) address
Азия Asia
а́кр acre
Алекса́ндр Alexander
алло́ hello (over the telephone)

Аме́рика America; **америка́нец, -нца** American (man); **америка́нка** American (woman); **америка́нский** American

англи́йский English; **англича́нин** (P. **-ча́не, -ча́н, -ча́нам**) Englishman; **англича́нка** Englishwoman; **Англия** England

Андре́й Andrew

Анна Anna

апельси́н orange

апре́ль M April

апте́ка pharmacy, drug store

а́рмия army

артилле́рия artillery; **артиллери́йский** of artillery

арши́н (G.P. **арши́н**) arshin; 0.711 meter

Астраха́нь F Astrakhan (city)

ата́ка attack

Атланти́ческий океа́н Atlantic Ocean

а́х Oh!

аэродро́м airport; **аэропла́н** airplane

бага́ж, -а́ baggage, luggage

ба́к tank (for liquids)

Баку́ indecl. M Baku (city)

ба́нк bank (banking house)

ба́нка can (upright), jar, container

бара́нина mutton

баталье́н battalion

батаре́я battery

бе́гать D (iterative of **бежа́ть**) to run about

бе́дный poor

бежа́ть (бегу́, бежи́т, §171) D to run **(по-;** iterative **бе́гать)**

без, безо without

безопа́сный safe

бе́лый (бе́ло́, бе́лы́) white

бельё linens, washing, underwear

бензи́н gasoline, petrol; **бензи́новый** of gasoline

бе́рег (G. **-у; на берегу́; на́ берег;** P **-а́)** shore, bank (of stream)

беспоко́ить D to disturb **(о-)**

библиоте́ка library

биле́т ticket

би́ть (бью́, бьёт; би́тый) D to beat; **-ся** to fight **(по-)**

благодари́ть D to thank **(по-)**

бли́зкий (бли́же; ближа́йший) near; **(вокза́л) бли́зко** it's near (to the station)

блю́до dish

бо́б, -а́ bean

бо́г god

бога́тый (бога́че) rich

бое́ц, -йца́ fighter, soldier

бо́й (в бою́; P. бои́) fight, battle

бо́лее more (before adjectives and adverbs, §89)

боле́ть (боли́т) D to hurt (intr.), to ache, to pain

бо́лт, -а́ bolt

бо́ль F pain

больни́ца hospital

больно́й (больно́, -ы́) sick; AM and **больна́я** AF sick person, patient; **бо́льно** (adverb and impersonal) painfully; it hurts

бо́льше more, any more, bigger; **бо́льший** bigger (comparative of **большо́й, вели́кий, мно́го**; see also **бо́лее**)

большинство́ majority

большо́й (short forms replaced by **вели́к, велика́, -о́, -и́**; comparative, see **бо́льше**) big, large

бо́мба bomb; **бомби́ть** D to bomb

Бори́с Boris

бо́рщ, -а́ beet soup, borshch

боти́нка (S. also in M form, **боти́нок, -нка**) shoe

бо́чка barrel; bochka, 492 liters

боя́ться (бою́сь, бои́тся) D to be afraid, to fear (G.)

бра́т (P. **-ья, -ьев, -ьям**) brother

бра́ть (беру́, берёт; брала́, бра́лся́) D, **взя́ть (возьму́, возьмёт; взяла́, взя́лся́; взя́тый, взята́)** P to take

брига́да brigade

бри́дж bridge, whist

бри́тва razor; **безопа́сная бри́тва** safety razor

бри́ть (бее́ю, бре́ет; бри́тый) D to shave (tr.); **-ся** to shave (intr.) **(по-)**

броса́ть D, **бро́сить** P to throw

брю́ки (брю́к, -ам; P. only**)** trousers

буди́ть (бужу́, бу́дит) D to wake (tr.) **(раз-)**

бу́дущий future, next

бу́ква letter (of the alphabet)

була́вка pin; **англи́йская була́вка** safety pin

бума́га paper; **бума́жка** scrap of paper; bill (paper money); **бума́жник** bill-fold

бу́ря storm

бу́шель M bushel

бы (added to past tense) would

быва́ть D (iterative of **бы́ть**) to be repeatedly, ever to be

бы́стрый (бы́стр) quick

бы́ть (была́, не́ был; P present **бу́ду, бу́дет;** compare **е́сть, не́т)** D to be (iterative **быва́ть**)

бюро́ (indeclinable) N office, bureau

в, во (with A.) into; (with L.) in

ваго́н railway car

ва́м, ва́ми, see **вы́**

ва́нна (G.P. **ва́нн**) bathtub; **ва́нная** AF bathroom

Ва́ня M Johnnie (short name for **Ива́н**)

вари́ть (варю́, ва́рит) D to boil (tr.), to cook **(с-)**

ва́с, see **вы́**

Васи́лий Basil

ва́ш (§94) your

вбега́ть D, **вбежа́ть (вбегу́, вбежи́т,** §171**)** P to run in

вдева́ть D, **вде́ть (вде́ну, вде́нет; вде́тый)** P to put in; **вде́ть ни́тку в иго́лку** to thread a needle

ведро́ (P. **вёдра)** pail; vedro, 12.2 liters

везде́ everywhere

везти́ (везу́, везёт; вёз, везла́, -о́, -и́) D to cart, to convey on a vehicle **(по-;** iterative **вози́ть)**

вели́кий (for comparative see **бо́льше**) great (short forms with irregular accent replace those of **большо́й)**

величина́ size

Ве́ра Vera

верёвка rope, cord, string

ве́рить D to believe (D.)

верну́ть P to bring back; **-ся** to come or go back

ве́рный true, faithful; **ве́рно** that's true

верста́ (A. **вёрсту;** P. **вёрсты, вёрст, вёрстам)** verst, 1.067 kilometer

ве́рх (G. **-у; на верху́;** P. **верхи́)** top, upper surface; **верхо́м** on horseback

вершо́к, -шка́ vershok, 4.445 centimeters

ве́с (G. **-у;** P. **веса́)** weight; P. **весы́** scales, balance; **ве́сить** D to weigh (intr.)

весна́ (A. **вёсну;** P. **вёсны)** spring; **весно́й** in spring

вести́ (веду́, ведёт; вёл, вела́, -о́, -и́) D to lead, to conduct **(по-;** iterative **води́ть)**

ве́сь (§101) all; **всё** everything; all the time, always; **всего́** in all, all together; **все́** all (of them), everybody

ве́тер, -тра (на ветру́) wind

ветчина́ ham

ве́чер (P. **вечера́)** evening; **ве́чером** in the evening

ве́чный permanent

вешать D, **пове́сить** P to hang up; **све́сить** P to weigh (tr.)

ве́щь (P. **ве́щи, веще́й)** F thing

взлеза́ть D, **взле́зть (-ле́зу, -ле́зет; -ле́з, -ле́зла)** to climb up

взлета́ть D, **взлете́ть (-лечу́, -лети́т)** P to fly up

взойти́ P of **всходи́ть**

взя́ть P of **бра́ть**

вида́ть D (iterative of **ви́деть,** used only in infinitive and past) to see repeatedly, to be able to see, to have (ever) seen

ви́деть (ви́жу, ви́дит) D to see **(у-;** iterative **вида́ть)**

ви́д view; appearance; **ви́дный** visible; **(дере́вню) ви́дно** one can see (the village)

ви́лка fork

виногра́д (G. **-у)** grapes (collective)

ви́нт, -а́ screw; **винти́ть** D to screw

винто́вка rifle

висе́ть (вишу́, виси́т) D to hang (intr.)

ви́ть (вью́, вьёт; вила́, ви́лся́; ви́тый) to wind, to twist

включа́ть D, **включи́ть** P to include

вку́с taste; **вку́сный** tasty, good to eat

Владивосто́к Vladivostok (city)

влета́ть D, **влете́ть (влечу́, влети́т)** P to fly in

вме́сте together

внача́ле in the beginning

вни́з down, downstairs (whereto?); **внизу́** down below, downstairs (where?)

во, for **в**

во́-время on time

во́все altogether

вода́ (A. **во́ду;** P. **во́ды, во́д, во́да́м)** water

води́ть (вожу́, во́дит) D (iterative of **вести́**) to lead repeatedly

во́дка vodka

вое́нный of war, military

во́здух air

вози́ть (вожу́, во́зит). D (iterative of **вести́**) to cart repeatedly, to carry about on a vehicle

во́зле beside, next to

возраста́ть D, **розрасти́ (-растý, -растёт; -ро́с, -росла́, -о́, -и́)** P to grow up, to grow greater

война́ (P. **во́йны, во́йн, во́йнам)** war

войти́ P of **входи́ть**

вокза́л large railway station

Во́лга the Volga (river)

во́лос (P. **во́лосы, воло́с, волоса́м)** single hair; **P.** hairs, hair

вопро́с question

во́семь (§116) eight; **восьмо́й** eighth; **во́сьмеро** (§125) set of eight; **восемна́дцать** (§117) eighteen; **восемна́дцатый** eighteenth; **во́семьдесят** (§118) eighty; **восьмидеся́тый** eightieth; **восемьсо́т** (§120) eight hundred

воскресе́нье Sunday

восто́к (the) east; **восто́чный** eastern

восхо́д rising, rise

во́сьмеро etc., see **во́семь**

во́т here (it) is, here (they) are

впада́ть D, **впа́сть (впаду́, впадёт; впа́л)** P to fall in

вперёд forward, ahead

вра́г, -а́ enemy; **вра́жеский** of the enemy

вра́ть (вру́, врёт; врала́) to tell lies **(со-)**

вра́ч, -а́ physician, doctor; **зубно́й вра́ч** dentist

вре́мя N (§64) time; **во вре́мя (войны́)** during (the war)

всегда́ always

всё, всего́ see **ве́сь; всё-таки** nevertheless

вскоре́ soon

вспомина́ть D, **вспо́мнить** P to remember

встава́ть (встаю́, встаёт; встава́й) D, **вста́ть (вста́ну, вста́нет)** P to get up

встреча meeting; **встреча́ть** D, **встре́тить** P to meet

всходи́ть (-хожу́, -хо́дит) D, **взойти́ (-йду́, -йдёт; -шёл, -шла́, -о́, -и́)** to go up, to rise

всю́ду everywhere

вто́рник Tuesday

второ́й second

вхо́д entrance; **входи́ть (вхожу́, вхо́дит)** D, **войти́ (-йду́, -идёт; -шёл, -шла́, -о́, -и́)** P to go in

вчера́ yesterday

вы́ (§106) you

выезжа́ть D, **вы́ехать (-еду, -едет)** P to move out

вы́йти P of **выходи́ть**

вымыва́ть D, **вы́мыть (-мою, -моет; -мытый)** P to wash clean

выпива́ть D, **вы́пить (-пью, -пьет; -питый)** P to drink up

высо́кий (высока́, высо́ко́, высо́ки́; вы́ше, вы́сший, §92**)** high

высота́ height

вы́стирать P to wash out, to wash (clothes, linen)

вы́стрел a shot; **вы́стрелить** P to fire a shot, to shoot

вы́ход exit; **выходи́ть (-хожу́, -хо́дит)** D, **вы́йти (-йду, -йдет; -шел, -шла)** P to go out

вышина́ height

вяза́ть (вяжу́, вя́жет) D to tie, to knit **(с-)**

газе́та newspaper

га́йка screw nut

га́лстук necktie

гара́ж garage

гво́здь, -здя́ (P. **гво́зди, гвозде́й)** M nail; **гво́здик** small nail, tack

где́ where

гекта́р hectare, 2.471 acres

генера́л general

Гео́ргий George

Герма́ния Germany

глава́ (P. **гла́вы)** heading, chapter; **гла́вный** principal, chief

гла́з (в глазу́; P. **глаза́, гла́з, глаза́м)** eye

глубина́ depth

глубо́кий (глубока́, глубо́ко́, глубо́ки́; глу́бже, глубоча́йший) deep

говори́ть D, **сказа́ть (скажу́, ска́жет)** P to say, to tell; **говори́ть** D to speak **(по-)**

говя́дина beef

го́д (в году́; за́ год, на́ год; P. **го́ды, годо́в;** G.P. mostly replaced by **ле́т)** year

годи́ться D to be good (for something, **на** with A.) **(при-)**

голова́ (A. **го́лову; за́ голову, на́ голову;** P. **го́ловы, голо́в, голова́м)** head

го́лод hunger; **голо́дный (го́лоден, голодна́)** hungry

гора́ (A. **го́ру; на́ гору, по́д гору;** P. **го́ры, го́р, гора́м)** mountain

гора́здо much (before comparatives, §90)

горе́ть (горю́, гори́т) D to burn (intr.)

го́рло (G.P. **го́рл)** throat

го́род (за́ город, за́ городом; P. **города́)** city; **городо́к, -дка́** small city, town; **городско́й** of the city, municipal

горо́х (G. **-у)** peas (collective)

го́рький (го́рче, горча́йший) bitter; **Го́рький** Gorky (city)

горя́чий (горяча́, -о́, -и́) hot

го́спиталь M large hospital, military hospital

господи́н (P. **господа́, госпо́д, господа́м)** master; gentleman; Mr.

го́сть (P. **го́сти, госте́й)** M guest; **пое́хать в го́сти** to go stay with people; **гостеприи́мство** hospitality; **гости́ная** AF living room, parlor; **гости́ница** hotel

гото́вый ready; **гото́вить** D to make ready; to prepare; to cook **(при-)**

гра́дус degree; **гра́дусник** thermometer

граждани́н (P. **гра́ждане, гра́ждан, гра́жданам)** citizen (man); Mr.; **гра́жда́нка** citizen (woman); Miss, Mrs.

гра́мота reading and writing; **гра́мотный** literate

грани́ца boundary, border (of a country); **за грани́цу** to foreign parts, abroad (whereto?); **за границе́й** in foreign parts, abroad (where?); **из-за грани́цы** from abroad

гребёнка; гре́бень, -бня M; **гребешо́к, -шка́** comb

гроза́ (P. **гро́зы)** thunderstorm

гро́м (P. **гро́мы, громо́в)** thunder, peal of thunder

гру́дь (на груди́; P. **-ди, -де́й)** F chest, breast

грузови́к, -а́ truck

гру́ша pear

гря́зь (в грязи́) F dirt; **гря́зный (гря́зно́, гря́зны́)** dirty

губа́ (P. **гу́бы, гу́б, губа́м)** lip

гуля́ть D to take a walk, to stroll, to idle **(по-)**

да́ yes; **да** and, but

дава́ть (даю́, даёт; дава́й) D, **да́ть (да́м, да́ст,** §171**; дала́, да́ло́, не́ дал, да́лся́)** P to give

давно́ long ago, ever since long ago, for a long time already

да́же also, even

далёкий (далека́, далёко́, далёки́; да́льше, да́лее) far; **далеко́** it's far

да́льный distant; **дальне́йший** further

да́нные AP data

да́ть P of **дава́ть**

два́ (§115) two; **дво́е** (§125) set of two; **двена́дцать** (§117) twelve; **двена́дцатый** twelfth; **два́дцать** (§116) twenty; **двадца́тый** twentieth; **две́сти** (§120) two hundred; **двухсо́тый** two hundredth

две́рь (P. две́ри, двере́й) F door

дво́р, -а́ yard, farm, court; **на дворе́** out of doors; **дво́рник** house porter, janitor

двухме́стный with two places

дева́ть D, **де́ть (де́ну, де́нет; де́тый)** P to put

де́вочка little girl; **де́вушка** young unmarried woman

девяно́сто (§119) ninety

де́вять (§116) nine; **девя́тый** ninth; **де́вятеро** (§125) set of nine; **девятна́дцать** (§117) nineteen; **девятна́дцатый** nineteenth; **девятьсо́т** (§120) nine hundred

дека́брь, -бря́ M December

де́лать D to do, to make **(с-)**

дели́ть (делю́, де́лит) D to divide

де́ло (P. дела́) affair, matter; **в са́мом де́ле** really; **на са́мом де́ле** actually; P. **дела́** affairs, business; **по дела́м** on business

де́нь, дня́ M day; **тре́тьего дня́** day before yesterday; **днём** in daytime, in the afternoon

де́ньги (де́нег, деньга́м) P. money

дере́вня (P. дере́вни, дереве́нь, деревня́м) village; **в дере́вне** in the country; **в дере́вню** to the country

де́рево (P. дере́вья, -вьев, -вьям) tree; wood

держа́ть (дережу́, де́ржит) D to hold; **-ся** to hold fast (to, **за** A.)

де́сять (§116) ten; **деся́тый** tenth; **де́сятеро** (§125) set of ten

десяти́на desyatine, 1.0925 hectare

де́ти (дете́й, де́тям, детьми́, де́тях) P. children (generally replaces the P. of **ребёнок**)

де́ть P of **дева́ть**

дешёвый (дёшев, дешева́; деше́вле) cheap

диви́зия division (in army)

длина́ length

дли́нный long

для for

Дми́трий Dmitry, Demetrius

Дне́пр, -а́ the Dnepr (river)

до up to, to; before (the time of)

до́брый (до́бр) good, kind

дово́льный satisfied, content; **дово́льно** enough; that's enough

доезжа́ть D, **дое́хать (-е́ду, -е́дет)** P to ride or drive all the way

до́ждь, -ждя́ M rain

дойтú P of **доходúть**
дóктор (P. докторá) doctor
дóлгий (lasting a) long (time); **дóлго (дóльше, дóлее)** for a long time
дóлжный (должнó, -ы́) owing, proper; *short forms:* needing to, supposed to: **я́ дóлжен пойтú** I have to go there
дóллар dollar
дóм (на домý; ú3 дому, нá дом; P. домá) house, home; **дóма** at home; **дóмик** little house
домкрáт jack
домóй home (whereto?)
дорóга road, way; **желéзная дорóга** railway
дорогóй (дóрог, дорогá; дорóже) dear
доскá (A. дóску; P. дóски, досóк, доскáм) board
доставáть (-стаю́, -стаёт; -ставáй) D, достáть (-стáну, -стáнет) P to manage to get, to procure
достáточно enough
доходúть (-хожý, -хóдит) D, дойтú (-йдý, -йдёт; -шёл, -шлá, -ó, -ú) P to go all the way (not in a vehicle)
дóчь (§63) F; **дóчка** daughter
дровá (дрóв, дровáм) P. firewood
дрýг (P. друзья́, друзéй, друзья́м) friend
другóй other, another, different
дýмать D to think
дурáк, -á blockhead, fool
дюйм Russian inch, 2.5 centimeters

Евгéний Eugene
Еврóпа Europe; **европéйский** European
егó, see **óн**
едúнственный only, sole
её, see **óн**
éздить D (iterative of **éхать**) to ride repeatedly
éй Бóгу honest to goodness!
éй, see **óн**
Екатерúна Catherine
Елизавéта Elizabeth
емý, see **óн**
éсли, éслибы, éслиб if
éсть there is, there are; compare **бы́ть, нéт**
éсть (éм, éст; éшь, §171; **éл)** D to eat **(съ-)**
éхать (éду, éдет; поезжáй) to ride, to drive **(по-;** iterative **éздить)**
ещё still, yet

ж, see **же**
жáлко; жáль it's too bad
жáркий (жáрче) hot (of weather)
ждáть (ждý, ждёт; ждалá) to wait **(подо-)**

же (sometimes shortened to **ж**; emphasizes the preceding word) however; **о́н же** but he; **то́т же** the same one
жела́ть D to wish, to desire **(по-)**; **жела́ние** wish, desire
желе́зо iron; **желе́зный** (of) iron; **желе́зная доро́га** railway
жёлтый (жёлто́, жёлты́) yellow
желу́док, -дка stomach
жена́ (P. **жёны**) wife; **жена́тый** married (of a man); **жени́ться (женю́сь, же́нится)** D and P to get married, to marry (**на** L.; of a man)
же́чь (жгу́, жжёт; жёг, жгла́, -о́, -и́) D to burn (tr.) **(с-)**
живо́т, -а́ belly
живо́тное AN animal
жи́знь F life
жиле́т vest, waistcoat
жи́ть (живу́, живёт; жила́, не́ жил) D to live

за (with A.) behind (whereto?), for; (with I.) behind (where?), after; **что́ за** what kind of
забо́р fence
забыва́ть D, **забы́ть (-бу́ду, -бу́дет; -бы́тый)** P to forget
завёртывать D, **заверну́ть (-вёрнутый)** P to wrap up
зави́нчивать D, **завинти́ть** P to screw on
заво́д large factory, works
за́втра tomorrow
за́втрак lunch, breakfast; **за́втракать** D to eat lunch or breakfast **(по-)**
загора́ться D, **загоре́ться (-горю́сь, -гори́тся)** P to catch fire
за́д (на заду́; P. **зады́)** rear part, rear
заезжа́ть D, **зае́хать (-е́ду, е́дет)** P to drive in for a while
зажига́ть D, **заже́чь (-жгу́, -жжёт; -жёг, -жгла́, -о́, -и́)** P to set on fire, to light; **-ся** to start burning, to catch fire
зайти́ P of **заходи́ть**
зака́з order (as, at a restaurant); **зака́зывать** D, **заказа́ть (-кажу́, -ка́жет)** P to order
зака́лывать D, **заколо́ть (-колю́, -ко́лет; -ко́лотый)** P to pin fast
закипа́ть D, **закипе́ть (-киплю́, -кипи́т)** P to come to a boil
заколо́ть P of **зака́лывать**
закрыва́ть D, **закры́ть (-кро́ю, -кро́ет; -кры́тый)** P to cover, to close, to shut
заку́ривать D, **закури́ть (-курю́, -ку́рит)** P to start smoking (tobacco), to have a smoke
зали́в bay, gulf
замерза́ть D, **замёрзнуть (-мёрз, -мёрзла)** P to freeze, to freeze up (intr.)

за́муж: выходи́ть, вы́йти за́муж to get married, to marry (**за** A.; of a woman); **за́мужем** married (**за** I.; of a woman)

занима́ть D, **заня́ть (займу́, займёт; за́нял, заняла́, заняло́сь; за́нятый, занята́)** P to occupy; **-ся** to occupy oneself, to study

за́пад the west; **за́падный** western

запа́с supply, provision; **запасно́й** spare, extra

заплати́ть (-плачу́, -пла́тит) P to pay (for, **за** A.)

запломбирова́ть P to fill (a tooth)

зараба́тывать D, **зарабо́тать** P to earn

зара́нее beforehand

зате́м after that, then

зато́ (to make up) for that

захо́д going down, setting; **заходи́ть (-хожу́, -хо́дит)** D, **зайти́ (-иду́, -идёт; -шёл, -шла́, -о́, -и́)** P to go down, to set (of the sun), to go in for a while

захоте́ть (-хочу́, -хо́чет, §171) P to want

заче́м what for, why

заявля́ть D, **заяви́ть (-явлю́, -я́вит)** P to announce, to proclaim

зва́ть (зову́, зовёт; звала́, звался́) D to call **(по-)**; **ка́к его́ зову́т?** what is his name?

звезда́ (P. звёзды) star

звони́ть D to ring; to call (someone, D.) on the telephone **(по-)**; **звоно́к, -нка́** bell; ringing

зда́ние building

зде́сь here (where?)

здоро́вый healthy, in good health, well

здра́вствуй, здра́вствуйте how do you do? hello!

зелёный (зе́лен, зелена́) green

земледе́лие agriculture; **земледе́льческий** agricultural

земля́ (A. **зе́млю; до́ земли, на́ землю,** P. **зе́мли)** earth, ground, land; **земно́й** terrestrial

зе́ркало (P. зеркала́) mirror, looking glass

зима́ (A. **зи́му;** P. **зи́мы, зи́м, зи́ма́м)** winter; **зимо́й** in winter; **зи́мний** of winter

знако́мить D to make acquainted; **-ся** to get acquainted **(по-)**; **знако́мый** acquainted; AM, **знако́мая** AF acquaintance

зна́ть D to know **(у-)**

зу́б (P. зу́бы, зубо́в) tooth; **зубно́й** of the teeth, dental

и and; also, even: **и о́н** even he, he too; **и . . . и** both . . . and: **и о́н и она́** both he and she

Ива́н Ivan, John

игла́ (P. **и́глы, и́гл, и́глам)**; **иго́лка** needle

игра́ть D to play

из, изо from out of, from (the inside of)

извиня́ть D, **извини́ть** P to excuse; **извини́те** pardon me!

из-за out from behind; on account of

измеря́ть D, **изме́рить** P to measure out; **измере́ние** measuring, measurement

изна́шивать D, **износи́ть (-ношу́, -но́сит)** P to wear out (tr.)

изо, see **из**

изуча́ть D, **изучи́ть (-учу́, -у́чит)** P to study

или or; **или . . . или** either . . . or

Илья́ Elija

и́мя (§64) N. (given) name

иногда́ sometimes

инструме́нт instrument, tool

интере́сный interesting; **интересова́ть** D to interest; **-ся** to be interested (in, I.)

и́нч inch

иска́ть (ищу́, и́щет) D to look for, to seek **(по-)**

Ита́лия Italy

итти́ (иду́, идёт; шёл, шла́, -о́, -и́) D to walk, to go, to come (not riding or driving) **(по-;** iterative **ходи́ть)**

ию́ль July

ию́нь June

к, ко (with D.) toward, to, to the home or place of

кавале́рия cavalry

ка́ждый every, each

Каза́нь F Kazan (city)

каза́ться (кажу́сь, ка́жется) D to seem

ка́к how; **как ра́з** just now, just then

како́й what kind of, which, what

кало́ша overshoe

ка́мера inner tube

Кана́да Canada

кана́л canal

капита́н captain

каранда́ш, -а́ pencil

карма́н pocket

карти́на picture

карто́шка potatoes (collective)

Каспи́йское мо́ре the Caspian Sea

ка́сса cash desk; ticket office

кату́шка spool

каю́та cabin (on a ship)

ква́рта quart

квадра́т square; **квадра́тный** square

кварти́ра apartment, flat

Ки́ев Kiev (city)

кило́ (indeclinable) N; **килогра́мм** kilogram, 2.205 pounds

киломе́тр kilometer, 0.621 mile

кино́ (indeclinable) N moving picture show, movies

кипе́ть (киплю́, кипи́т) D to boil (intr.)

кла́сть (кладу́, кладёт) D, **положи́ть (-ложу́, -ло́жит)** P to lay, to place, to put
ключ, -а́ key; wrench; **францу́зский ключ** monkey wrench
кни́га book; **кни́жка** little book, handy book; **кни́жный** of books, for books
ко, see **к**
ковёр, -вра́ rug, carpet
когда́ when
ко́е- (prefixed to question words) one and another: **ко́е-когда** at one time and another
ко́жа skin, hide, leather
колесо́ (P. колёса) wheel
коллекти́вный collective
коло́ть (колю́, ко́лет; ко́лотый) D to prick, to pin
колхо́з collective farm
кольцо́ (P. ко́льца) ring
ко́мната room; **меблиро́ванная ко́мната** furnished room
конве́рт envelope
конду́ктор conductor
коне́ц, -нца́ end; **коне́чно** of course; **конча́ть** D, **ко́нчить** P to finish, to end (tr.); **-ся** to come to an end, to end (intr.)
конто́ра office
копе́йка kopek
корзи́на basket; **корзи́нка** little basket
коридо́р corridor, hallway
кори́чневый brown
коро́бка package (in which something comes, as cigarettes), flat container, flat can (as, for sardines)
коро́ва cow
коро́ткий (ко́ро́ток, коротка́, ко́ро́тко́, ко́ро́тки́; коро́че) short
костю́м suit of clothes
котле́та meat ball
кото́рый which
ко́фе (indeclinable) M coffee
краси́вый beautiful, pretty
кра́сный red
кре́пкий (кре́пче) firm, solid, strong
крестья́нин (P. крестья́не, крестья́н, крестья́нам) peasant, farmer; **крестья́нка** peasant woman; **крестья́нство** peasantry, farm population
крича́ть (кричу́, кричи́т) D, **кри́кнуть** P to cry, to yell
крова́ть F bedstead, bed
кро́ме except, beside, in addition to
кры́ть (кро́ю, кро́ет; кры́тый) D to cover
кры́ша roof; **кры́шка** cover
крючо́к, -чка́ hook
кто́ (§104) who

куда́ whereto

Куйбы́шев Kuybishev (city)

купе́ (indeclinable) N compartment (in a railway carriage)

купи́ть P of **покупа́ть**

кури́ть (курю́, ку́рит) D to smoke (tobacco) **(по-)**

ку́рица (P. usually **ку́ры, ку́р, ку́рам)** hen, chicken

кусо́к, -ска́ piece

ку́хня kitchen

ку́шать to eat

ла́вка shop, store

ла́зить D (iterative of **ле́зть**) to climb about

ла́мпа lamp

ле́вый left-hand

лёгкий (легко́, -и́; ле́гче, легча́йший) light (not heavy; compare **све́тлый**); easy; **лёгкие** AP lungs

лёд, льда́ (G. **-у́; на льду́; по́ льду)** ice

лежа́ть (лежу́, лежи́т) to lie, to recline **(по-)**

ле́зть (ле́зу, ле́зет; ле́з, ле́зла) D to climb (iterative **ла́зить**)

лека́рство medicine

Ленингра́д Leningrad (city)

ле́с (в лесу́; и́з лесу; P. **леса́)** woods, forest

ле́стница ladder; stairway

лета́ть D (iterative of **лете́ть**) to fly

лете́ть (лечу́, лети́т) D to fly (iterative **лета́ть**)

ле́то (P. **лета́)** summer; **ле́том** in summer (for G.P. **ле́т,** see also **го́д**)

лётчик flyer

ле́чь P of **ложи́ться**

ли whether: **я́ не зна́ю, придёт ли о́н** I don't know whether he will come; also in questions that call for yes or no: **до́ма ли он?** is he at home?

ли́ния line

ли́ст, -а́ sheet, leaf; **(P. ли́стья, -стьев, -стьям)** leaves (of plants), foliage

ли́тр liter, 1.057 quarts

ли́ть (лью́, льёт; лила́, ли́лся́; ли́тый) D to pour (tr.); **-ся** to pour (intr.)

лихора́дка fever

лицо́ (P. **ли́ца)** face

лови́ть (ловлю́, ло́вит) D, **пойма́ть** P to catch

ло́жечка small spoon, teaspoon

ложи́ться D, **ле́чь (ля́гу, ля́жет; лёг, легла́, -о́, -и́)** P to lie down

ло́жка spoon

локомоти́в locomotive

ло́паться D, **ло́пнуть** P to burst, to blow out (of a tire)

ло́шадь (P. ло́шади, лошаде́й, I лошадьми́) F horse; **на лошадя́х** in a horse-drawn vehicle
луна́ moon
лу́чше, лу́чший better (comparative of **хоро́ший)**
люби́ть (люблю́, лю́бит) D to love, to like
Любо́вь F Lubov (woman's name)
лю́ди (люде́й, лю́дям, людьми́, лю́дях) P. people (used as P. of **челове́к,** except in number expressions)

магази́н (big) store
ма́зать (ма́жу, ма́жет) D to smear, to grease **(с-)**
ма́й May
майо́р major
ма́ленький (short forms replaced by **ма́л, мала́, -о́, -ы́;** comparative, see **ме́ньше)** little
ма́лый (for comparative see **ме́ньше)** small; **ма́ло** little, a little, a few (the short forms with irregular accent replace short forms of **ма́ленький)**
ма́льчик little boy
Ма́рк Mark
ма́рка postage stamp
ма́рт March
Ма́рья Mary
ма́сло oil; butter
ма́ть (§63) mother
Ма́ша short name for **Ма́рья**
маши́на machine (as, automobile, typewriter)
ме́бель F, furniture; **меблиро́ванный** with furniture. furnished
медици́на (art or study of) medicine; **медици́нский** medical
ме́дленный slow
ме́жду (with I.) between, among
Ме́ксика Mexico
ме́лочь F small coins, change money (collective)
ме́нее less (before adjectives and adverbs, §89)
ме́ра measure, size
мёрзнуть (мёрз, мёрзла) D to freeze (intr.)
ме́рить D to measure **(с-)**
ме́сто (P. места́) place; piece of baggage
ме́сяц month
мета́лл metal; **мета́лловый** (of) metal
мета́ть (мечу́, ме́чет) D to fling
ме́тр meter, 3.280 feet; **метри́ческий** metric
мешо́к, -шка́ bag, sack
милиционе́р policeman
миллиме́тр millimeter
миллио́н million
ми́лость F kindness; **ми́лости про́сим** please do! (used in inviting or welcoming a guest or in putting something at someone's disposal)

ми́ля mile
ми́мо (with G.) past
мину́та minute; **мину́тка** (just a) minute
ми́р peace; world; **ми́рный** peaceable, peaceful
Миха́л Michael
мла́дший younger (comparative of **молодо́й**)
мно́гий numerous; **мно́гие** AP. many people; **мно́го** (comparative replaced by **бо́льше**) much, many, a lot
мо́жно it is possible, one can, one may
мо́й (§95) my
мо́лния lightning
молодо́й (мо́лод, молода́; моло́же, мла́дший) young
молоко́ milk
мо́лот big hammer; **молото́к, -тка́** hammer
моме́нт moment
мо́ре (на́ море, за́ море, по́ морю; P. **моря́)** sea
моро́з frost; **моро́зить** D to freeze (tr.); **моро́женое** AN ice cream
морти́ра mortar (in artillery)
Москва́ Moscow (city); **Москва́-Река́** the Moscow River
мо́ст (с мо́сту; на мосту́; P. **мосты́)** bridge
мо́чь (могу́, мо́жет; мо́г, могла́, -о́, -и́) D to be able **(с-)**; **мо́жет бы́ть** maybe, perhaps
му́ж (P. **мужья́, муже́й, мужья́м)** husband
мужчина M man (as opposed to woman)
музе́й museum
му́зыка music
мука́ flour
му́ха fly
мы́ (§165) we
мы́ло soap
мы́ть (мо́ю, мо́ет; мы́тый) D to wash **(вы́-, по-, у-)**
мя́гкий (мя́гче, мягча́йший) soft
мя́со meat

на (with A.) onto; (with L.) on, at
наве́рно surely, doubtless, probably
наве́рх up, upstairs (whereto?); **наверху́** up above, upstairs (where?)
над (with I.) over, above
надева́ть D, **наде́ть (-де́ну, -де́нет; -де́тый)** P to put on (a garment)
наде́жда hope; **Наде́жда** Nadezhda (woman's name)
наде́яться (наде́юсь, наде́ется) D to hope
на́до it is necessary; **мне́ на́до** I have to
наза́д back; **(неде́лю) тому́ наза́д** (a week) ago
наи- (prefixed to long comparative) most: **наилу́чший** the best

найти́ P of **находи́ть**

нака́чивать D, **накача́ть** P to pump up (a tire)

накла́дывать D, **наложи́ть (-ложу́, -ло́жит)** P to lay on

наконе́ц finally, at last

накрыва́ть D, **накры́ть (-кро́ю, -кро́ет; -кры́тый)** P to cover up; to set (the table)

налага́ть D, **наложи́ть (-ложу́, -ло́жит)** P to lay on

нале́во to the left, at the left

налива́ть D, **нали́ть (-лью́, -льёт; на́лил, налила́)** P to pour on or in

на́м, на́ми, see **мы́**

напада́ть D, **напа́сть (-паду́, -падёт; -па́л)** P to assault, to attack **(на** A.); **нападе́ние** assault, attack

напива́ться D, **напи́ться (-пью́сь, -пьётся; -пила́сь)** P to drink one's fill (of, G.); to get drunk

написа́ть (-пишу́, -пи́шет) P to write down, to write

наполня́ть D, **напо́лнить** P to fill

напомина́ть D, **напо́мнить** P to remind (D.)

напра́во to the right; at the right

наприме́р for example, for instance

напро́тив opposite

наро́д (G. **-у)** nation, people (collective); **мно́го наро́ду** lots of people; **наро́дный** of the people, people's

на́с see **мы́**

насеко́мое AN insect

населя́ть D, **насели́ть** P to settle, to populate; **населе́ние** population

наступа́ть D, **наступи́ть (-ступлю́, -сту́пит)** P to approach, to set on, to attack **(на** A.); **наступле́ние** attack

научи́ть (-учу́, -у́чит) P to teach (someone A., something D.); **-ся** to learn (D.)

находи́ть (-хожу́, -хо́дит) D, **найти́ (-йду, -йдёт; -шёл, -шла́, -о́, -и́)** P to find; **-ся** to be (in a place)

национа́льный national; **национа́льность** F nationality

нача́ло beginning; **начина́ть** D, **нача́ть (-чну́, -чнёт; на́чал, начала́, начался́)** P to begin (tr.); **-ся** to begin (intr.)

на́ш (§94) our

не not; **не́-** (prefixed to question words) there is no; some

не́бо (P. **небеса́, небе́с, небеса́м)** sky

небольшо́й not large, small

не́где there is no place

него́, see **он**

негра́мотный illiterate

неда́вно not long ago, recently, since recently

недалеко́ (it is) not far, (it is) near

неде́ля week

нездоро́вый unwholesome; unwell

не́й, see **о́н**

не́когда there is no time

не́кого (§104) there is no one

не́который some

не́кто (§104) someone

нельзя́ it is impossible, one can't, one may not

нём, see **о́н**

не́мец, -мца German (man); **не́мка** German (woman), **неме́цкий** German

немно́го a little, a few; **немно́жко** a little bit

нему́, see **о́н**

нену́жный not needed, useless

неожи́данный unexpected

непра́вда untruth, lie, falsehood

непра́вильный incorrect

непра́вый not right, (in the) wrong: **о́н непра́в** he is wrong

неприя́тель M enemy

неприя́тный unpleasant

нера́з more than once, repeatedly

несерьёзный not serious

не́сколько a few, several

нести́ (несу́, несёт; нёс, несла́, -о́, -и́) D to carry **(по-;** iterative **носи́ть)**

несча́стие unhappiness, misfortune, accident

не́т no; (negative of **е́сть**) there is no, there are no: **мя́са не́т** there is no meat

неужéли can it be? you don't mean to say?

не́фть F crude oil; **нефтяно́й** of oil

нехоро́ший not good; **нехорошо́** not well

не́чего (§105) there is nothing

ни not even, nor; **ни . . . ни** neither . . . nor; (prefixed to question word) no: **нигде́** nowhere

-нибудь (suffixed to question words) any: **где́-нибудь** anywhere

нигде́ nowhere

ни́з (P. низы́) lower part, bottom

ни́зкий (ни́же, ни́зший) low

ника́к in no way, not by any means

никогда́ never

Никола́й Nicholas

никто́ (§104) nobody

никуда́ to no place, nowhere (whereto?)

ни́м, ни́ми, see **о́н**

ниско́лько not in the least

ни́ть F; **ни́тка** thread, piece of thread; P. **ни́тки** (some) thread

ни́х, see **о́н**

ничего́ (§105) nothing

но́ but

но́вый new

нога́ (A. **но́гу; на́ ногу, на́ ноги;** P. **но́ги, но́г, нога́м)** foot, leg

но́готь, -гтя (P. **но́гти, ногте́й)** M nail (on finger or toe)

но́ж, -а́ knife; **но́жик** small knife, pocket knife

но́жницы (но́жниц, но́жницам) P. scissors

но́ль, -ля́ M zero

но́мер (P. **номера́)** number (as a label, as on a hotel room, on a telephone); hotel room, rented room; P. rooming house, hotel

но́с (на носу́; P. **носы́)** nose

носи́льщик baggage porter

носи́ть (ношу́, но́сит) D (iterative of **нести́**) to carry, to wear

носово́й of or for the nose

носо́к, -ска́ (G.P. **носо́к** or **носко́в)** sock

но́чь (P. **но́чи, ноче́й)** night; **но́чью** at night

ноя́брь, -бря M November

нра́виться D to look good, seem pleasing, please (D.): **мне́ нра́вится Москва́** I like Moscow **(по-)**

ну́ well, now, come on

ну́жный useful, needed, necessary; (short fo[illegible]**та книга мне́ нужна́** I need this book; **ну́жно** one must; **не ну́жно** one mustn't

ну́ль, ну́мер, for **но́л, но́мер**

о́ Oh!

о, об, обо (with A.) against; (with L.) about

о́ба both (§115)

обе́д dinner; **обе́дать** D to eat dinner **(по-)**

обеща́ть D to promise; **обеща́ние** promise

о́блако (P. **облака́, -ко́в)** cloud

о́бласть (P. **о́бласти, областе́й)** F territory, province

обо, see **о**

обойти́ P of **обходи́ть**

о́браз manner, way (of doing); **таки́м о́бразом** in this way

обра́тно back (again)

обруча́ть D, **обручи́ть** P to affiance; **-ся** to get engaged **(с** I.**)**; **обручённый** engaged (to be married)

обставля́ть D, **обста́вить** P to furnish (a house, a room)

обходи́ть (-хожу́, -хо́дит) D, **обойти́ (-йду́, -йдёт; -шёл, -шла́, -о́, -и́)** P to go around; **-ся** to deal in such and such a way **(хорошо́, нехорошо́)** with **(с** I.**)**; to manage without, do without **(без** G.**)**

объезжа́ть D, **объе́хать (-е́ду, -е́дет)** P to drive around (a place, A.)

обыкнове́нный usual, customary

о́вощь F (usually in P., **о́вощи**) vegetable

ого́нь, -гня́ M fire

огро́мный huge, vast

одева́ть D, **оде́ть (оде́ну, оде́нет; оде́тый)** P to dress (tr.); **-ся** to get dressed

одея́ло bed cover, blanket

оди́н (§97) one, alone, (all) by oneself; **оди́ннадцать** (§117) eleven; **оди́ннадцатый** eleventh

ожида́ть D to expect

о́зеро (P. озёра) lake

ока́зывать D, **оказа́ть (окажу́, ока́жет)** P to show forth; **-ся** to turn out to be, to show up as (I.)

океа́н ocean

окно́ (P. о́кна) window

о́коло around, near

октя́брь, -бря́ M Octob[illegible]

Ольга Olga

о́н (§103) he, she, it, they

опа́сный dangerous; **опа́сность** F danger

опера́ция operation

опя́ть again

о́сень F autumn; **о́сенью** in autumn

осма́тривать D, **осмотре́ть (осмотрю́, осмо́трит)** P to inspect, to examine; **осмо́тр** inspection

остава́ться (остаю́сь, остаётся; остава́йся) D, **оста́ться (оста́нусь, оста́нется)** P to remain, to stay

оставля́ть D, **оста́вить** P to leave (tr.), to park (an automobile)

остально́й remaining, other

остана́вливать D, **останови́ть (остановлю́, остано́вит)** P to bring to a stop, to stop (tr.); **-ся** to come to a stop, to stop (intr.)

остано́вка stopping place, stop (of trains, buses, street cars)

оста́ться P of **остава́ться**

осторо́жный careful; **осторо́жно** look out!

от, ото from

отвёртка screw driver

отве́т answer; **отвеча́ть** D, **отве́тить** P to answer (D.; **на** A.)

отви́нчивать D, **отвинти́ть** P to unscrew

отдава́ть (-даю́, -даёт; -дава́й) D, **отда́ть (-да́м, -да́ст,** §171; **о́тдал, отдала́)** P to hand over, to give back

отделя́ть D, **отдели́ть (-делю́, -де́лит; -делённый)** P to divide off, to separate

отдыха́ть D, **отдохну́ть** P to rest (intr.); **о́тдых** a rest

оте́ц, отца́ father

открыва́ть D, **откры́ть (-кро́ю, -кро́ет; -кры́тый)** P to open

отку́да from where

отлета́ть D, **отлете́ть (-лечу́, -лети́т)** P to fly away; to leave (by plane)

отли́чный excellent

отмора́живать D, **отморо́зить** P to freeze (a part of one's body)
относи́ть (-ношу́, -но́сит) D, **отнести́ (-несу́, -несёт; -нёс, -несла́, -о́, -и́)** P to carry off, away
отойти́ P of **отходи́ть**
оторва́ть P of **отрыва́ть**
о́тпуск leave, furlough; **отпуска́ть** D, **отпусти́ть (-пущу́, -пу́стит)** P to grant leave
отрыва́ть D, **оторва́ть (-рву́, -рвёт; -рвала́)** P to tear off (tr.)
отступа́ть D, **отступи́ть (-ступлю́, -сту́пит)** P to step away, to withdraw (intr.)
отсю́да from here
отту́да from there
отхо́д departure; **отходи́ть (-хожу́, -хо́дит)** D, **отойти́ (-йду́, -йдёт; -шёл, -шла́, -о́, -и́)** P to go away, to depart, to leave (intr.)
отчего́ why
о́тчество patronymic, Russian middle name
офице́р officer
официа́нт waiter; **официа́нтка** waitress
о́чень very
очки́ (очко́в, очка́м) P. eyeglasses

Па́вел, -вла Paul
па́дать D, **па́сть (паду́, падёт; па́л;** more usually **упа́сть)** P to fall
паке́т package
па́лец, -льца finger, toe
па́луба deck (of ship)
пальто́ (indeclinable) N overcoat
па́мятник monument; **па́мять** F memory
пансио́н boarding house
папиро́са cigarette
па́ра pair
Пари́ж Paris
парикма́хер barber; **парикма́херская** AF barber shop
па́рк park
па́р steam; **парово́з** locomotive; **парохо́д** steamship
па́ста paste; **зубна́я па́ста** toothpaste
па́сть P of **па́дать**
Па́ша short name for **Праско́вья** (woman's name)
пе́рвый first
перед (with I.) in front of
передава́ть (-даю́, -даёт; -дава́й) D, **переда́ть (-да́м, -да́ст,** §171; **пе́редал, передала́)** P to give over, hand, pass (something to someone at table)
переезжа́ть D, **перее́хать (-е́ду, -е́дет)** P to ride or drive across, to run over (tr.)
перейти́ P of **переходи́ть**
перекрёсток, -стка crossroads, crossing
переменя́ть D, **перемени́ть (-меню́, -ме́нит)** P to change (tr.)

переодева́ть D, **переоде́ть (-де́ну, -де́нет; -де́тый)** P to change the clothes of; **-ся** to change one's clothes

перепи́сывать D, **переписа́ть (-пишу́, -пи́шет)** P to write over, to copy over, to catalog; **пе́репись** F copy, list, census

переходи́ть (-хожу́, -хо́дит) D, **перейти́ (-йду́, -йдёт; -шёл, -шла́, -о́, -и́)** P to go across, to cross (intr. and tr.)

перо́ (P. пе́рья, -рьев, -рьям) feather; pen; **ве́чное перо́** fountain pen

перча́тка glove

Петербу́рг St. Petersburg (city; old name of Leningrad)

Пётр, -а́ Peter

пе́ть (пою́, поёт; пе́тый) D to sing **(с-)**

пехо́та infantry

пе́чь (пеку́, печёт; пёк, пекла́, -о́, -и́) D to bake

пе́чь (на печи́; P. пе́чи, пече́й) F; **пе́чка** stove (for heating)

пи́во beer

пиджа́к, -а́ coat, jacket

пила́ (P. пи́лы) saw

пиро́г, -а́ pie, pastry

писа́ть (пишу́, пи́шет) D to write **(на-)**

письмо́ (P. пи́сьма) letter (that one sends)

пи́ть (пью́, пьёт; пила́, не́ пил) D to drink **(вы́-)**

пла́вать D (iterative of **плы́ть**) to swim, to travel by water

пла́кать (пла́чу, пла́чет) D to weep, to cry

плати́ть (плачу́, пла́тит) D to pay **(за-)**

плато́к, -тка́ (piece of) cloth; **носово́й плато́к** handkerchief

платфо́рма platform

пла́тье (G.P. пла́тьев) clothing; (woman's) dress

плита́ (P. пли́ты) stove for cooking

пло́мба filling in a tooth; **пломбирова́ть D** to fill (a tooth) **(за-)**

пло́ский (пло́ще) flat

плохо́й (ху́же, ху́дший) bad

пло́щадь (P. -ди, -де́й) space, area; open square in a city

плы́ть (плыву́, плывёт; плыла́) D to swim, to travel on water, to sail (iterative **пла́вать**)

по (with A.) up to; (with D.) along, over; (with L.) after; (before numbers, §128) so much each; **по-** (prefixed to adverb form) in the manner of: **по-ру́сски** in Russian; (prefixed to short comparative) somewhat, quite: **поскоре́е** somewhat faster, real fast, as fast as you can

побе́да victory; **победи́ть** P of **побежда́ть**

побежа́ть (-бегу́, -бежи́т, §171) P to run

побежда́ть D, **победи́ть** P to have the victory, to defeat

поби́ть (-бью́, -бьёт; -би́тый) P to give a beating to (A.)

побри́ть -бре́ю, -бре́ет) P to shave (tr.); **-ся** to shave (intr.)

повезти́ (-везу́, -везёт; -вёз, -везла́, -о́, -и́) P to cart, to convey (on a vehicle)

повёртывать D, **поверну́ть (-вёрнутый)** P to make a turn, to turn (intr. and tr.)

повести́ (-веду́, -ведёт; -вёл, -вела́, -о́, -и́) P to lead

пово́зка wagon

поворо́т a turning, a turn

повсю́ду everywhere (whereto?)

повторя́ть D, **повтори́ть** P to repeat

поговори́ть P to have a talk

пого́да weather

погуля́ть P to take a walk

под, подо (with A.) under (whereto?); (with I.) under (where?)

подава́ть (-даю́, -даёт; -дава́й) D, **пода́ть (-да́м, -да́ст,** §171; **по́дал, подала́; подался́)** P to present, to serve up

подва́л cellar, basement

поднима́ть D, **подня́ть (-ниму́, -ни́мет; по́днял, подняла́; подня́лся́; по́днятый, поднята́)** P to lift, to raise up; **-ся** to go up

продожда́ть (-жду́, -ждёт; -ждала́) P to wait a bit, to wait for

подойти́ P of **подходи́ть**

подпи́сывать D, **подписа́ть (-пишу́, -пи́шет)** P to sign; **по́дпись (P. -си, -се́й)** F signature

подставля́ть D, **подста́вить** P to set under

поду́шка pillow

подъезжа́ть D, **подъе́хать (-е́ду, -е́дет)** P to drive up to a place

по́езд (P. поезда́) railway train

пое́здка trip, journey

поезжа́й (imperative form supplied for **е́хать,** §161)

пое́хать (-е́ду, -е́дет) P to ride, drive, travel

пожа́луйста please!

пожела́ть P to wish

пожива́ть D to get along; **ка́к вы́ пожива́ете?** how are you?

поза́втракать to have lunch or breakfast

позанима́ться P to study a bit

позва́ть (-зову́, зовёт; -звала́) P to call

позвони́ть P to give a ring, to call up on the telephone (D.)

по́здно (поздне́е, по́зже) late; it's late

познако́мить P to make acquainted; **-ся** to get acquainted

поиска́ть (-ищу́, -и́щет) P to make a search for, to look for, to seek

пойма́ть P of **лови́ть**

пойти́ (-йду́, -йдёт; -шёл, -шла́, -о́, -и́) P to go

пока́ for the present, in the meantime; while; **пока́ (не)** until

пока́зывать D, **показа́ть (-кажу́, -ка́жет)** P to show

покупа́ть D, **купи́ть (куплю́, ку́пит)** P to buy

покури́ть (-курю́, -ку́рит) P to have a smoke

по́л (на полу́; на́ пол, о́б пол; P. полы́) floor

пол- (prefixed to nouns, §127) half: **полчаса́** half an hour

по́ле (P. **поля́)** field

полежа́ть (-лежу́, -лежи́т) P to lie (recline) a bit

по́лк, -а́ (в полку́) regiment

по́лка shelf

полко́вник colonel

по́лный full

полови́на half

положи́ть P of **кла́сть**

полоте́нце towel

полти́нник half rouble

полтора́ (§115) one and a half; **полтора́ста** (§119) a hundred fifty

получа́ть D, **получи́ть (-лучу́, -лу́чит)** P to receive, to get

по́мнить D to remember **(вс-)**

помога́ть D, **помо́чь (-могу́, -мо́жет; -мо́г, -могла́, -о́, -и́)** P to help (D.)

помы́ть (-мо́ю, -мо́ет; -мы́тый) P to wash

понеде́льник Monday

понести́ (-несу́, -несёт; нёс, -несла́, -о́, -и́) P to carry

понима́ть D, **поня́ть (пойму́, поймёт; по́нял, поняла́; по́нятый, понята́)** P to understand

понра́виться P to look good, to please (D.)

поня́ть P of **понима́ть**

пообе́дать P to eat dinner

попада́ть D, **попа́сть (-паду́, -падёт; -па́л)** P to get (somewhere), to land (in a place)

поправля́ть D, **попра́вить** P to correct

попро́бовать P to try out, to take a try

попроси́ть (-прошу́, -про́сит) P to ask (someone, **у** G.) for something (A.)

пора́ (A. **по́ру)** proper time; it's time: **мне́ пора́** it's time for me (to be going)

порабо́тать P to work a while

порва́ть (-рву́, -рвёт; -рвала́) P to give a pull, to pluck, to make a tear in; **-ся** to get torn

портно́й AM tailor

поря́док, -дка order, good order; **в поря́дке** in order, all right; **не в поря́дке** out of order

посади́ть (-сажу́, -са́дит) P to seat

посиде́ть (-сижу́, -сиди́т) P to sit a while

посла́ть P of **посыла́ть**

по́сле after

после́дний last, latter

послеза́втра day after tomorrow

посло́вица proverb

послужи́ть (-служу́, -слу́жит) P to do a service, to serve

посмотре́ть (-смотрю́, -смо́трит) P to take a look, to look

поспева́ть D, **поспе́ть (-спе́ю, -спе́ет)** P to get to a place on time

поспеши́ть P to hurry, to get somewhere or get something done in a hurry

поста́вить P to place (in a standing position), to stand (tr.), to set

постара́ться P to make an effort, to try

посте́ль F bedding, bed

постоя́ть (-стою́, -стои́т) P to stand a while

постригáть D, **постри́чь (-стригу́, -стрижёт; -стри́г, -стри́гла)** P to cut the hair (of someone, A.); **-ся** to get a haircut

постро́ить P to build

посчита́ть P to count

посыла́ть D, **посла́ть (пошлю́, пошлёт)** P to send

потеря́ть P to lose

пото́м later, afterwards

потому́ on account of that; **потому́ что** because

потре́бовать P to demand

потуши́ть (-тушу́, -ту́шит) P to extinguish, to put out (a fire, a light)

поу́жинать P to eat supper

почему́ why

почини́ть (-чиню́, -чи́нит) P to mend, fix, repair

почи́стить P to clean

по́чта post office; **почта́мт** post office (building)

почти́ almost

почу́вствовать P to feel

поэ́тому for this reason

пра́вда truth

пра́вильный correct

пра́вить D to drive (I.)

пра́вый right; right-hand: **о́н пра́в** he is right; **пра́во** really, truly

пра́чечная AF laundry

пра́чка laundress

предви́деть (-ви́жу, -ви́дит) D to foresee

при (with L.) in the presence of, at the time of

приближа́ть D, **прибли́зить** P to bring near; **-ся** to come near, to approach (**до** G.); **приблизи́тельный** approximate

прибыва́ть D, **прибы́ть (-бу́ду, -бу́дет; при́был, прибыла́)** P to arrive at the appointed place (train, troops)

приглаша́ть D, **пригласи́ть** P to invite

пригото́вить P to prepare, to cook

приезжа́ть D, **прие́хать (-е́ду, -е́дет)** P to arrive, to come (riding, driving, traveling)

приём reception, office hours

прие́хать P of **приезжа́ть**

прийти́, for **притти́** P of **приходи́ть**

прика́з command, order, **приказа́ть** P of **прика́зывать**

прика́зчик salesman, store clerk

прика́зывать D, **приказа́ть (-кажу́, -ка́жет)** P to command, to order (D.)

приме́р example, instance

примеря́ть D, **приме́рить** P to try on

принести́ P of **приноси́ть**

принима́ть D, **приня́ть (приму́, при́мет; при́нял, приняла́; при́нятый, принята́)** P to accept, receive, take (a medicine); **-ся** to start to do something

приноси́ть (-ношу́, -но́сит) D, **принести́ (-несу́, -несёт; -нёс, -несла́, -о́, -и́)** P to carry to a place, to bring

приня́ть P of **принима́ть**

приостана́вливать D, **приостанови́ть (-становлю́, -стано́вит)** P to bring to a stop for a while

присла́ть P of **присыла́ть**

при́стань (P. -ни, -не́й) F landing place, dock

присыла́ть D, **присла́ть (пришлю́, пришлёт)** P to send to a place or person

прихо́д arrival; **приходи́ть (-хожу́, -хо́дит)** D, **притти́ (приду́, придёт; пришёл, -шла́, -о́, -и́)** P to arrive (not on a vehicle)

пришива́ть D, **приши́ть (-шью́, -шьёт; -ши́тый)** P to sew on

прия́тель M friend (man); **прия́тельница** friend (woman)

прия́тный pleasant

про (with A.) about

про́бовать D to test, to try **(по-)**

проверя́ть D, **прове́рить** P to test, to check, to inspect

прови́зия provisions (collective)

проводни́к, -а́ guide, conductor

провожа́ть D, **проводи́ть (-вожу́, -во́дит)** P to conduct, accompany, escort, guide

про́волока wire

продава́ть (-даю́, -даёт; -дава́й) D, **прода́ть (-да́м, -да́ст**, §171; **про́дал, продала́, продался́)** P to sell; **-ся** to be sold

проезжа́ть D, **прое́хать (-е́ду, -е́дет)** P to ride, drive, travel through or past

производи́ть (-вожу́, -во́дит) D, **произвести́ (-веду́, ведёт; -вёл, -вела́, -о́, -и́)** P to produce; **произво́дство** production, product

пройти́ P of **проходи́ть**

пролета́ть D, **пролете́ть (-лечу́, -лети́т)** P to fly through or past

про́мысел, -сла trade, craft, calling; **промы́шленный** industrial; **промы́шленность** F industry

пропо́рция proportion; **пропорциона́льный** proportional

прорыва́ть D, **прорва́ть (-рву́, -рвёт; -рвала́)** P to tear through

проси́ть (прошу́, про́сит) D to ask (someone, **у** G.) for something (A.) **(по-)**

просну́ться P of **просыпа́ться**

прости́ть P of **проща́ть**

просто́й (про́сто́, про́сты́; про́ще) simple, plain; **про́сто** simply

просту́да a cold; **простужа́ть, просту́живать** D, **простуди́ть (-стужу́, -сту́дит)** P to expose to a cold; **-ся** to catch cold; **я́ простуди́лся** I (have) caught a cold; **о́н просту́жен** he has a cold

простыня́ (P. **про́стыни, простыне́й)** bedsheet

просыпа́ться D, **просну́ться** P to wake up (intr.)

про́тив opposite, against

прохла́дный cool

проходи́ть (-хожу́, -хо́дит) D, **пройти́ (-йду́, -йдёт; -шёл, -шла́, -о́, -и́)** P to go through or past, to pass

проце́нт per cent

прочита́ть P to read through, to read

про́шлый last, past: **на про́шлой неде́ле** last week

проща́ть D, **прости́ть** P to forgive: **прости́те** beg pardon! **проща́йте** good-bye!

прямо́й (пря́мо́, пря́мы́) straight; **пря́мо** straight, straight ahead

пря́тать (пря́чу, пря́чет) D to hide (tr.); **-ся** to hide (intr.) **(с-)**

пти́ца, пти́чка bird

пу́говица button

пу́д (P. **пуды́)** pood, 16.38 kilograms

пулемёт machine gun

пу́ля bullet

пуска́ть D, **пусти́ть (пущу́, пу́стит)** P to let go, allow, admit

пу́сть let it be; **пу́сть о́н придёт** let him come

пу́ть (§65) M way, road

пу́шка cannon

пья́ный (пья́но́, пья́ны́) drunk

пятиле́тка five-year period, five-year plan; **пятиле́тний** of five years

пя́тница Friday

пя́ть (§116) five; **пя́тый** fifth; **пя́теро** (§125) set of five; **пятна́дцать** (§117) fifteen; **пятна́дцатый** fifteenth; **пятьдеся́т** (§118) fifty; **пятидеся́тый** fiftieth; **пятьсо́т** (§120) five hundred

рабо́та work; **рабо́тать** D to work **(по-)**

ра́вный (равно́, -ы́) equal, all the same; **(мне́) всё равно́** it's all the same (to me)

ра́д (ра́да; short forms only**)** glad; **мы́ ва́м ра́ды** we're glad you've come

радиа́тор radiator

ра́дио (indeclinable) N radio

ра́з (P. **разы́, ра́з, раза́м)** (single) time: **ра́з** once; **два́ ра́за** twice; **мно́го ра́з** many times; **ни ра́зу** not a single time; **не ра́з** more than once; **как ра́з** just now, just then

разбива́ть D, **разби́ть (разобью́, разобьёт; разби́тый)** P to break

разбуди́ть (-бужу́, -бу́дит) P to wake (tr.)

ра́зве it isn't likely that: **ра́зве о́н до́ма** he isn't likely to be at home

развива́ть D, **разви́ть (разовью́, разовьёт; развила́; разви́тый, развита́)** P to develop (tr.); **-ся** to develop (intr.); **разви́тие** development

раздева́ть D, **разде́ть (-де́ну, -де́нет; -де́тый)** P to undress (tr.); **-ся** to undress (intr.)

разделя́ть D, **раздели́ть (-делю́, -де́лит; -делённый)** to divide

разде́ть P of **раздева́ть**

разменя́ть D, **разменя́ть (-меню́, -ме́нит)** P to change (money)

ра́зный various

разойти́сь P of **расходи́ться**

разорва́ть P of **разрыва́ть**

разре́зать (-ре́жу, -ре́жет) P to cut

разрыва́ть D, **разорва́ть (-рву́, -рвёт; -рвала́)** P to tear up, to tear

ра́на wound; **ра́неный** AM wounded man; **ра́нить** D and P to wound

ра́но (ра́ньше) early

распи́ска receipt

расска́з story; **расска́зывать** D, **рассказа́ть (-кажу́, -ка́жет)** P to narrate, to tell (a story)

расти́ (расту́, растёт; ро́с, росла́, -о́, -и́) D to grow **(воз-)**

расходи́ться (-хожу́сь, -хо́дится) D, **разойти́сь (-йду́сь, -йдётся; -шёлся, -шла́сь, -о́сь, -и́сь)** P to part, to separate (intr.)

рва́ть (рву́, рвёт; рвала́) D to pull out, pluck, tear **(по-)**

ребёнок, -нка (P. **ребя́та, ребя́т, ребя́там,** usually replaced by **де́ти)** child; **ребя́та** (as term of address) lads, boys, fellows

револю́ция revolution

ре́зать (ре́жу, ре́жет) D to cut **(раз-)**

река́ (A. **ре́ку;** P. **ре́ки, ре́к, ре́ка́м)** river

ре́льс rail (on railway track); P. **ре́льсы** railway tracks

респу́блика republic

рестора́н restaurant

реце́пт (doctor's) prescription

ре́чка little river

реша́ть D, **реши́ть** P to decide; **-ся** to make up one's mind

ро́вный level, flat, even

роди́ть (past, when P, **родила́, роди́лся́)** D and P to give birth, to bear; **-ся** to be born

Росси́я Russia

ро́т, рта́ (во рту́) mouth

ро́та company (in army)

руба́шка shirt

ру́бль, -бля́ M rouble

ружьё (P. **ру́жья)** gun

рука́ (A. **ру́ку; на́ руку, о́б руку, по́д руку;** P. **ру́ки, ру́к, рука́м)** hand, arm

рукави́ца mitten

ру́сский Russian; AM Russian (man); **ру́сская** AF Russian (woman); **по-ру́сски** in Russian

ры́ба fish

ря́д (в ряду́; P. **ряды́)** row; **ря́дом** alongside of, next to (**с** I.)

с, со (with A.) approximately, about; (with G.) down from, from; (with I.) with, along with, in company with

са́д (в саду́, P. **сады́)** garden

сади́ться D, **се́сть (ся́ду, ся́дет; се́л)** P to sit down

са́жень (P. **са́жени, са́жен** or **саженé́й, саженя́м)** F sazhen, fathom, 2.134 meters

са́м (§98) oneself, by oneself: **я́ са́м пойду́** I'll go there myself

самолёт airplane

са́мый the same, the very, the most (§89)

са́ни (сане́й) P. sleigh

сантиме́тр centimeter

сапо́г, -á (G.P. **сапо́г)** boot; **сапо́жник** shoemaker

сара́й barn, shed

са́хар (G. **-у)** sugar

сбива́ть D, **сби́ть (собью́, собьёт; сби́тый)** P to knock off or down; **-ся с доро́ги (с пути́)** to lose one's way, to get lost

свéжий (свежó, свéжи́) fresh
свёкла beets (collective)
сверхý from or at the top, down from above, down from upstairs
свéсить P of **вéшать** to weigh
свéт light; world; **свéтлый** light (not dark; compare **лёгкий)** bright
свидáние reunion; appointment; **до свидáния** so long! goodby!
свинья́ (P. сви́ньи, свинéй; сви́ньям) pig; **свини́на** pork
свобóда liberty, freedom; **свобóдный** free
свóй (§95) one's own
свя́зывать D, **связáть (свяжý, свя́жет)** P to tie, to knit
сгорáть D, **сгорéть (сгорю́, сгори́т)** P to burn up, to burn down (intr.)
сдáча change money (given back to buyer)
сдéлать P to do, to make
себя́ (§106) oneself
сéвер the north; **сéверный** northern
сегóдня today
седьмóй seventh
сейчáс right now, right away; just a moment ago

селó (P. сёла) larger village; **сéльский** of the village, rural; **сельскохозя́йственный** of farming, agricultural
сéмь (§116) seven; **сéмеро** (§125) set of seven; **семнáдцать** (§117) seventeen; **семнáдцатый** seventeenth; **сéмьдесят** (§118) seventy; **семидеся́тый** seventieth; **семьсóт** (§120) seven hundred
семья́ (P. сéмьи, семéй, сéмьям) family
сентя́брь, -бря́ M September
Сергéй Sergius
сéрдце (P. сердцá) heart
сержáнт sergeant
сéрый gray
серьёзный serious
сестрá (P. сёстры, сестёр, сёстрам) sister
сéсть P of **сади́ться**
сжéчь (сожгý, сожжёт; сжёг, сожглá, -ó, -и́; сожжённый) P to burn, to burn up, to burn down (tr.)
Сиби́рь F Siberia
сигáра cigar
сидéлка sick-nurse
сидéть (сижý, сиди́т) D to sit **(по-)**
си́ла strength; **си́льный** strong
си́ний blue
сию́: сию́ минýту in just a minute

сказа́ть P of **говори́ть** to say, to tell

скво́зь (with A.) through

ско́лько how much, how many

ско́рый rapid, fast; **ско́ро** quickly, soon

ску́чный boring, tiresome; **мне́ ску́чно** I feel bored

сла́бый weak

сла́ва praise, glory; **сла́ва Бо́гу** thank goodness!

сла́дкий (сла́ще; сладча́йший) sweet; **сла́дкое** AN dessert

сла́ть (шлю́, шлёт) D to send **(по-)**

сле́довать D to follow **(за** I.); **сле́дующий** following, next

слета́ть D, **слете́ть (слечу́, слети́т)** P to fly down, off

сли́шком too much, too

сло́во (P. **слова́)** word

слу́жба service

слу́жащий AM attendant

служи́ть (служу́, слу́жит) D to serve (D.) **(по-)**

случа́ться D, **случи́ться** P to happen

слу́шать D to listen; **-ся** to obey (D.)

слыха́ть (infinitive and past only) D (iterative of **слы́шать**) to hear

слы́шать (слы́шу, слы́шит) D to hear **(у-;** iterative **слыха́ть)**

сма́зывать D, **сма́зать (сма́жу, сма́жет)** P to grease (as, a machine)

сме́рить P to measure

смея́ться (смею́сь, смеётся) D to laugh

смотре́ть (смотрю́, смо́трит) D to look **(по-)**

смо́чь (смогу́, смо́жет; смо́г, смогла́, -о́, -и́) P to be able, to manage to

снача́ла in the beginning, at first

сне́г (G. **-у; в снегу́;** P **снега́)** snow

сни́зу from below, from downstairs

снима́ть D, **сня́ть (сниму́, сни́мет; сняла́)** P to take down, off

со, see **с**

соба́ка dog

собира́ть D, **собра́ть (-беру́, -берёт; -брала́, -бра́лся́)** P to gather, to collect (tr.); **-ся** to gather, to assemble (intr.), to get ready (for a trip)

сове́т advice; council, soviet; **городско́й сове́т** city council; **сове́тский** of a soviet, of soviets

совра́ть (-вру́, -врёт; -врала́) P to tell a lie, to lie

совсе́м altogether, entirely

содержа́ть (-держу́, -де́ржит) D to contain

соединя́ть D, **соедини́ть** P to unite; **Соединённые Шта́ты** the United States

сойти́ P of **сходи́ть**

солда́т (G.P. солда́т) soldier

со́лнце sun

со́ль F salt

со́рок (§119) forty; **сорокова́й** fortieth

сосе́д (P. сосе́ди, -дей) neighbor (man); **сосе́дка** neighbor (woman)

составля́ть D, **соста́вить** P to set up, to make up, to amount to

состоя́ть (-стою́, -стои́т) D to consist of **(из, G.)**

сосчита́ть P to count up, to count

со́тый hundredth

Со́фья Sophie

социали́зм socialism; **социали́ст** socialist; **социалисти́ческий** socialist(ic)

сою́з union

спа́льня (G.P. спа́лен) bedroom

спаси́бо thanks, thank you

спа́ть (сплю́, спи́т; спала́) D to sleep

сперва́ at first, first

спе́ть (спою́, споёт; спе́тый) P to sing

спеши́ть D to hurry **(по-)**

спина́ (A. спи́ну; на́ спину; P. спи́ны) back

спи́чка match (for making a flame)

споко́йный quiet

спра́шивать D, **спроси́ть (спрошу́, спро́сит)** P to ask (a question)

спря́тать (спря́чу, спря́чет) P to hide (tr.); **-ся** to hide (intr.)

спуска́ть D, **спусти́ть (спущу́, спу́стит)** P to let down (tr.); to go flat (of a tire)

сража́ть D, **срази́ть** P to strike down; **сраже́ние** battle

сра́зу all at once, right off

среда́ (A. сре́ду; P. сре́ды, сре́д, среда́м) Wednesday

сре́дний central, middle, average

СССР [*esesesER*] (indeclinable) M the USSR, the Soviet Union

ста́вить D to put in a standing position, to stand (tr.), to set **(по-)**

стака́н tumbler, glass (for drinking)

Сталингра́д Stalingrad (city)

станови́ться (становлю́сь, стано́вится) D, **ста́ть (ста́ну, ста́нет)** P to take standing position; to become, to get (intr.); P to begin, to start: **о́н ста́нет игра́ть** he will (begin to) play

ста́нция station

стара́ться D to make an effort, to try **(по-)**

ста́рый (ста́ро́, ста́ры; ста́рше, ста́рший) old

ста́ть P of **станови́ться**

стекло (P. стёкла) glass; pane

стена́ (A. сте́ну; о́б стену; P. сте́ны, сте́н, стена́м) wall

стира́ть D to wash (clothes, linen), to launder **(вы́-)**

сти́рка (the process of) laundering; **отда́ть в сти́рку** to send to the laundry

сто́ (§119) hundred, one hundred

сто́ить D to cost, to be worth

сто́л, -а́ table; **сто́лик** little table

столи́ца capital city

столо́вая AF dining room

сто́лько so much, so many

сторона́ (A. **сто́рону;** P. **сто́роны, сторо́н, сторона́м)** side

стоя́ть (стою́, стои́т) D to stand (intr.) **(по-)**

страна́ (P. **стра́ны)** country (political or geographical unit; compare **дере́вня**)

стрельба́ shooting, firing

стреля́ть D, **стрельну́ть** P to shoot

стри́чь (стригу́, стрижёт; стри́г, стри́гла) D to cut the hair (of someone, A.); **-ся** to get one's hair cut **(по-)**

стро́ить D to build **(по-)**; **строи́тель** M builder; **строи́тельство** construction

сту́л (P. **сту́лья, -льев, -льям)** chair

ступа́ть D, **ступи́ть (ступлю́, сту́пит)** P to step

сукно́ (P. **су́кна)** cloth

суббо́та Saturday

сунду́к, -а́ big box, chest, trunk

су́п (G. **-у)** soup

сухо́й (су́ше) dry

су́ша dry land

сходи́ть (схожу́, схо́дит) D, **сойти́ (-йду́, -йдёт; -шёл, -шла́, -о́, -и́)** P to come or go down, off; **-ся** to come together, to assemble, to meet (intr.)

счёт (P. **счета́)** account, bill

счита́ть D to count **(по-, со-)**

съе́здить P to drive to a place and back, to drive round (intr.)

съе́сть (-е́м, -е́ст; -е́шь, §171; **-е́л)** P to eat up, to eat

сы́н (P. **сыновья́, -ве́й, -ья́м)** son

сюда́ hither, here (whereto?)

таба́к, -а́ (G. **-у́)** tobacco

та́к this way, so; **та́к как** because, since; **та́кже** also, too; **тако́й** this kind of

такси́ (indeclinable) N taxicab

та́м there (where?)

та́нк tank (military)

таре́лка plate

твёрдый (твёрдо́, твёрды́; тве́рже) hard (not soft; compare **тру́дный**)

тво́й (§95) your (familiar to one person)

теа́тр theatre

теле́га wagon, cart
телегра́мма telegram; **телеграфи́ровать** D and P to telegraph
телефо́н telephone; **телефони́ровать** D to telephone; **телефо́нный** of telephones
те́ло (P. **тела́)** body
теля́тина veal
тёмный (темно́, -ы́) dark
температу́ра temperature
тепе́рь now
тёплый (тепло́, тёплы́) warm
термо́метр thermometer
теря́ть D to lose **(по-)**
ти́хий (ти́ше) quiet; **Ти́хий океа́н** the Pacific Ocean
то́ then, in that case; **а то́** otherwise; if one doesn't; as it is now; **-то** (added to a word, emphatic): **о́н-то ушёл** but as for him, he has left (see **то́т**)
това́рищ comrade
тогда́ then
то́же also, too
толпа́ (P. **то́лпы)** crowd
то́лстый (то́лще) thick; fat (of a person)
толщина́ thickness
то́лько only; **то́лько-что** only just now
то́нна ton
топо́р, -а́ axe
то́рмоз (P. **тормоза́)** brake
то́т (§100) that, the other; **то́т же (са́мый)** the same; **то́тчас** right away
трава́ (P. **тра́вы)** grass
трамва́й street car
тре́бовать D to demand **(по-)**
тре́тий (§73) third
тре́ть (P. **-ти, -те́й)** F third
три́ (§115) three; **тро́е** (§125) set of three; **трина́дцать** (§117) thirteen; **трина́дцатый** thirteenth; **три́дцать** (§118) thirty; **тридца́тый** thirtieth; **три́ста** (§120) three hundred
труба́ (P. **тру́бы)** pipe, tube, hose; **тру́бка** small tube; pipe (for smoking)
тру́дный difficult, hard (to do)
туда́ thither, there (whereto?)
ту́т here (where?)
туши́ть (тушу́, ту́шит) D to extinguish, to put out (a fire, a light) **(по-)**
ты́ (§106) you (familiar to one person)
ты́сяча (I. **ты́сячью, ты́сячей)** thousand, one thousand; **ты́сячный** thousandth
тяжёлы (тяжела́, -о́, -ы́) heavy; **тяжёлая рабо́та** hard work

у at, by, with; **у меня́ е́сть биле́т** I have a ticket

убега́ть D, **убежа́ть (убегу́, убежи́т,** §171) P to run away

убива́ть D, **уби́ть (убью́, убьёт; уби́тый)** P to kill

убо́рная AF toilet

уважа́ть D to respect

увели́чивать D, **увели́чить** P to enlarge, increase (tr.); **-ся** to grow larger

уви́деть (уви́жу, уви́дит) P to catch sight of (A.), to see

уго́дный suitable, pleasing; **что́ ва́м уго́дно?** what can one do for you?

у́гол, угла́ (в углу́, на углу́) corner, angle

у́голь, у́гля́ M coal, coals (collective)

уда́р blow, stroke, shock; **ударя́ть** D, **уда́рить** P to hit, to strike

удо́бный comfortable, convenient

удово́льствие pleasure

уезжа́ть D, **уе́хать (уе́ду, уе́дет)** P to leave (intr.), to depart (riding, driving, traveling)

у́ж for **уже́**

у́жас terror; **ужа́сный** terrible

уже́ already

у́жин supper; **у́жинать** D to eat supper **(по-)**

у́зкий (у́зко́, у́зки́; у́же) narrow, tight

узнава́ть (узнаю́, узнаёт; узнава́й) D, **узна́ть** P to recognize; P to find out (intr.)

уйти́ P of **уходи́ть**

укла́дывать D, **уложи́ть (уложу́, уло́жит)** P to pack; **-ся** to pack one's things

Украи́на the Ukraine; **укра́инец, -нца** Ukrainian (man); **укра́инка** Ukrainian (woman); **укра́инский** Ukrainian

улета́ть D, **улете́ть (улечу́, улети́т)** P to fly away, to leave (by plane)

у́лица street

уложи́ть P of **укла́дывать**

умере́ть P of **умира́ть**

уме́ть D to know how

умира́ть D, **умере́ть (умру́, умрёт; у́мер, умерла́)** to die

умыва́ть D, **умы́ть (умо́ю, умо́ет; умы́тый)** P to wash (a person, part of a person, tr.); **-ся** to wash (intr.)

университе́т university

упа́сть P of **па́дать** to fall

Ура́л the Ural Mountains; **ура́льский** of the Urals

урожа́й harvest, crop

уро́к lesson

услы́шать (услы́шу, услы́шит) P to hear

успева́ть D, **успе́ть** P to get somewhere on time, to get time to (do something)

УССР [*uesesER*] the Ukrainian Soviet Republic
устава́ть (устаю́, устаёт; устава́й) D, **уста́ть (уста́ну, уста́нет)** P to get tired; **де́ти уста́ли** the children are tired
у́тро (in telling time, G.S. **утра́,** D.S. **утру́;** P. **у́тра, у́тр, у́тра́м)** morning, forenoon; **в де́вять часо́в утра́** at nine o'clock in the morning; **к утру́** towards morning; **у́тром** in the morning, in the forenoon
у́хо (P. **у́ши, уше́й)** ear
уходи́ть (ухожу́, ухо́дит) D, **уйти́ (уйду́, уйдёт; ушёл, ушла́, -о́, -и́)** P to go away, to leave (intr., not on a vehicle)
учи́тель (P. **-ля́)** teacher (man); **учи́тельница** teacher (woman); **учи́ть (учу́, у́чит)** D to teach (someone, A.; something, D.); **-ся** to learn (D.) **(на-)**

фа́брика factory
фа́кт fact
фами́лия family name, surname
Фаренге́йт Fahrenheit
февра́ль, -ля́ M February
Фёдор Theodore
Финля́ндия Finland; **фи́нн** Finn; **фи́нка** Finnish woman; **фи́нский** Finnish
Фома́ Thomas
Фра́нция France; **францу́з** Frenchman; **францу́женка** Frenchwoman; **францу́зский** French
фро́нт front (military)
фру́кт fruit; **фрукто́вый** of fruit
фу́нт (P. **футны́)** pound
фу́т foot (as measure)

хле́б bread, loaf of bread; **(**P. **хлеба́)** grain
хо́д (G. **-у; на ходу́;** P. **ходы́)** motion, movement; move; **ходи́ть (хожу́, хо́дит)** D (iterative of **идти́**) to walk, to go about, to go repeatedly (on foot)
хозя́ин (P. **хозя́ева, хозя́ев, хозя́евам)** landlord; **хозя́йка** landlady; **хозя́йство** household
хо́лод (P. **холода́)** cold, cold spell; **холо́дный (хо́лоден, холодна́)** cold; **мне́ хо́лодно** I feel cold
хоро́ший (хороша́, -о́, -и́; лу́чше, лу́чший) good
хоте́ть (хочу́, хо́чет, §171) D to want; **-ся: мне́ хо́чется спа́ть** I am sleepy **(за-)**
хребе́т, -бта́ backbone, mountain range
ху́же, ху́дший worse (comparative of **плохо́й**)

цве́т (P. **цвета́)** color; P. **цветы́** flowers (usually replaces the P. of) **цвето́к, -тка́** flower
це́лый whole, entire

Це́льсий Celsius, centigrade
цена́ (P. це́ны) price
це́нт cent
це́нтр center
це́рковь (§62) F church

ча́й (G. ча́ю) tea
ча́с (G.S. after numbers **часа́; в часу́;** P. **часы́)** hour; **че́тверть часа́** quarter of an hour; **в два́ часа́** at two o'clock; **в тре́тьем часу́** between two and three o'clock; P. **часы́** watch, clock
ча́стый (ча́ще) frequent, dense; **ча́сто** often
ча́сть (P. ча́сти, часте́й) F part; body of troops
ча́шка cup
че́й (§96) whose
че́к check
челове́к (P. replaced by **лю́ди,** except G.P. **челове́к** after numbers) human being, person, man; **не́сколько челове́к** a few persons, men
че́м than
чемода́н suitcase, traveling bag
через (with A.) across, through; (of time) after, in: **через неде́лю** after a week, in a week (from now)
черни́ла (черни́л, черни́лам) P. ink
чёрный (черно́, -ы́) black
четве́рг, -а́ Thursday
че́тверо (§125) set of four; **четвёртый** fourth; **че́тверть** (P. **-рти, -рте́й)** F quarter, fourth; quarter hour
четы́ре (§115) four; **четы́рнадцать** (§117) fourteen; **четы́рнадцатый** fourteenth; **четы́реста** (§120) four hundred
чини́ть (чиню́, чи́нит) D to mend, fix, repair **(по-)**
число́ (P. чи́сла) number; date
чи́стить D to clean **(по-); чи́стый (чи́ще)** clean
чита́ть D to read **(про-)**
что́ (§105) what; **что́ за** what kind of; **что, чтобы, чтоб** that; **что́-то** something; **что́-нибудь** anything
чу́вство feeling; **чу́вствовать** D to feel **(по-)**
чу́ть just barely; **чу́ть не** nearly, coming near to, just barely missing: **о́н чу́ть не упа́л** he came near having a fall

ша́пка (soft) cap
ше́сть (§116) six; **шесто́й** sixth; **ше́стеро** (§125) set of six; **шестна́дцать** (§117) sixteen; **шестна́дцатый** sixteenth; **шестьдеся́т** (§118) sixty; **шестидеся́тый** sixtieth; **шестьсо́т** (§120) six hundred
ше́я neck
ши́на tire
ширина́ width

широ́кий (широка́, -о́, -и́; ши́ре, широча́йший) wide
ши́ть (шью́, шьёт; ши́тый) D to sew
шка́п, шка́ф (в шкапу́) cupboard, closet, stand
шко́ла school
шля́па hat
шпина́т spinach
шта́т state
шу́ба fur coat
щётка, щёточка brush; **зубна́я щёт(оч)ка** toothbrush

эта́ж, -а́ storey
э́тот (§99) this, that

ю́г the south; **ю́жный** southern

я́ (§106) I
я́блоко (P. **я́блоки, я́блок** or **я́блоков)** apple; **я́блочный** of apples
явля́ть D, **яви́ть (явлю́, я́вит)** P to show
язы́к, -а́ tongue; language
яйцо́ (P. **я́йца, яи́ц, я́йцам)** egg; **яи́чница** egg dish, fried or scrambled eggs
янва́рь, -ря́ M January
Япо́ния Japan; **япо́нец, -нца** Japanese (man); **япо́нка** Japanese woman; **япо́нский** Japanese
я́рд yard (measure)
я́щик box, drawer

ENGLISH-RUSSIAN INDEX

This index names, for each English word, one or more items of the Russian-English word list which give information about Russian equivalents. This index does not tell how to translate any given expression into Russian; even a big book could not do that.

able: to be able мо́чь
about о, про, о, о́коло
above над; наверху́
abroad за грани́цу; за грани́цей
accident (misfortune) несча́стие
accompany провожа́ть
account счёт; on account of из-за
ache бо́ль; боле́ть
acquaintance, acquainted знако́мый; get acquainted познако́миться; make acquainted познако́мить
address а́дрес
admit пуска́ть
advice сове́т
affair де́ло
afraid (to be) боя́ться
after по́сле, за; after that зате́м
afternoon: in the afternoon днём
afterwards пото́м
again опя́ть; ещё ра́з
against про́тив, о, об
ago тому́ наза́д
agricultural земледе́льческий, сельскохозя́йственный; agriculture земледе́лие
ahead вперёд; straight ahead пря́мо
air во́здух; air force авиа́ция; airplane самолёт, аэропла́н; airport аэродро́м
all ве́сь, все́; all the same всё равно́; all the time всё
allow пуска́ть
almost почти́; чу́ть не
alone оди́н
along по; вме́сте
already уже́
also и, та́кже, то́же
always всегда́, всё
America Аме́рика
among ме́жду
and и, а, да
angle у́гол
animal живо́тное
announce заявля́ть
another друго́й
answer отве́т; отвеча́ть
anybody кто́-нибудь; anything что́-нибудь; anywhere где́-нибудь; in any way ка́к-нибудь
apartment кварти́ра
appearance ви́д

appointment свида́ние
approximate приблизи́тельный
approach прибли́зиться, наступа́ть
April апре́ль
area пло́щадь
arm рука́
army а́рмия
arrival прихо́д; arrive приходи́ть, притти́, приезжа́ть, прибыва́ть
artillery артилле́рия
ask (for something) проси́ть; (questions) спра́шивать
assault нападе́ние; напада́ть
at у, в, на; at first снача́ла, сперва́; at last наконе́ц
attack наступле́ние, нападе́ние, ата́ка; напада́ть, наступа́ть
attendant слу́жащий
August а́вгуст
autobus авто́бус; automobile автомоби́ль
autumn о́сень
average сре́дний
aviator лётчик, авиа́тор
axe топо́р
back спина́; наза́д, обра́тно; backbone хребе́т
bad плохо́й; too bad! жа́лко
bag мешо́к
baggage бага́ж; baggage porter носи́льщик
bake пе́чь
balance весы́
bank ба́нк; бе́рег
barber парикма́хер; barber shop парикма́херская
barn сара́й
barrel бо́чка
basement подва́л
basket корзи́на
bath ва́нна; bathroom ва́нная; bathtub ва́нна; take a bath бра́ть ва́нну
battalion батальо́н
battery батаре́я
battle сраже́ние, бо́й
bay зали́в
be бы́ть; be (in a place) находи́ться; be able мо́чь
bean бо́б
beat би́ть
beautiful краси́вый
because потому́ что, та́к как
become станови́ться, ста́ть
bed посте́ль, крова́ть; bed cover одея́ло; bedding посте́ль; bedroom спа́льня; bed sheet простыня́; bedstead крова́ть; go to bed ложи́ться спа́ть
beef говя́дина
beer пи́во
beets свёкла
before перед, до; пре́жде, пре́жде чём; beforehand зара́нее
begin начина́ть, ста́ть; beginning нача́ло; in the beginning снача́ла
behind за
believe ве́рить
bell звоно́к
belly живо́т
beside во́зле, кро́ме, ря́дом с
best лу́чший
better лу́чше, лу́чший
between ме́жду

big большóй
bill (account) счёт; (paper money) бумáжка; bill-fold бумáжник
bird птúца
bitter гóрький
black чёрный
blanket одея́ло
blow (a knock) удáр; to blow out (of a tire) лóпаться
blue сúний
board доскá
boarding house пансиóн
body тéло
boil кипéть; варúть
bolt бóлт
bomb бóмба; бомбúть
book кнúга
boot сапóг
border граница
bored: I feel bored мнé скýчно; boring скýчный
born, to be родúться
both óба; both . . . and и . . . и
box я́щик, сундýк
boy мáльчик
brake тóрмоз
bread хлéб
break разбивáть
breakfast зáвтрак
breast грýдь
bridge мóст
brigade бригáда
bright свéтлый
bring приносúть; bring back вернýть
brother брáт
brown корúчневый
brush щётка
build стрóить; building здáние
bullet пýля
burn горéть; жéчь; burn up, burn down сгорéть; сжéчь
bureau бюрó
burst лóпаться
bus автóбýс
business дéло
busy зáнятый
but но, а, да
butter мáсло
button пýговица
buy покупáть, купúть

cabin каю́та
call звáть
can (tin) бáнка, корóбка
can: one can мóжно; he can óн мóжет; one can't нельзя́
canal канáл
cannon пýшка
cap шáпка
capital (city) столúца
captain капитáн
car (railway) вагóн; (motor) машúна, автомобúль
careful осторóжный
carpet ковёр
carry нестú
cart телéга; везтú
cash desk кáсса
catch ловúть, поймáть; catch cold простудúться; catch fire загорéться; зажигáться
cavalry кавалéрия
cellar подвáл
census пéрепись

cent це́нт
center це́нтр
centimeter сантиме́тр
central сре́дний
chair сту́л
change (money) ме́лочь; сда́ча; to change переменя́ть; разменя́ть; change one's clothes переодева́ться
cheap дешёвый
check че́к; to check проверя́ть
chest (breast) гру́дь; (box) сунду́к
chicken ку́рица
chief гла́вный
child ребёнок; children де́ти
church це́рковь
cigar сига́ра
cigarette папиро́са
citizen граждани́н
city го́род
clean чи́стый; чи́стить
climb ле́зть; climb up взлеза́ть
closet шка́п
cloth сукно́; (piece of) cloth плато́к
clothing пла́тье

cloud о́блако
coal у́голь
coat пиджа́к; fur coat шу́ба
coffee ко́фе
cold хо́лод; холо́дный; a cold просту́да; catch cold простуди́ться; he has a cold о́н просту́жен
collect собира́ть
colonel полко́вник
color цве́т
comb гре́бень
come итти́, притти́, приходи́ть, приезжа́ть; come back верну́ться
comfortable удо́бный
command прика́з; прика́зывать
compartment (in train) купе́
comrade това́рищ
conduct, to вести́, провожа́ть; conductor проводни́к, конду́ктор
consist состоя́ть
contain содержа́ть; container ба́нка, коро́бка
convenient удо́бный
convey везти́
cook гото́вить, вари́ть

cool прохла́дный
copy пе́репись; перепи́сывать
cord верёвка
corner у́гол
correct пра́вильный; поправля́ть
corridor коридо́р
count счита́ть
country страна́; in the country в дере́вне; to the country в дере́вню
cover кры́шка, одея́ло; кры́ть, закрыва́ть, накрыва́ть
cow коро́ва
crop урожа́й
cross переходи́ть; crossing, crossroads перекрёсток
crowd толпа́
crude oil не́фть
cry пла́кать, крича́ть
cup ча́шка
cupboard шка́п
cut ре́зать; cut hair стри́чь

danger опа́сность; dangerous опа́сный
dark тёмный

date числó
daughter дóчь
day дéнь; day after tomorrow послезáвтра; day before yesterday трéтьего дня́
dear дорогóй
December декáбрь
decide решáть
deck (of ship) пáлуба
deep глубóкий
defeat побеждáть
degree грáдус
demand трéбовать
dentist зубнóй врáч
depart отходи́ть; departure отхóд
depth глубинá
desire желáние; желáть
dessert слáдкое
develop развивáть; проявля́ть
different другóй; рáзный
difficult трýдный
dinner обéд
dirt гря́зь; dirty гря́зный
dish блю́до
disturb беспокóить
divide дели́ть, разделя́ть
division диви́зия
do дéлать
dock при́стань
doctor врáч, дóктор
dog собáка
dollar дóллар
door двéрь
down вни́з; downstairs вни́з, внизý; down from с; down from above свéрху
drawer я́щик
dress плáтье; одевáть; одевáться
drink пи́ть
drive éхать; прáвить
drug store аптéка
drunk пья́ный; get drunk напивáться
dry сухóй
during во врéмя

each кáждый
ear ýхо
early рáно
earn зарабáтывать
earth земля́
east востóк
easy лёгкий
eat éсть, кýшать
egg яйцó
eight вóсемь; eighth восьмóй
either . . . or или . . . или
eleven оди́ннадцать
end конéц; кончáть
enemy врáг, неприя́тель
engaged (to be married) обручённый
England Англия; English англи́йский; Englishman англичáнин
enough довóльно, достáточно
enter входи́ть
entire цéлый
entrance вхóд
envelope конвéрт
escort провожáть
equal рáвный
Europe Еврóпа
even и, дáже; рóвный
evening вéчер
every кáждый; everybody всé; everything всё; everywhere вездé, всю́ду, повсю́ду

examine осма́тривать
example приме́р; for example наприме́р
excellent отли́чный
except кро́ме
excuse извиня́ть
exit вы́ход
expect ожида́ть
extinguish туши́ть
eye гла́з; eyeglasses очки́

face лицо́
fact фа́кт
factory фа́брика, заво́д
faithful ве́рный
fall па́дать, упа́сть
falsehood непра́вда
family семья́; family name фами́лия
far далёкий; it's far далеко́
farm дво́р, колхо́з, совхо́з
farmer крестья́нин
fast (rapid) ско́рый; (firm) кре́пкий
father оте́ц
fear боя́ться
feather перо́
February февра́ль
feel чу́вствовать; feeling чу́вство
fence забо́р
fever лихора́дка
few ма́ло, немно́го; a few не́сколько
field по́ле
fifteen пятна́дцать; fifth пя́тый; fifty пятьдеся́т
fight би́ться; бо́й; fighter бое́ц
fill наполня́ть; (a tooth) пломбирова́ть; (a tire with air) нака́чивать; filling (in a tooth) пло́мба; filling station бензи́новая ста́нция
finally наконе́ц
find находи́ть
finger па́лец; fingernail но́готь
fire ого́нь; firewood дрова́; to fire (a gun) вы́стрелить
firm кре́пкий
first пе́рвый; сперва́
fish ры́ба
five пя́ть
fix чини́ть
flat пло́ский; кварти́ра; go flat (of a tire) спуска́ть
floor по́л; (storey) эта́ж
flour мука́
flower цвето́к
fly му́ха
fly лете́ть
follow сле́довать
fool дура́к
foot нога́; (as measure) фу́т
for для; за; (because) потому́ что; for instance наприме́р
foresee предви́деть
forest ле́с
forget забыва́ть
forgive проща́ть, извини́ть
fork ви́лка
forty со́рок
forward вперёд
fountain pen ве́чное перо́
four четы́ре; fourth четвёртый; че́тверть
France Фра́нция
free свобо́дный; freedom свобо́да
freeze мёрзнуть, замерза́ть, моро́зить, отмора́живать

French францу́зский; Frenchman францу́з
fresh све́жий
Friday пя́тница
friend дру́г, прия́тель
from от, с, из; from here отсю́да; from there отту́да; from where отку́да; from above све́рху; from below сни́зу
front (military) фро́нт
frost моро́з
fruit фру́кт
full по́лный
fur coat шу́ба
furlough о́тпуск
furnished room меблиро́ванная ко́мната
furniture ме́бель
future бу́дущий

garage гара́ж
garden са́д
gasoline бензи́н
gather собира́ть
general генера́л
German не́мец; Germany Герма́ния
get (receive) получа́ть; (obtain) достава́ть; (become) станови́ться, ста́ть; get into a place попада́ть; get something done in time успева́ть; get somewhere in time поспева́ть; get up встава́ть
girl де́вочка, де́вушка
give дава́ть; give back отдава́ть
glad ра́д
glass стака́н; стекло́; looking glass зе́ркало; eyeglasses очки́
glove перча́тка
go итти́; go away уходи́ть; go back верну́ться; go flat (of a tire) спуска́ть
god бо́г
good хоро́ший; до́брый; good to eat вку́сный; good-bye! до свида́ния! проща́йте! good night! споко́йной но́чи!
grain хле́б
grant leave отпуска́ть
grapes виногра́д
grass трава́
gray се́рый
grease ма́зать, сма́зывать
great вели́кий
green зелёный
ground земля́
grow расти́, возраста́ть
guest го́сть
guide проводни́к; провожа́ть
gulf зали́в
gun ружьё

hair во́лос
half полови́на; half an hour полчаса́; half a rouble полти́нник; one and a half полтора́
hallway коридо́р
ham ветчина́
hammer мо́лот, молото́к
hand рука́; передава́ть; hand over отдава́ть
handkerchief носово́й плато́к
hang висе́ть; ве́шать, пове́сить
happen случа́ться
hard твёрдый; тру́дный
harvest урожа́й
hat шля́па

have: he has у негó éсть; he has to óн дóлжен, емý нáдо, емý нýжно, емý прихóдится
he óн
healthy здорóвый
head головá
hear слы́шать
heart сéрдце
heavy тяжёлый
height высотá, вышинá
hello здрáвствуйте; (on telephone) аллó
help помогáть
hen кýрица
her её
here здéсь, тýт; сюдá; here it is вóт
hide кóжа; to hide пря́тать
high высóкий
his егó
hit ударя́ть
hold держáть
home домóй; at home дóма
hook крючóк
hope надéжда; надéяться
horse лóшадь; (on) horseback верхóм
hose трубá
hospital больни́ца, гóспиталь
hot горя́чий, жáркий
hotel гости́ница; hotel room нóмер
hour чáс
how кáк; how many, how much скóлько; how do you do? здрáвствуйте! кáк вы́ поживáете?
huge огрóмный
hundred стó; hundredth сóтый; one hundred fifty полторáста
human being человéк
hunger гóлод; hungry голóдный
hurry спеши́ть
hurt болéть; it hurts бóльно
husband мýж

I я́
if éсли, éслибы, éслиб
ice лёд; ice cream морóженое
illiterate негрáмотный
impossible: it is impossible нельзя́
in в; in a week через недéлю
include включáть
incorrect непрáвильный
industrial промы́шленный; industry промы́шленность
infantry пехóта
ink черни́ла
inner tube кáмера
insect насекóмое
inspect осмáтривать, проверя́ть; inspection осмóтр
instance примéр; for instance напримéр
instrument инструмéнт
interest интересовáть; interesting интерéсный
into в
introduce (people) познакóмить
invite приглашáть
iron желéзо; желéзный
it óн, онá, онó

jack домкрáт
janitor двóрник
January янвáрь

Japan Япо́ния
jar ба́нка
journey поéздка
July ию́ль
June ию́нь
just now то́лько-что, как ра́з

key клю́ч
kill убива́ть
kilogram кило́, килогра́мм
kilometer киломе́тр
kind до́брый; this kind тако́й; what kind како́й, что́ за; kindness ми́лость
kitchen ку́хня
knife но́ж; pocket knife но́жик
knit вяза́ть
know зна́ть; know how уме́ть
kopek копе́йка

ladder ле́стница
lake о́зеро
lamp ла́мпа
land земля́; to land somewhere попада́ть; landing place при́стань
landlady хозя́йка; landlord хозя́ин
language язы́к
large большо́й
last после́дний; про́шлый
late по́здно; later пото́м, по́зже
laugh смея́ться
launder стира́ть; laundress пра́чка; laundry пра́чечная; бельё; to the laundry в сти́рку
lay кла́сть, положи́ть
lead вести́
leaf ли́ст
learn учи́ться
leather ко́жа
leave о́тпуск; уходи́ть, уезжа́ть, улета́ть; оставля́ть
left-hand ле́вый; to the left, at the left нале́во
leg нога́
length длина́
less ме́ньше, ме́нее
lesson уро́к
let, let go пуска́ть
letter письмо́; бу́ква
level пло́ский, ро́вный
liberty свобо́да
library библио́те́ка
lie (untruth) непра́вда; (tell lies) вра́ть; (recline) лежа́ть; lie down ложи́ться, ле́чь
life жи́знь
lift поднима́ть
light све́т; ого́нь; (not dark) све́тлый; (not heavy) лёгкий; to light зажига́ть
lightning мо́лния
like ра́вный; like this та́к; to like люби́ть; I like this э́то мне́ нра́вится
line ли́ния
linens бельё
lip губа́
liter ли́тр
literacy гра́мота; literate гра́мотный
little ма́ленький, ма́лый; ма́ло, немно́го; a little немно́жко; little boy ма́льчик; little girl де́вочка
live жи́ть
loaf of bread хле́б
locomotive локомоти́в, парово́з

long дли́нный; a long time до́лго; for a long time now, (ever since) long ago давно́
look смотре́ть; look for иска́ть; look good нра́виться; look out! осторо́жно!
looking glass зе́ркало
lose теря́ть; lose one's way сбива́ться с доро́ги
love люби́ть
low ни́зкий
luggage бага́ж
lunch за́втрак
lungs лёгкие

machine маши́на; machine gun пулемёт
major майо́р
majority большинство́
make де́лать; make ready гото́вить
man мужчи́на, челове́к
manner о́браз
many мно́гие, мно́го
March ма́рт
marry жени́ться; выходи́ть за́муж; married жена́тый, за́мужем
match спи́чка
May ма́й
may: one may мо́жно; one may not нельзя́
maybe мо́жет бы́ть
me меня́, мне́, мно́й
measure ме́ра; мери́ть, измеря́ть
meat мя́со; meat ball котле́та
medical медици́нский
medicine лека́рство; медици́на
meet встреча́ть; meeting встре́ча
memory па́мять
mend чини́ть
metal мета́лл
meter ме́тр
mile ми́ля
milk молоко́
minute мину́та
mirror зе́ркало
misfortune несча́стие
mitten рукави́ца
Monday понеде́льник
money де́ньги
monkey wrench францу́зский клю́ч
month ме́сяц
monument па́мятник
moon луна́
more бо́лее, бо́льше; more than once нера́з
most са́мый
morning у́тро
mortar (cannon) морти́ра
mother ма́ть
mountain гора́; mountain range хребе́т
mouth ро́т
movement хо́д
movies кино́
much мно́го; гора́здо
municipal городско́й
museum музе́й
music му́зыка
mutton бара́нина
my мо́й

nail гво́здь; (on finger or toe) но́готь
name и́мя; фами́лия; what is his name? ка́к его́ зову́т?
narrow у́зкий
narrate расска́зывать; narrative расска́з

nation наро́д; national национа́льный; nationality национа́льность

near бли́зкий; недалеко́; о́коло; it is near бли́зко; nearly чу́ть не, почти́

necessary ну́жный; it is necessary ну́жно, на́до

neck ше́я; necktie га́лстук

needle игла́

neighbor сосе́д

neither . . . nor ни . . . ни

never никогда́

new но́вый

newspaper газе́та

next бу́дущий, сле́дующий; next to во́зле, ря́дом с

night но́чь

nine де́вять; ninety девяно́сто

no не́т

nobody никто́

nose но́с

north се́вер

not не

nothing ничего́

November ноя́брь

now тепе́рь

nowhere нигде́, никуда́

number число́, но́мер

nurse: sick-nurse сиде́лка

nut (on machine) га́йка

occupy занима́ть

ocean океа́н

o'clock: two o'clock два́ часа́

October октя́брь

of у, из; of course коне́чно

off с

office конто́ра, бюро́; office hour приём

officer офице́р

often ча́сто

oil ма́сло; crude oil не́фть

old ста́рый

on на; on account of из-за

once ра́з

one оди́н

only то́лько, еди́нственный

onto на

open открыва́ть

operation опера́ция

opposite про́тив, напро́тив

or и́ли

orange апельси́н

order зака́з; прика́з; зака́зывать, прика́зывать; (good) order поря́док

other друго́й, остально́й

our на́ш

out-of-doors на дворе́

over над, по; overcoat пальто́, шу́ба; overshoe кало́ша

owing до́лжен

Pacific Ocean Ти́хий океа́н

pack завёртывать; (one's things) укла́дывать

package паке́т, коро́бка

pail ведро́

pain бо́ль; боле́ть; painful бо́льно

pair па́ра

pane стекло́

paper бума́га; newspaper газе́та

pardon извиня́ть, проща́ть; pardon me! извини́те! прости́те!

park па́рк; to park (a car) оставля́ть

parlor **гости́ная**
part **ча́сть**; **расходи́ться**
pass **проходи́ть**; (something, at the table) **передава́ть**
past **ми́мо**
pay **плати́ть**
peace **ми́р**; peaceable, peaceful **ми́рный**
pear **гру́ша**
peas **горо́х**
peasant **крестья́нин**
pen **перо́**; fountain pen **ве́чное перо́**
pencil **каранда́ш**
people **люди, наро́д**
per cent **проце́нт**
perhaps **мо́жет бы́ть**
permanent **ве́чный**
person **челове́к**
petrol **бензи́н**
pharmacy **апте́ка**
picture **карти́на**
pie **пиро́г**
piece **кусо́к**; piece of baggage **ме́сто**; piece of cloth **плато́к**; piece of paper **ли́ст бума́ги**
pig **свинья́**
pillow **поду́шка**
pin **була́вка**; safety pin **англи́йская була́вка**; to pin **коло́ть, зака́лывать**
pipe **труба́, тру́бка**
place **ме́сто**; **пло́щадь**; **кла́сть, ста́вить**
plain **просто́й**
plate **таре́лка**
platform **платфо́рма**
play **игра́ть**
pleasant **прия́тный**
please **пра́виться**; please! **пожа́луйста!**
pleasure **удово́льствие**
pocket **карма́н**; pocket knife **но́жик**
policeman **милиционе́р**
poor **бе́дный**
population **населе́ние**
pork **свини́на**
porter **дво́рник**; **носи́льщик**
possible **мо́жно**
post office **по́чта**
potatoes **карто́шка**
pound **фу́нт**
pour **ли́ть**; pour in **налива́ть**
prepare **гото́вить**
prescription **реце́пт**
pretty **краси́вый**
price **цена́**
prick **коло́ть**
principal **гла́вный**
probably **наве́рно**
proclaim **заявля́ть**
procure **достава́ть**
produce **производи́ть**; product, production **произво́дство**
promise **обеща́ние**; **обеща́ть**
proportion **пропо́рция**
province **о́бласть**
provision **запа́с**; provisions **прови́зия**
put **дева́ть, кла́сть, положи́ть, ста́вить**; put on (a garment) **надева́ть**; put out (a fire, a light) **туши́ть**

question **вопро́с**
quick **бы́стрый**; **ско́рый**
quiet **споко́йный, ти́хий**

radio ра́дио
radiator радиа́тор
rail (on railway track) ре́льс; railway желе́зная доро́га; railway car ваго́н; railway station ста́нция, вокза́л; railway train по́езд
rain до́ждь
raise up поднима́ть
rapid ско́рый, бы́стрый
razor бри́тва; safety razor безопа́сная бри́тва
read чита́ть
ready гото́вый; get ready гото́вить; собира́ться
rear за́д
receipt распи́ска
receive получа́ть; (visitors, patients, etc.) принима́ть
recently неда́вно
reception приём
recognize узнава́ть
red кра́сный
regiment по́лк
remain остава́ться; remaining остально́й
remember по́мнить, вспомина́ть
remind напомина́ть
repair чини́ть
repeat повторя́ть; repeatedly нера́з, мно́го ра́з
republic респу́блика
respect уважа́ть
rest о́тдых; to rest отдыха́ть
restaurant рестора́н
reunion свида́ние
revolution револю́ция
rich бога́тый
ride е́хать
rifle винто́вка
right пра́вый; at the right, to the right напра́во; right away сейча́с, то́тчас
ring кольцо́; to ring звони́ть
river река́
road доро́га
roof кры́ша
room ко́мната; hotel room но́мер; rooming house пансио́н, номера́
rope верёвка
rouble ру́бль
row ря́д
rug ковёр
run бежа́ть; run away убега́ть; run over переезжа́ть
Russia Росси́я; Russian ру́сский

sack мешо́к
safe безопа́сный; safety razor безопа́сная бри́тва
salt со́ль
same то́т же (са́мый); all the same всё равно́
satisfied дово́льный
Saturday суббо́та
saw пила́
say говори́ть, сказа́ть
scales (balance) весы́
school шко́ла
scissors но́жницы
screw ви́нт; винти́ть; screwdriver отвёртка; screw nut га́йка; to screw on зави́нчивать
sea мо́ре
second второ́й
see ви́деть; one can see ви́дно
seek иска́ть

seem каза́ться
sell продава́ть
send посыла́ть, присыла́ть
separate отделя́ть; расходи́ться; ра́зный
September сентя́брь
sergeant сержа́нт
serious серьёзный
serve служи́ть; serve up (food) подава́ть; service слу́жба
seven се́мь; seventh седьмо́й
set кла́сть, положи́ть, ста́вить; set on fire зажига́ть; set (the table) накрыва́ть
several не́сколько
sew ши́ть; sew on пришива́ть
shave бри́ть
she она́
shed сара́й
sheet (on bed) простыня́; (of paper) ли́ст
shirt руба́шка
shock уда́р
shoe боти́нка, боти́нок; shoemaker сапо́жник
shoot стреля́ть, вы́стрелить
shop ла́вка
shore бе́рег
short коро́ткий
shot вы́стрел
show пока́зывать
sick больно́й
side сторона́
sign (to) подпи́сывать; signature по́дпись
simple просто́й
sing пе́ть
sister сестра́
sit сиде́ть; sit down сади́ться, се́сть
six ше́сть
size ме́ра, но́мер, величина́
skin ко́жа
sky не́бо
sleep спа́ть; I'm sleepy мне́ хо́чется спа́ть
sleigh са́ни
slow ме́дленный
small ма́лый, ма́ленький; small change ме́лочь
smear ма́зать
smoke (tobacco) кури́ть
snow сне́г
so та́к
soap мы́ло
sock носо́к
soft мя́гкий
soldier бое́ц, солда́т
solid кре́пкий
some не́который, не́сколько; somebody не́кто, кто́-то; something не́что, что́-то; sometimes иногда́; somewhere где́-то
son сы́н
soon ско́ро, вскоре́
soup су́п
south ю́г
soviet сове́т; Soviet Union Со́ветский Сою́з
space пло́щадь
spare запасно́й
speak говори́ть
spinach шпина́т
spool кату́шка
spoon ло́жка, ло́жечка
spring весна́

square квадра́т, пло́щадь
stairway ле́стница
stamp ма́рка
stand шка́п; to stand стоя́ть; ста́вить; to stand up встава́ть
star звезда́
station ста́нция, вокза́л; filling station бензи́новая ста́нция
stay остава́ться
steam па́р; steamship парохо́д
still ещё; ти́хий, споко́йный
stomach желу́док
stop, stopping place остано́вка; to stop остава́ться; остана́вливать
store ла́вка, магази́н; запа́с
storey эта́ж
storm бу́ря
story расска́з
stove пе́чь; плита́
straight прямо́й; straight ahead пря́мо
street у́лица; street car трамва́й
strength си́ла
strike ударя́ть
string верёвка
stroke уда́р
strong си́льный, кре́пкий
study занима́ться, учи́ться, изуча́ть
such тако́й
sugar са́хар
suit of clothes костю́м
suitcase чемода́н
summer ле́то
sun со́лнце
Sunday воскресе́нье
supper у́жин
supply запа́с
surely наве́рно
surname фами́лия
sweet сла́дкий
swim плы́ть

table сто́л
tack гво́здик
tailor портно́й
take бра́ть; принима́ть
tank ба́к; та́нк
taste вку́с; tasty вку́сный
taxicab такси́
tea ча́й; teaspoon ло́жечка
teach учи́ть
tear рва́ть, порва́ть, разрыва́ть; tear off отрыва́ть
telegram телегра́мма; to telegraph телеграфи́ровать
telephone телефо́н; телефони́ровать
tell говори́ть, сказа́ть; (stories) расска́зывать; (lies) вра́ть
temperature температу́ра
ten де́сять
terrible ужа́сный
territory о́бласть
terror у́жас
test про́бовать; проверя́ть
than че́м
thank благодари́ть; thank you! спаси́бо!
theatre теа́тр
their и́х
then тогда́; зате́м
there та́м, туда́; from there отту́да; there is е́сть; there isn't не́т; there it is во́т
thermometer гра́дусник, термо́метр

they они́
thick то́лстый; thickness толщина́
thing ве́щь
think ду́мать
third тре́тий; тре́ть
thirsty: I'm thirsty я́ хочу́ пи́ть
thirteen трина́дцать; thirty три́дцать
this э́тот; this way та́к
thousand ты́сяча
thread ни́тка; вдева́ть
three три́
throat го́рло
through сквозь
throw броса́ть
thunder гро́м; thunderstorm гроза́
Thursday четве́рг
ticket биле́т; ticket office ка́сса
tie вяза́ть; necktie га́лстук
tight у́зкий
time вре́мя; пора́; ра́з; on time во́время; get done in time успева́ть; get there in time поспева́ть
tire ши́на
tired уста́л; to get tired устава́ть; tiresome ску́чный
to к, до
tobacco таба́к
today сего́дня
toe па́лец; toenail но́готь
together вме́сте
toilet убо́рная
tomorrow за́втра; day after tomorrow послеза́втра
ton то́нна
tongue язы́к
too, too much сли́шком
tool инструме́нт
tooth зу́б; tooth brush зубна́я щётка; tooth paste зубна́я па́ста
top ве́рх
toward к
towel полоте́нце
town го́род, городо́к
track (railway) ре́льсы
train (railway) по́езд
travel е́хать; (by water) плы́ть; traveling bag чемода́н
tree де́рево
trip пое́здка
trousers брю́ки
truck грузови́к
true ве́рный
trunk (box) сунду́к
truth пра́вда
try про́бовать; стара́ться; try on примеря́ть
tube труба́
Tuesday вто́рник
tumbler стака́н
turn, turning поворо́т; to turn повёртывать; turn out to be ока́зываться
twelve двена́дцать
twenty два́дцать
twice два́ ра́за
two два́

under под
understand понима́ть
underwear бельё
undress раздева́ть
unexpected неожи́данный

union сою́з
unite соединя́ть; United States Соединённые Шта́ты
university университе́т
unpleasant неприя́тный
unscrew отви́нчивать
until пока́
untruth непра́вда
unwell нездоро́вый
unwholesome нездоро́вый
up, up above, upstairs наве́рх, наверху́
useful ну́жный
useless нену́жный
usual обыкнове́нный

various ра́зный
veal теля́тина
vegetable о́вощь
very о́чень
vest жиле́т
victory побе́да
view ви́д
village село́, дере́вня
visible ви́дный

wagon пово́зка, теле́га
waistcoat жиле́т
wait жда́ть
waiter официа́нт; waitress официа́нтка
wake up просыпа́ться; буди́ть
walk итти́, ходи́ть, гуля́ть
wall стена́
want хоте́ть
war война́
warm тёплый
wash мы́ть, вы́мыть, умыва́ть, стира́ть; washing бельё; for washing, to the wash в сти́рку
water вода́
way доро́га, пу́ть, о́браз; this way та́к; in this way таки́м о́бразом
we мы́
weak сла́бый
wear носи́ть; wear out изна́шивать
weather пого́да
Wednesday среда́
week неде́ля
weep пла́кать

weigh ве́сить; ве́шать, све́сить; weight ве́с
welcome! ми́лости про́сим! You're welcome! не́ за что!
well хорошо́, здоро́вый
west за́пад
what что́, како́й; what for заче́м; what kind of како́й, что́ за
wheel колесо́
when когда́
where где́; wherefrom отку́да; whereto куда́
whether ли
which кото́рый
while пока́
white бе́лый
who кто́
whole це́лый
whose че́й
why отчего́, почему́, заче́м
wide широ́кий; width ширина́
wife жена́
wind ве́тер; to wind ви́ть
window окно́
winter зима́

wire прóволока
wish желáние; желáть
with с; without без
woman жéнщина; дéвушка
wood дéрево, дровá; woods лéс
word слóво
work рабóта; рабóтать; works завóд
world мúр, свéт
worse, worst хýже, хýдший
wound рáна; рáнить; wounded рáненый
wrap завёртывать
wrench ключ
write писáть
wrong непрáвый; непрáвильный

yard двóр
year гóд
yell кричáть
yellow жёлтый
yes дá
yet ещё
yesterday вчерá; day before yesterday трéтьего днá
you вы́; your вáш
young молодóй

zero нóль

KEY TO EXERCISES AND TESTS

The following pages give in condensed form a Key to the exercises contained in the *What Would You Say?* Sections of each regular Unit, and to the tests and exercises contained in the Review Units.

Each part of the Key is identified by a heading giving the Unit and the Section in which the exercise occurs.

UNIT 2. SECTION C. KEY.

1. b.
2. c.
3. a.
4. a.
5. c.
6. b.
7. a.
8. b.
9. b.
10. a.
11. c.
12. a.

UNIT 3. SECTION C. KEY.

1. c.
2. c.
3. b.
4. b.
5. c.
6. b.

UNIT 4. SECTION C. KEY.

1. b.
2. a.
3. a.
4. c.
5. c.
6. b.
7. a.
8. c.
9. c.
10. c.
11. a.
12. c.

UNIT 5. SECTION C. KEY.

1. b.
2. c.
3. b.
4. c.
5. b.
6. c.
7. c.
8. b.
9. a.
10. c.
11. b.
12. c.

UNIT 6. SECTION A. TRUE-FALSE TEST

English Equivalents

I

F 1. A restaurant is never in a railway station.
F 2. A little boy has three daughters.
F 3. A doctor works in a hospital.
T 4. Of course her older son has a mother.
F 5. Boys never want sugar.
T 6. You are studying Russian.
F 7. Now a wife is working.
F 8. John Ilyin is my female friend.
T 9. In Moscow they speak Russian.
F 10. Eight and two is nine.

II

F 11. This man has two fathers.
F 12. In the hotel there is neither bread nor coffee.
T 13. The waiter was in the restaurant.
T 14. My sisters understand when I speak slowly.
T 15. The little boy is on his way to school.
T 16. A young man drinks beer.
T 17. We speak a little Russian.
F 18. Little children have gone off to war.
F 19. This female citizen knows my brother's husband.
T 20. An American speaks English.

III

F 21. Fathers are never going into the army.
T 22. Children live with fathers.
F 23. They are walking from America to Moscow.
F 24. Mountains are always small.
T 25. In America there is a hospital.
F 26. We don't do anything in the army.
T 27. His younger brother often wants to eat.
T 28. After the war your mother will say to you: "You have come from the army; you are here."
F 29. Two roubles are worth ten kopeks.
T 30. It is very pleasant not to be working.

IV

T 31. We want a furlough.
T 32. Five and four is nine.
T 33. A husband is never a daughter.
T 34. The English teacher is in the school.
F 35. Six and four is nine.
T 36. A mother never has a wife.
T 37. A young man in the army knows that war is very unpleasant.
F 38. It is never cold in Russia.
F 39. Moscow is in the south, and it is warm there.
T 40. In America there are all kinds of weather.

V

F 41. A sick person feels good when it is very cold.
F 42. In America there are no mountains.
F 43. Tomorrow there will be no day.
T 44. A teacher works in a school, and a waiter in a restaurant.
F 45. It is raining in the restaurant.
F 46. Boston is in the west, and San Francisco in the east.
F 47. The doctor doesn't know where the hospital is.
T 48. My mother's son is my brother.
T 49. George Washington never lived in the south of Russia.
T 50. It sometimes rains in winter.

VI

T 51. Sick people are always in poor health.
F 52. It always snows in Florida.
T 53. In the army people work a lot.
T 54. Spring comes after winter, and after summer comes autumn.
T 55. We are here.
T 56. My brother's daughter is not a boy.
F 57. A man never wants to eat.
T 58. It snows both at night and in daytime.
T 59. Her woman teacher has no wife.
F 60. There are no children in Russia.

VII

F 61. You are your brother's son.
F 62. They eat bread only in America.
F 63. It rains all the time.

F 64. There are no Russians in Moscow.
T 65. People live in a hotel.
F 66. In the mountains it is warm at night.
T 67. I know what I know.
T 68. Sometimes the weather is unpleasant.
T 69. In daytime people work.
F 70. In American schools there are only women teachers of Russian.

VIII

F 71. My father has no children.
F 72. It is never cold in the north.
F 73. In the army there are only young women.
T 74. There are Russians in America.
T 75. My father's mother is not my sister.
T 76. We have both a mother and a father.
F 77. Railway stations are always on mountains.
F 78. It's very hot in winter.
F 79. It never rains in America.
T 80. Young women are also in the army.

UNIT 6. SECTION B. KEY.

I

1. ZDRAstvuyţi, grazhdaŊIN ivaNOF.
2. KAK ví pazhiVAyiţi?
3. xaraSHO, spaŞIba, a VI?
4. yá ŋi paŋiMAyu.
5. paZHALsta, gavaŖIţi ⱮEdļinna.
6. izyiŊIţi, GḐE vagZAL, paZHALsta?
7. vagZAL na PRAva.
8. yá xachú papiROsi i SƤICHķi, paZHALsta.
9. ví xaŢIţi CHAyu iļi KOƒi?
10. éta stóyit TŖI ruBĻA.

II

1. kuDA ví iḐOţi?
2. kuDA ví YEḑiţi?
3. yá YEdu na vagZAL.
4. móy BRAT na vagZAļi.
5. móy STARshiy SIN v ARɱiyi.

F 64. There are no Russians in Moscow.
T 65. People live in a hotel.
F 66. In the mountains it is warm at night.
T 67. I know what I know.
T 68. Sometimes the weather is unpleasant.
T 69. In daytime people work.
F 70. In American schools there are only women teachers of Russian.

VIII

F 71. My father has no children.
F 72. It is never cold in the north.
F 73. In the army there are only young women.
T 74. There are Russians in America.
T 75. My father's mother is not my sister.
T 76. We have both a mother and a father.
F 77. Railway stations are always on mountains.
F 78. It's very hot in winter.
F 79. It never rains in America.
T 80. Young women are also in the army.

UNIT 6. SECTION B. KEY.

I

1. ZDRAstvuyƫi, grazhdaƝIN ivaNOF.
2. KAK ví pazhiVAyiƫi?
3. xaraSHO, spaŞIba, a VI?
4. yá ɲi paɲiMAyu.
5. paZHALsta, gavaR̡Iƫi M̡Edl̡inna.
6. izyiƝIƫi, GD̡E vagZAL, paZHALsta?
7. vagZAL na PRAva.
8. yá xachú papiROsi i SP̡ICHk̡i, paZHALsta.
9. ví xaT̡Iƫi CHAyu il̡i KOf̡i?
10. éta stóyit TR̡I ruBL̡A.

II

1. kuDA ví iD̡Oƫi?
2. kuDA ví YEd̡iƫi?
3. yá YEdu na vagZAL.
4. móy BRAT na vagZAl̡i.
5. móy STARshiy SIN v ARm̡iyi.

6. yá xaCHU yivó FSTŖEƫiƫ.
7. u ŋiVO OTpusk.
8. ón ɱiŋá FSTŖEƫit ẒḐEŞ.
9. mayéy zhiNI ẓḑéş ŊET.
10. dáyƫi mŋé SƤICHku, paZHALsta.

III

1. ví ZNAyiƫi étu ḐEvushku?
2. yá xaCHU paznaKOɱiƫ vás s ŊEY.
3. aná xaraSHO gavaŖIT pa anGĻIYsķi.
4. KTO état maladóy chilaƲEK?
5. Eta yivó stárshiy BRAT.
6. ón ŋi ZNAyit shtó yá ẒḐEŞ.
7. ón uSHOL v GOspital.
8. payḐOM v ŗistaRAN.
9. dáyƫi nám CHAyu, paZHALsta.
10. yá xaCHU malaKA i SAxaru, paZHALsta.

IV

1. mayí ŞOsƫri YEdut v aⱮEŗiku.
2. ZNAyut aŋí iVAna SⱮIta?
3. ón aḑín iz mayíx druẒEY.
4. ón ŋi DAvna priYExal iz aⱮEŗiķi.
5. yá izuCHAyu RUsķiy yiZIK.
6. aŊI v maSKƲE.
7. SHTO aŋí tam ḐELayut?
8. yá YEdu v maSKVU.
9. éta búḑit Ochiŋ priYAtna.
10. mayá MAƬ mnoga RAZ biVAla v aⱮEŗiķi.

V

1. ẒḐEŞ davóļna praXLAdna yisNOY, nó ĻEtam ZHARka.
2. ẓiMOY XOladna, nó Oşiŋyu ƫiPLO.
3. ƬAM baļSHIya GOri.
4. DOSHCH iḐOT.
5. ŞŊEK iḐOT.
6. ẒImŋiya xalaDA ŋi xaraSHI ḑļa baļNIX.
7. baSTON na vaSTOķi.
8. san franCIska na ZApaḑi.
9. na ŞEʋiŗi XOladna.
10. na YUģi ZHARka.

UNIT 6. SECTION D. KEY

I

1. SHTO ví xaƮIʈi KUshiʈ?
2. ya xaCHU SUpu, ⱮAsa i karTOshķi.
3. u ɱiŋá ŊET SƤIchik.
4. SKOĻka éta STOyit?
5. YEŞƮ ɽistaRAN na ŖRAva.
6. papiROsi u ɱiŋá.
7. u ɱiŋá papiROsi.
8. ƤIva ŊET.
9. yá xaCHU papiROsu.
10. dáyʈi mŋé SƤICHku, paZHALsta.

II

1. yá VAS ŋi paŋiMAyu.
2. RUsķiy yiZIK TRUdnay.
3. u ɱiŊA aƉIN RUBĻ.
4. mayá zhiNA gavaŖIT pa RUsķi.
5. éta pişMO VAsha?
6. VOT xaLOdnaya malaKO.
7. éʈi malaDIya ĻUɖi RUsķiya?
8. éʈi ƤIŞma maYI.
9. ĢƉE gaŞƮIŋica? . . . VOT aNA.
10. ĢƉE pişMO? . . . VOT aNO.

III

1. DAYʈi mŋé staKAN vaDI.
2. ẒƉEŞ MNOga baļSHIX daMOF.
3. u ɱiŊA MNOga papiROS.
4. pişMO u mayivó BRAta.
5. SKOĻka u vás ɖiƮEY?
6. u ŋiVO DƲE şiSTRI.
7. u ŋiYO ƤAƮ ruBĻEY.
8. u ŋiYO ŊET piƮI ruBĻEY.
9. u ɱiNA ŊET DVUX ruBĻEY.
10. ẒƉEŞ ŊET xaROshix ɽistaRAnaf.

IV

1. ZNAyiʈi ví náshu MLATshuyu şiSTRU?
2. mí FSTŖEʈim zɖéş náshu DOCH.

3. yá xachú ⱣIƮ CHAY.
4. DAYƫi nám TꞦI CHAshķi KOʄi.
5. DAYƫi nám ⱣAƮ CHAshik KOʄi.
6. yá tám FSTꞦEƫil adnaVO iz váshix druẒEY.
7. yá ZNAyu Eƫix DVUX ḐEvushik.
8. ya yíx xaraSHO ZNAyu.
9. ví ɱiŋá paŋiMAyiƫi?
10. ví nás FSTꞦEƫiƫi v ɼistaRAŋi?

V

1. KTO vám Eta skaZAL?
2. ƫiⱣEꞦ gavaꞦAT ab ARɱiyi.
3. aŋí CHAsta KUshayut v étam baļSHOM ɼistaRAŋi.
4. ab Eƫix ĻUḑix yá i gavaꞦIƮ ŋi xaCHU.
5. yá ŋi chiVO ŋi ZNAyu a váshix piƮI ruBĻAX.
6. a CHOM ví gavaꞦIƫi?
7. mí gavaꞦIM a RUskay ARɱiyi.
8. a KOM ví gavaꞦIƫi?
9. mí gavaꞦIM a mayóm BRAƫi.
10. ví fşiGDA gavaꞦIƫi a ŊOM.

UNIT 7. SECTION C. KEY.

1. b.
2. c.
3. a.
4. b.
5. a.
6. c.
7. b.
8. c.
9. b.
10. c.
11. b.
12. c.

UNIT 8. SECTION C. KEY.

1. c.
2. b.
3. a.
4. c.
5. b.
6. b.
7. c.
8. b.
9. a.
10. c.
11. a.
12. c.

UNIT 9. SECTION C. KEY.

1. b.
2. a.
3. c.
4. c.
5. c.
6. b.

7. c.
8. b.
9. b.
10. c.
11. b.
12. c.

UNIT 10. SECTION C. KEY.

1. a.
2. c.
3. c
4. a.
5. b.
6. a.
7. b.
8. b.
9. c.
10. b.
11. c.
12. c.

UNIT 11. SECTION C. KEY.

1. c.
2. b.
3. b.
4. a.
5. c.
6. c.
7. c.
8. c.
9. b.
10. a.
11. c.
12. a.

UNIT 12. REVIEW. SECTION A. TRUE-FALSE TEST.

English Equivalents.

I

F 1. Every woman citizen likes dirty linen.
T 2. A parlor is in a house; a hotel is in a city.
T 3. A shirt is bigger than a handkerchief.
F 4. To a laundry people go to drink beer.
F 5. In cities there are no streets.
T 6. Everybody wants to live.
F 7. It isn't nice to say thank you.
F 8. People always respect drunken people.
F 9. In Russia there are no rooms on the second floor.
T 10. Americans often eat ham and eggs for breakfast (or lunch).

II

T 11. The post office is sometimes closed.
T 12. Children in school have books.
T 13. Letter paper is sometimes sold in railway stations.
T 14. A fool never knows that he knows nothing.
F 15. All Americans speak nothing but Russian.

T 16. Borshch is not made with fish.

T 17. He can't write by pen without ink.

F 18. In the boarding house there is not even one bathroom.

T 19. One can find paper at the post office, in a school, and in the bathroom.

T 20. Every young woman wants to be young.

III

T 21. It is cheaper to eat at home than in a restaurant.

F 22. You always eat lunch at night.

F 23. It is cheaper to fly by plane than to ride by train.

T 24. In the dining room there is a table and a chair.

F 25. It is hot in winter and cold in summer.

F 26. When my brother and my mother dine with me, we need three tables and one chair.

F 27. I am going to the laundry because I need a haircut and a shave.

T 28. An airplane is faster than a train.

T 29. A free week is a furlough.

T 30. Without paper I can't write a letter.

IV

T 31. Almost every father loves his own son.

T 32. Sometimes an older daughter is bigger than a younger daughter.

F 33. Snow is red.

T 34. Letters from the army have no stamps.

T 35. A few sheets are enough for a letter.

T 36. There are no vegetables, there is no meat, there is no water: there won't be any soup either.

T 37. If the dining room is next door, it is close by.

F 38. The train leaves at six; I have to get to the station at half past five.

T 39. I don't think anything I hear is true.

F 40. You always like to wash my socks.

V

T 41. This pen costs forty roubles; that is too dear.

F 42. San Francisco is in the south of Russia.

T 43. I never write home when neither my mother nor my father nor the children are there.
F 44. Americans like to drink vodka with milk and sugar.
F 45. We know that blue paper is sometimes red.
T 46. In daytime I like to talk with friends.
F 47. The bathroom is in the parlor.
F 48. Two twenty is twenty minutes to three.
F 49. Coffee is made of meat and potatoes.
T 50. People live in cities.

VI

T 51. Beer is cheaper than vodka.
F 52. A barber washes clothes.
T 53. In America there are many cities.
F 54. There is no door in the room.
F 55. I have a Russian book; therefore I am studying English.
F 56. The train leaves at half past five; if we get to the station at five thirty-five we shall get there on time.
T 57. If he lives close by, she, maybe, has seen him recently.
T 58. In America they speak various languages.
T 59. When I am sick I can drink lots of milk, but only no vodka.
F 60. If the train leaves at four o'clock, and the airplane leaves at half past three, the train will arrive earlier than the airplane.

VII

T 61. People usually like to have a good meal and a good drink.
F 62. In the army they eat lunch at ten o'clock.
F 63. A shoemaker washes shoes.
T 64. In a restaurant everybody is always eating.
F 65. I need a haircut; I'm going to the shoemaker's.
F 66. In Russia they never drink either vodka or tea.
F 67. In Boston people have no underwear.
F 68. A laundress works in a barber shop.
T 69. You have heard everything I have said to you.
F 70. Quarter to nine is quarter to ten.

VIII

T 71. In big cities there are restaurants on almost every street.
F 72. Russians never eat fish.

T 73. When her husband came into the hotel, he said, "I want a room with a bath."
T 74. A doctor tries to help sick people.
T 75. Every restaurant needs lots of tables.
T 76. A laundress counts many handkerchiefs.
F 77. People never walk on the street.
F 78. She does not make meat balls out of meat.
F 79. A son is always older than his father.
F 80. A drunken man never drinks vodka or beer.

UNIT 12. SECTION B. KEY.

I

1. pa chiMU ví TAK spiSHIţi?
2. POyist f staļinGRAT atXOḑit v DVA şimNATcit.
3. uzhé ƤAŢ minút TŖEţyiva.
4. yá YEdu tudá ni POyizdam, a samaĻOtam.
5. ví uSƤEyiţi.
6. ví uzhé kuƤIļi biĻET?
7. samaĻOT atļiTAyit f TŖI dyiNATcit.
8. pradaYUTsa biĻEti v GOroḑi?
9. padaZHḐIţi ɱiŋá ɱiNUtu, paZHALsta.
10. DAYţi mŋé, paZHALsta, biĻET f staļinGRAT. SKOĻka ón STOyit?

II

1. u ɱiŋá ŊET ŋi aDNOY CHIstay ruBAshķi.
2. GḐE yá magú nayŢI PRAchishnuyu?
3. yá vám pŗiSHĻU PRACHku.
4. FŞO GŖAznaya biĻYO na paŞŢEļi.
5. kaGDA ví yirŊOţi mayó biĻYO?
6. MŊE náda pachiŊIŢ PAru baŢInak.
7. mŋé náda paBŖITsa i paSTŖICHsa.
8. yá ZNAyu ẓḑéş MNOga RUsķix.
9. tám zhiVUT DṾE TIşichi ļuḐEY.
10. v étam GOroḑi zhiƳOT miĻYON ļuḐEY.

III

1. ví Ishchiţi KOmnatu?
2. panŞYON ḑiSHEvļi chém gaŞŢIŋica.
3. aná daLA mŋé Adŗis váshiva panŞYOna.

4. paŞƮEĻ Ochiŋ uDObnaya.
5. KOmnata xaraSHO apSTAvļina.
6. éta KOmnata STOyit pid ɖiŞAƮ ruBĻEY v ⱮEşic.
7. yéşʈ ļi u VAS KOmnata ɖiSHEvļi Etay?
8. ón STARshi ɱiŋá. ón STARshi chém yá.
9. état r̡istaRAN Ochiŋ DOrak (Ochiŋ daraGOY).
10. ZAftrak f CHAS.

IV

1. yá xachú napiSAƮ daMOY pişMO.
2. yá daVNO yim ŋi piSAL.
3. u ɱiŋá ŊET VR̡Eɱiŋi.
4. CHYA éta buMAga tám na staĻE?
5. u ɱiŋá yéşʈ chirŊIla, kanV̡ERʈi, i MARk̡i.
6. MOzhid bíʈ ví paLUchiʈi at ŊIX pişMO.
7. éta bíla bi Ochiŋ xaraSHO.
8. kuDA ví iƉOʈi? . . . daMOY.
9. GƉE vásh BRAT? . . . DOma.
10. u vás YEŞƮ VREɱa?

V

1. SHTO yá tám nayƉU?
2. Eta mŋé Ochiŋ NRAyitsa.
3. pr̡iŋiŞIʈi nám, paZHALsta, DVA stakána CHAyu.
4. ón SKOra praSŊOTsa.
5. ón VZ̡AL maYU KŊIgu i DAL mŋé svaYU.
6. aŋí nám DAļi svayi biĻEti.
7. yá iSHCHU mayú KŊIgu (svayú KŊIgu).
8. ón pakuPAyit MNOga KŊIG.
9. v Etam magaZ̡Iŋi biRUT Ochiŋ DOraga.
10. yá birú uROk̡i RUskava yiziKA.

UNIT 12. SECTION D. KEY.

I

1. yá Ochiŋ xachú P̡IƮ.
2. ʈiP̡ER̡ CHAS.
3. ʈiP̡ER̡ ftaROY CHAS.
4. ʈiP̡ER̡ palaV̡Ina P̡Atava.
5. ʈiP̡ER̡ biz CHEtyirʈi SHESƮ.

6. f kaTOram chiSU vi pɼiḐOƫi?
7. yá vás FSTƦEchu ẓḑéş bis CHETyirƫi DVA.
8. yá pɼiYExal f palaƲIŋi ƤERvava.
9. mayí chiSI spiSHAT.
10. ón pɼiḐOT f CHEtyirt ftaROva.

II

1. kaVO vi ẓḑéş FSTƦEƫiƫi?
2. ŊET daZHDZHA.
3. yá ŋi kaGDA ŋi kaMU ŋi chiVO ŋi skaZAL ab Etam.
4. yá yirNUŞ kak MOzhna skaƦEyi.
5. pɼiŋiŞIƫi mŋé, paZHALsta, CHAshku KOʃi.
6. FSTƦEƮƫi ɱiŋá ẒḐEŞ f palaƲIŋi shiSTOva.
7. pastɼiĢIƫi ɱiŋá, paZHALsta.
8. yimú ŇAda şi CHAS uyƮI.
9. yá zhiVU na TƦEƫyim etaZHE.
10. DAYƫi mŋé raSƤIsku.

III

1. mí ZAftrakayim f palaƲIŋi ƤERvava.
2. vi YEḑiƫi POyizdam, aftamaƁIļim, iļi samaĻOtam?
3. yá ŋi maGU piSAƮ Ẹƫim piROM.
4. yá gavaƦIL s váshim BRAtam.
5. yá xachú CHIstuyu KOmnatu s CHIstay paSƮEļyu.
6. ón XOchit gavaRIƮ s náshiɱi druẒYAɱi.
7. yá aBEdal s tɼiⱮA druẒYAɱi.
8. ón uSHOL z dvaciƮYU rußĻAɱi.
9. mí s ŊIM CHAsta ZAftrakaļi v Etam ɼistaRAŋi.
10. Oşinyu mí yirŊOMsa v raŞIyu.

IV

1. vɼiɱiNAɱi ón uyiZHDZHAyit, ŋi KTO ŋi ZNAyit kuDA.
2. yá bíl v maSKƲE toļka RAS.
3. ón TƦI RAza bíl v aⱮEɼiķi.
4. yá Eta yimú uzhé MNOga RAZ gavaƦIL.
5. yá DOLzhin saPOzhŋiku DVAƮciƫ aḐIŊ RUBĻ.
6. aná ZA muzhim za aɱiɼiKANcim.
7. vi nám yishchó ŋi ODdaļi biĻEƫi.
8. ZAftra yá yimú napiSHU pişMO.

9. ón nám paMOzhit.
10. ón nám CHAsta pamaGayit.

V

1. yá razMU yiSHCHO ŋimnoshka étava BĻUda.
2. aná mŋé ŋi chiVO ŋi skaZAla.
3. yá CHAsta YEzhdzhu v maSKVU.
4. aŋí KAzhduyu Z̧Imu YEḑit na YUK.
5. kuDA ví YExaļi kaGDA yá vás V̧Iḑil fchiRA?
6. yá búdu pŗiyiZHDZHAŢ v raŞIyu KAzhdaya ĻEta
7. ón sxaḐIL ka paŗikMAx̧iru.
8. paḐIţi suDA!
9. ḐEţi paSHļI f SHKOlu.
10. POyist şi CHAS uyḐOT.